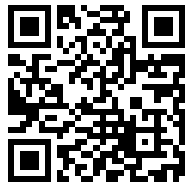

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<http://books.google.com>



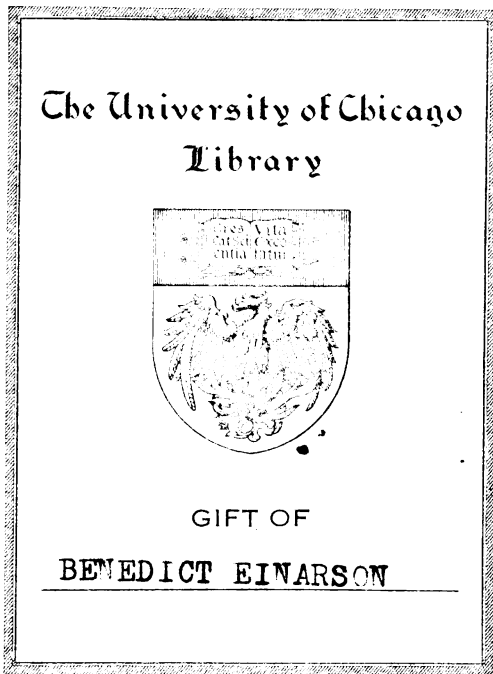
Parallel Grammar Series

A PARALLEL OF
GREEK & LATIN SYNTAX

C.H. ST. L. RUSSELL, M.A.



27



A PARALLEL
OF
GREEK AND LATIN SYNTAX

FOR USE IN SCHOOLS

BY

C. H. ST. L. RUSSELL, M.A.

ASSISTANT-MASTER AT CLIFTON COLLEGE



LONDON
SWAN SONNENSCH E I N & C O . , L I M I T E D
P A T E R N O S T E R S Q U A R E
1902

PA 161
. R9



Classical
Philosophy
Benedict Cinarson

1469097

PREFACE.

THE following pages have two objects in view : firstly, to simplify the study of Greek by a direct comparison with Latin idiom ; and secondly, to provide a Syntax of both languages which will cover the whole course of a boy's training at a Public School.

(1) With the first object, the book is written in two parallel columns, one of Latin, the other of Greek : so that, when a boy has once learnt *ne dixeris*, he may find he already half-knows the *μὴ λέξης* facing it ; and that when he sees *qui nuntiant* and *οἵτινες ἀγγελοῦσιν* confronted with each other, he may be less likely to put *οἵτινες ἀγγέλλωσιν* in his Prose.

At the same time, as a boy is usually more advanced in Latin than in Greek, the two columns are so arranged that either may be studied independently of the other ; with the exception that remarks common to both columns are run across the page.

(2) With the second object, the book has been carefully graduated to suit the time when a boy would naturally arrive at each subject in its turn. Thus, the Concords are more simply treated than the Cases ; the Cases than the Main Sentence or Subordinate Clause ; and these again than the more advanced subject of the Negative.

Even within these limits, the Syntax of any Case or Clause or Word is not, as a rule, studied at once in its entirety. A scheme has therefore been added, assigning

definite sections of the book to every Form, and suggesting the points at which each subject may successively be begun, continued and summarised—the various threads being got more and more together, as a boy rises through the Higher Forms, until the whole is finally resumed and collected in the Sixth.

These two objects really meet in one object, that a boy, in passing from Latin to Greek, or from the more elementary laws of either language to Syntax which is more advanced, should not have to enter upon a new and different book, but should already have some “picture-memory” of the appearance of the page before him; that he should, in each stage of his progress, be making immediate use of knowledge acquired in the last; and that, instead of often breaking fresh and unfamiliar ground, he should always be growing more intimate with a country which he has once, or more than once, travelled through, and whose landmarks he is able more and more easily to recognise at every turn.

The book is divided into four parts: *Part I.*, English Syntax and the Laws of Agreement; *Part II.*, The Parts of Speech and their uses; *Part III.*, the Syntax of the Simple Sentence and Subordinate Clause; *Part IV.*, The Figures of Speech and some of the commoner irregularities of Case and Mood. Three *Indices* have been added: I. English, II. Latin, and III. Greek; also, a *List of the Authors* quoted, with a statement of their character and date; and, as before mentioned, a *Scheme for the Division of the Syntax among Forms*.

The First Part, giving an outline of English Syntax, is prefixed from the belief that half the difficulty of Greek

and Latin Grammar arises from ignorance of the common laws of Speech ; the Second and Third Parts have been treated mainly from the point of view of Composition ; the Fourth is added for reference in Translation in lower Forms, preparatory to its resumption at a later stage.

Except in this Fourth Part, one example only of each usage has, as a rule, been given, that a boy may not lose sight of the wood for the trees ; and, as the examples are intended to be learnt by heart, instances have, as far as possible, been selected which embody some historical fact or contain some point of general interest : *e.g.*, the expression of Wishes in Present time will be better remembered by *utinam populus Romanus unam cervicem haberet*, than by *utinam haec ita essent*. For the same reason, examples from Poetry have often, even where a Prose construction is illustrated, been deliberately preferred to instances from Prose.

In conclusion : As the Latin and Greek columns are written independently of each other, **the book may be read in connexion with the ordinary manuals of Accidence or Prose in either language** : the " Scheme of Work " being, in fact, largely based on the arrangement followed by some of the Prose-books now in use.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Preface - - - - -	iii
Scheme for Division of the Syntax among Forms - - - - -	ix
List of Authors' Names - - - - -	xvi

PART I.

<i>English Syntax</i> : Subject, Predicate, Complement; the Parts of Speech; the Simple Sentence; the Compound Sentence, §§ 1-39 - - - - -	1
<i>Agreement</i> : the Three Concordances and Apposition (§§ 40-52) - - - - -	12

PART II.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

	1. Substantives (§§ 53-54) - - - - -	17
Nouns	2. Adjectives (§§ 55-79) (Comparatives, § 62; Superlatives, § 69; Numerals, § 75) - - - - -	18
	(Substitutes for the Article in Latin; Order of words and Clauses; the Article in Greek (§§ 80-103) - - - - -	24
	3. Pronouns (§§ 104-143): (1) Personal (§ 104), (2) Demonstrative (§ 123), (3) Indefinite (§ 125), (4) Interrogative (§ 136), (5) Relative (138) - - - - -	32
	4. Verbs (§§ 144-220) (Voice, § 145; Mood, § 165; Tense, § 200) (Potential and Indefinite Tenses in Latin; the Particle <i>ἄν</i> in Greek (§ 217)) - - - - -	44
	(The Cases (§§ 222-288)) - - - - -	74
	(The Cases (§§ 222-288)) - - - - -	76
	5. Prepositions (§§ 289-299) - - - - -	94
	(Expression of Time, Place, Space (§§ 300-311)) (Case-construction of commoner Verbs (§ 312)) - - - - -	100
6. Conjunctions and Particles (§§ 313-325) - - - - -	104	
7. Interjections (§ 326) - - - - -	105	
8. Adverbs (§ 327) - - - - -	110	
	111	

PART III.

THE SENTENCE.

(1) SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

1. Direct Statement (§ 329) - - - - -	112
2. Direct Command, Wish, Exhortation (§§ 330-334) - - - - -	112
3. Direct Question (§§ 335-337) - - - - -	114
(Exclamation, § 338) - - - - -	116

(2) SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.		PAGE
Three kinds of Compound Sentence (§§ 339-342); Sequence (§§ 343-347)	- - - - -	116
<i>Substantival Sentences :</i>		
1. Indirect Statement (§§ 348-354)	- - - - -	120
2. Indirect Command (§§ 355-359)	- - - - -	122
3. Indirect Question (§§ 360-364)	- - - - -	124
(Compel, try and take care, prevent and deny (§§ 365-374); Impersonal Verbs (§§ 375-381); certain Special Verbs (§§ 382-383))	- - - - -	126
<i>Adverbial Sentences :</i>		
1. Final (§§ 384-387)	- - - - -	131
2. Consecutive (§§ 388-394)	- - - - -	133
3. Conditional (§§ 395-408)	- - - - -	134
4. Causal (§§ 409-412)	- - - - -	140
5. Temporal (§§ 413-435) (<i>quum</i> , § 415; <i>dum</i> , § 424; <i>priusquam</i> , § 428; <i>επει</i> , § 415; <i>εως</i> , § 424; <i>πρις</i> , § 428)	- - - - -	141
6. Local (§§ 436-438)	- - - - -	148
7. Concessive (§§ 439-445)	- - - - -	149
8. Comparative (§§ 446-457)	- - - - -	151
<i>Adjectival Sentences : viz., Relative Clauses (§§ 458-472)</i>	- - - - -	155
<i>Mood in sub-Oblique Clauses (§§ 473-478)</i>	- - - - -	158
<i>Oratio Obliqua : continuous (§§ 479-488)</i>	- - - - -	160
<i>The Negatives (§§ 489-519) (non, haud, ne, § 489; quominus, § 510; quin, § 512; οὐ, μή, § 489; μή οὐ, § 512; οὐ μή, § 517)</i>	- - - - -	165

PART IV.

FIGURES OF SPEECH AND NOTES ON SYNTAX.

Figures of Speech (§§ 520-550)	- - - - -	174
Excursus I. Attraction (§§ 551-558)	- - - - -	183
Excursus II. Sense-Construction (§§ 559-564)	- - - - -	185
Excursus III. The Cases (§§ 565-580)	- - - - -	187
Excursus IV. The Indicative, Imperative, Conjunctive (§§ 581-590)	- - - - -	192
Excursus V. The Infinitive and Participle (§§ 591-599)	- - - - -	195
Excursus VI. Gerund and Gerundive; οὐ μή (§ 600)	- - - - -	199

INDICES.

1. English	- - - - -	203
2. Latin	- - - - -	213
3. Greek	- - - - -	219

SCHEME FOR DIVISION OF THE SYNTAX AMONG FORMS.

LATIN.	ENGLISH.
I. γ .	I. γ .
40-41. Concord of Verb and Adjective. 222-224. Nominative and Vocative. 328-329. Direct Statement.	1-9. Subject, Predicate, Copula. 35-39. Agreement and Government.
I. β .	I. β .
44-46. The Composite Subject. 226. Accusative of Direct Object. 239. Possessive Genitive. 277. Dative of Indirect Object.	16-19. The Parts of Speech. 30. Principal Sentences (with English of examples, 329-338).
I. α .	I. α .
144 (first paragraph). Voices. 148-150. Passive Construction. 221. Survey of the Cases. 243. Partitive Genitive. 266. Instrumental Ablative.	20-29. Parts of Speech (continued).

LATIN.	ENGLISH.
II. γ .	II. γ .
42-43. Concord of Relative, and Apposition. 55-58. Adjective as Epithet. 191-192. Participle as Adjective. 225, 227-228. Direct Accusative (continued). 335-336. Direct Questions. 338. Exclamation.	10-15. Complements.
II. β .	II. β .
47-52. Notes on the ConCORDS. 165. The MOODS. 166. The Indicative (definition only). 167. The Imperative. 229-233. Accusative (continued). 240-242. Possessive Genitive (continued). 244-245. Partitive Genitive (continued). 274-276. Ablative: Locative. 330-331. Direct Command and Exhortation. 337. Deliberative Questions. <i>Summarise the ConCORDS, 40-52.</i>	31-34. Subordinate Clauses (with English of examples, 339-478). <i>Summarise English Syntax, 1-39.</i>
II. α .	GREEK.
62-63. Comparatives. 69-70. Superlatives. 168. Subjunctive. 234-238. Two Accusatives. 259-265. Ablative Proper. 282-288. Dative of Interest. 339-334. The Compound Sentence: Sequence. 384. Final Clauses. 388-389, 392. Consecutive Clauses. <i>Summarise the Accusative, 225-238.</i>	II. α . 40-46. The ConCORDS. 83-84. The Definite Article. 144 (first paragraph). Voices. 165, (first paragraphs of) 166 and 167, 168. The MOODS. 222-224. Nominative and Vocative. 225-228. Accusative. 239. Possessive Genitive. 277. Indirect Dative. 328-329. Direct Statement.

LATIN.	GREEK.
III. γ .	III. γ .
53-54. Substantives. 172-174. Infinitive as Noun; Prolative. 195-197, 199. The Ablative Absolute. 246-248. Genitive: Descriptive. 257-258. Genitive: Locative. 267-273. Ablative: Instrumental (continued). 348-354. Indirect Statement. <i>Summarise the Ablative, 259-276.</i>	47-50. Notes on ConCORDS: Neuter Plural, Dual. 53-54. Use of Substantives. 55-57. Adjective as Epithet. 88-89. The Article as a Noun-maker. 191-192. The Participle as Adjective. 221. Survey of the Cases. 259. Genitive of Ablation. 266. Dative: Instrumental. 274. Dative: Locative.
III. β .	III. β .
64-68. Comparatives (continued). 71-74. Superlatives (continued). 104-106, 110-122. Pronouns: Personal, Reflexive. 249-256. Genitive (continued): Objective, etc. 289-292. Prepositions and their Cases. 300-311. Time, Place, Space. 355-358. Indirect Command and Petition. 359. Verbs of Statement and Command. <i>Summarise Comparative and Superlative, 62-74.</i> <i>Summarise the Genitive, 239-258.</i>	51-52. Notes on ConCORDS: the Relative. 62-68. The Comparative. 69-74. The Superlative. 85-87. The Article: Possessive, Generic. 104-106. Pronouns: Personal. 172-174. Infinitive as Noun; Prolative. 229-238. Accusative (continued). 240-250. Genitive Proper (continued). <i>Summarise the ConCORDS, 40-52.</i> <i>Summarise Comparative and Superlative, 62-74.</i> <i>Summarise the Accusative, 225-238.</i>
III. α .	III. α .
59-61. The Adjective with the Verb. 151-156. Impersonal Construction, etc. 178-180. Accusative and Nominative with Infinitive. 182-183. The Supine. 184-186. Gerund and Gerundive (Verbal Action). 200-202, 208. Present, Imperfect, Future. 278-281. "Dative Verbs." 293-295. Prepositional Phrases. 371-374. Verbs of Fearing. <i>Summarise Substantive and Adjective, 53-61.</i> <i>Summarise the Dative, 277-288.</i>	58-61. Adjective as Epithet and Predicate. 92. Article with Subject and Predicate. 93-94. Article with Attribute and Predicate. 148-156. Passive Construction. 200-202, 208. Present, Imperfect, Future. 278-288. Dative Proper (continued). 335-336. Direct Questions. 338. Exclamation. <i>Summarise Substantive and Adjective, 53-61.</i> <i>Summarise the Dative Proper, 277-288.</i>

LATIN.	GREEK.
IV. γ.	IV. γ.
75-79. The Numerals. 108-109, 123-124. Pronouns : Intensive, Demonstrative. 144-147. Trans. and Intrans. Verbs. 157-161. Passive as Middle. 162-164. Deponents. 203-206. (First paragraph only of 205) : Perfect, Pluperfect. 312. Cases after Verbs. 360-362. Indirect Questions. 375-383. Impersonal Verbs. <i>Summarise the Voices, 144-164.</i>	75-79. The Numerals. 95-98. Article with Genitives, etc. 110-124. Pronouns : Reflexive, Possessive, Demonstrative. 144-147. Trans. and Intrans. Verbs. 157-161. Middle Voice. 162-164. Deponents. 203-206. (First paragraph only of 205) : Perfect, Aorist, Pluperfect. 267-273. Dative : Instrumental (cont.). 275-276. Dative : Locative (continued). 300-311. Time, Place, Space. <i>Summarise the Voices, 144-164.</i> <i>Summarise Dative, as a whole, 277-288.</i>
IV. β.	IV. β.
138-141. Relative Pronouns. 187-190. Gerund and Gerundive (Obli- gation). 193-194, 198. Participle : Adverbial, Sup- plementary. 213-216. Tense in the Moods. 364. Sub-Clauses in Indirect State- ment. 365-370. Compel, try, beware. 385-387. Final Clauses (continued). 409-412. Causal Clauses. 462-463. Final and Consecutive Relative. <i>Summarise the Gerund and Gerundive,</i> <i>184-190.</i>	99-103. Article with Pronouns : <i>ὄντος</i> , etc. 108-109. Pronouns : Intensive. 138-141. Relative Pronouns. 193-197. Participle : Adverbial ; Genitive Absolute. 213-215. Tense in the Moods. 251-258. Genitive Proper (continued). 260-265. Genitive of Ablation (cont.). 312. Cases after Verbs. 330-332. Direct Command, Exhortation, (Optative of) Wish. 337. Deliberative Questions. 489-490, 506-507. Negative : Redundant, etc. <i>Summarise the Genitive, as a whole, 239-</i> <i>265.</i>
IV. α.	IV. α.
142-143. Correlation. 181. Dative with Infinitive. 205, 207, 209-212, 217. Tenses (continued). 313-319, 324. Conjunctions. 345-347. Sequence (continued). 363. Indirect Deliberative Questions. 413-435. Temporal Clauses : <i>quum, dum,</i> etc. 436-438. Local Clauses. 510-519. Quominus and quin. <i>Summarise Tenses in Indicative, 200-</i> <i>212.</i> <i>Summarise the Cases, 221-288.</i> <i>Summarise Sequence, 343-347.</i>	80-82, 90-91. Article (continued). 142-143. Correlation. 178-181. Subject and Predicate of Infi- nitive. 205, 207, 209-212. Tenses (continued). 289-292. Prepositions and Cases. 313-319, 324. Conjunctions. 339-345, (first par. of) 346. Sequence. 348-354. Indirect Statement. 355-359. Indirect Command. 360-363. Indirect Questions. 364. Sub-Clauses in Indirect State- ment. 375-382. Impersonal Verbs. <i>Summarise the Article, 80-103.</i> <i>Summarise Tenses in Indicative, 200-</i> <i>212.</i> <i>Summarise the Cases, 221-288.</i>

LATIN.

V. γ.

107. Pronouns, Notes on.
 127-135. Pronouns : Indefinite, Interrog.
 218. Potential Tenses.
 322-323, 325. Conjunctions (continued).
 332-334. Direct Wishes.
 390-391, 393-394. Consecutive Clauses
 (continued).
 395-404. Conditional Clauses.
 439-445. Concessive Clauses.
 446-457. Comparative Clauses.
 479-488. *Oratio Obliqua*.
Summarise Pronouns, 104-143.
Summarise Participle, 191-199.
Summarise Substantival Clauses, 348-383.

V. β.

- 80-103. Order of Words and Clauses.
 175-177. Infinitive : Epexegetic, Absolute.
 219-220. Potential and Indefinite.
 296-299. Prepositions in Composition
 with Verbs.
 405-408. Notes on Conditionals.
 458-461, 464-472. Relative Clauses (other
 uses).
 473-478. Sub-Oblique Conjunctive.
 489-499, 504-505, 506-509. Negative.
Summarise the Infinitive, 172-181.
Summarise the Tenses, 200-220.
Summarise the Simple Sentence, 328-338.
Summarise Adjectival Clauses, 458-472.

V. α.

166. Uses of Indicative.
 169-171. Uses of Subjunctive.
 320-321. Particles : Intensive, etc.
 326-327. Interjections and Adverbs.
 500-503. Negative (continued).
*Summarise Indicative, Imperative, Con-
 junctive*, 165-171.
Summarise the Particles, 313-327.
Summarise Adverbial Clauses, 384-457.
Summarise Oblique Statement, 473-488.
Summarise the Negative, 489-519.

GREEK.

V. γ.

107. Personal Pronouns, Note on.
 125-137. Pronouns : Indefinite, Interrog.
 198-199. Supplementary Participle.
 293-295. Prepositional Idioms.
 322-323, 325. Conjunctions (continued).
 363. Indirect Deliberative Questions.
 365-374. Compel, try, beware, fear.
 383. *χαίρω*, etc.
 384-387. Final Clauses.
 388-394. Consecutive Clauses.
 409-412. Causal Clauses.
Summarise Pronouns, 104-143.
Summarise Participle, 191-199.
Summarise Substantival Clauses, 348-383.

V. β.

- 175-177, 182-186. Infinitive : Epexegetic,
 Absolute.
 187-190. Verbal Adjectives.
 217-220. The Particle *ἄν*.
 296-299. Prepositions in Composition
 with Verbs.
 332-334. Direct Wishes.
 395-403. Conditional Clauses.
 413-435. Temporal Clauses : *ὅτε*, *ἕως*,
πρίν.
 436-438. Local Clauses.
 439-443. Concessive Clauses.
 458-472. Relative Clauses.
Summarise the Infinitive, 172-186.
Summarise the Tenses, 200-220.
Summarise the Simple Sentence, 328-338.
Summarise Adjectival Clauses, 458-472.

V. α.

166. Indicative.
 167. Imperative.
 169-171. Subjunctive and Optative.
 320-321. Particles : Intensive, etc.
 326-327. Interjections and Adverbs.
 346-347. Note on Sequence.
 404-408. Note on Conditionals.
 444-445. Limitative Clauses.
 446-447. Comparative Clauses.
 473-478. Sub-Oblique Conjunctive.
 479-488. *Oratio Obliqua*.
 491-499, 500-505. Negative (continued).
 508-519. *μή οὐ*, *οὐ μή*.
*Summarise Indicative, Imperative, Con-
 junctive*, 165-171.
Summarise the Particles, 313-327.
Summarise Sequence, 343-347.
Summarise Adverbial Clauses, 384-457.
Summarise Oblique Statement, 473-488.
Summarise the Negative, 389-519.

VI.

Figures of Speech, 520-550.

1. Attraction, 551-558.
2. Sense-Construction, 559-564.
3. Note on Cases, 565-580.
4. Note on Indicative, Imperative, Conjunctive, 581-590.
5. Note on Infinitive and Participle, 591-599.
6. Note on Gerund and Gerundive ; and *οὐ μή*, 600.

Summarise the whole, 1-600.

LIST OF AUTHORS' NAMES.

LATIN.	GREEK.
AUS., <i>Ausonius</i> , poet. (About A.D. 150.)	AESCH., <i>Aeschylus</i> , tragedian. (B.C. 525-456.)
CAES., <i>Caesar</i> , historian. (Died, B.C. 44.)	AESCHIN., <i>Aeschines</i> , orator. (B.C. 389-314.)
CAT., <i>Catullus</i> , poet. (B.C. 87-47.)	ANDOC., <i>Andocides</i> , rhetorician. (Born B.C. 467.)
CATO, <i>Cato</i> , orator. (B.C. 234-149.)	ANT., <i>Antiphon</i> , orator. (Born B.C. 480.)
CIC., <i>Cicero</i> , orator. (B.C. 106-43.)	AR., <i>Aristophanes</i> , comedian. (Born B.C. 444.)
CLAUD., <i>Claudian</i> , poet. (About A.D. 400.)	ARISTOT., <i>Aristotle</i> , philosopher. (B.C. 384-322.)
CURT., <i>Curtius</i> , historian. (About A.D. 50.)	BION, <i>Bion</i> , poet. (About B.C. 280.)
ENN., <i>Ennius</i> , poet. (B.C. 239-169.)	CALLIM., <i>Callimachus</i> , poet. (Died about B.C. 240.)
HOR., <i>Horace</i> , poet. (B.C. 65-8.)	DEM., <i>Demosthenes</i> , orator. (Died 322.)
JUV., <i>Juvenal</i> , satirist. (A.D. 40-120.)	EUR., <i>Euripides</i> , tragedian. (B.C. 480-406.)
LIV., <i>Livy</i> , historian. (B.C. 59-A.D. 17.)	HER., <i>Herodotus</i> , historian. (Born B.C. 484.)
LUC., <i>Lucan</i> , poet. (A.D. 39-65.)	HES., <i>Hesiod</i> , poet. (About B.C. 700.)
LUCR., <i>Lucretius</i> , poet. (B.C. 95-52.)	HOM., <i>Homer</i> , poet. (About B.C. 850?)
MART., <i>Martial</i> , poet. (A.D. 43-104.)	ISAEUS, <i>Isaeus</i> , orator. (About B.C. 400.)
NEP., <i>Nepos</i> , biographer. (About B.C. 44.)	ISOC., <i>Isocrates</i> , rhetorician. (B.C. 436-338.)
OV., <i>Ovid</i> , poet. (B.C. 43-A.D. 18.)	LUC., <i>Lucian</i> , rhetorician. (About A.D. 150.)
PERS., <i>Persius</i> , satirist. (A.D. 34-62.)	LYS., <i>Lysias</i> , orator. (B.C. 458-378.)
PLAUT., <i>Plautus</i> , comedian. (B.C. 254-184.)	MEN., <i>Menander</i> , comedian. (B.C. 342-291.)
PLIN., <i>Pliny</i> , the Younger, writer of letters. (A.D. 61-115.)	MIM., <i>Mimnermus</i> , poet. (About B.C. 600.)
PROP., <i>Propertius</i> , poet. (B.C. 51-18.)	MOSCH., <i>Moschus</i> , poet. (About B.C. 250.)
QUINT., <i>Quintilian</i> , rhetorician. (A.D. 40-118.)	PHIL., <i>Philemon</i> , comedian. (About B.C. 330.)
SALL., <i>Sallust</i> , historian. (B.C. 86-34.)	PIND., <i>Pindar</i> , poet. (B.C. 522-442.)
SEN., <i>Seneca</i> , tragedian. (Died A.D. 63.)	PLAT., <i>Plato</i> , philosopher. (B.C. 429-347.)
STAT., <i>Statius</i> , poet. (A.D. 61-96.)	SIMON., <i>Simonides</i> , poet. (B.C. 556-467.)
SUET., <i>Suetonius</i> , biographer. (About A.D. 116.)	SOPH., <i>Sophocles</i> , tragedian. (B.C. 495-406.)
TAC., <i>Tacitus</i> , historian. (A.D. 60-118.)	THEOC., <i>Theocritus</i> , poet. (About B.C. 280.)
TER., <i>Terence</i> , comedian. (B.C. 195-159.)	THEOG., <i>Theognis</i> , poet. (About B.C. 550.)
TIB., <i>Tibullus</i> , poet. (B.C. 54-18.)	THUC., <i>Thucydides</i> , historian. (B.C. 471-401?)
VARR., <i>Varro</i> , antiquarian. (B.C. 116-28.)	XEN., <i>Xenophon</i> , historian. (Born B.C. 444.)
VIRG., <i>Virgil</i> , poet. (B.C. 70-19.)	

PART I.

SYNTAX.

- 1 **Accidence** deals with the different *forms* of words; **Syntax** deals with the different *uses* of words, showing how words are employed, arranged and constructed with one another (Greek, *syntassō*, I arrange together). Syntax therefore deals with Sentences.

Sentences.

- 2 A Sentence is a complete thought expressed in language (Latin, *sententia*, a thought). Sentences are either Simple or Compound.

A **Simple Sentence** expresses one single thought, as, "he went to Athens".

A **Compound Sentence** expresses one principal thought and one or more dependent thoughts, as, "he went to Athens, that he might see Socrates". That part of the sentence which contains the leading thought is called the *Main* or *Principal Sentence*; that part which contains the dependent thought is called the *Dependent* or *Subordinate Clause*. We can always distinguish between them by seeing which will stand alone. Thus, "that he might see Socrates" makes no sense by itself, and is therefore the *Dependent Clause*; "he went to Athens" will stand alone: it is therefore the *Main Sentence*.

- 3 If two *Main Sentences* or two *Dependent Clauses* are linked together they are called *Coordinate*. Thus, "he went to Athens, and he stayed there" are two *Coordinate Main Sentences*;

“that he might see Socrates, and that he might converse with him” are two Coordinate Dependent Clauses.

The Particle which connects the Subordinate Clause to the Main Sentence or which joins together two Coordinate Clauses (*e.g. sup.*, “that,” “and”) is called a Conjunction (§ 27). The Conjunction “and” is also called the “Copula”.

Subject, Predicate and Connexion.

In a complete thought or sentence there are always at least two ideas, which are coupled together: *i.e.*,

- 4 (1) The **Subject**: the person or thing spoken about.

The Subject must be a *Substantive*, as, “Socrates”; or a Substantival word or phrase, such as a Substantive Pronoun, “he”; an Adjective or Participle used Substantivally, “a Greek,” “the dying”; a Verb Noun Infinitive, “to flee”; or even an entire Clause, “the fact that this is true”.

- 5 (2) The **Predicate**: that which is said (*predico, -are*, I state) about the Subject. The Predicate must be—

(a) An *Adjective*, as, “wise”; or a Pronoun, Participle, or Substantive used Adjectivally, as, “his,” “educated,” “a philosopher”.

We require here some word to connect the Predicate with the Subject, and to supply the connexion some part of the verb “to be” is generally used. Thus—

Socrates (subject) was (connexion) wise (predicate).

Obs.—The verb “to be” so used is called the **Copula** because it couples two ideas together. (Note, therefore, that the word “copula” is used in two senses, of the Conjunction “and,” and of the verb “to be”.)

(b) A *Verb, e.g.*, “speak”. Here the connexion is contained in the Predicate itself, and no connecting word is necessary. Thus—

Socrates (subject) spoke (predicate, including connexion).

6 *Note 1.*—With the Predicative Adjective the copula “to be” is often omitted in statements; *e.g.*, “noble (is) the deed”. (The Verb “to be,” as expressing existence, *e.g.*, “there is,” must not be omitted.)

Note 2.—With both the Predicative Adjective and the Predicative Verb the Personal Pronoun as subject is often omitted, if unemphatic. In English this omission is almost confined to the Imperative: “be (thou) wise!” “speak (thou)!”. In Greek and Latin, owing to their use of inflexions, the omission can occur freely, without loss of clearness, in other Moods, *e.g.*, “(he) was wise,” “(he) may speak”.

7 Observe, therefore, that a complete Sentence, in its simplest shape, may consist of three words, or two, or even one; and may, with the omission of Pronoun or Copula, assume the following forms:—

Three words : 1. He is happy.

Two words : 2. He speaks.

“ ” 3. Happy (is) he. [Copula omitted.]

“ ” 4. Be (thou) happy. [Pronoun omitted.]

One word : 5. Speak (thou). [Subject, Predicate and Copula being all contained in one.]

Complements.

8 On the other hand, the Subject, Predicate and Copula may each have other words added to them to fill out their sense.

Thus: Many verbs, as, “I desire,” *require* the addition of another word to complete their meaning—“I desire success,” “I fear to die”. Other verbs, *e.g.*, “I consider,” *require* the addition not merely of one word, but of a second word in agreement with the first—“I consider Socrates wise”. In such a Sentence, “I” is the Subject; while the words “consider-Socrates-wise,” taken together, form the Predicate.

9 Beside the addition of such necessary words, any Subject, Predicate, or Copula *may* have a word added to it to amplify

its meaning, as, "the noble-Socrates undoubtedly-was very-wise". And the added word may itself be qualified by the addition of another word, as, "the exceedingly-noble-Socrates," etc. In such a sentence, "the-exceedingly-noble-Socrates" becomes the Subject, "undoubtedly-was" becomes the Copula, "very-wise" the Predicate.

These added words, necessary or otherwise, are called "Complements" because they "complete" the sense. Complements are of three kinds:—

- 10 **1. Substantival Complements.**—Substantives, or words used as such (§ 4), are added in the oblique cases to certain Verbs to complete their meaning. Such a Substantive is called the *Object* of the Verb—the *Direct Object* if it is in the Accusative; the *Indirect Object* if it is in the Dative. Thus, "Socrates desired wisdom" (Direct Object); "Socrates yielded to the Thirty Tyrants" (Indirect Object).

Substantival Complements are sometimes found with Adjectives and Substantives, as, "desirous of death," "obedience to the laws". Such complements are also called *Objective*.

- 11 **2. Adjectival Complements.**—(a) Adjectives, or words used as such (§ 4), are added to Substantives to complete their meaning, as, "the philosophic Socrates". An Adjective so used is called an *Attribute* or *Epithet* ("that which is put on" to the Substantive).

When a Substantive is thus used attributively, *e.g.*, "Socrates, the philosopher," it is said to stand in *Apposition* to the Substantive it qualifies.

- 12 (b) Many Verbs have an Adjective, referring to the Subject or to the Object, to complete their meaning. Such Adjectives are called "Secondary Predicates," if they refer to the Subject; "Tertiary Predicates," if they refer to the Object: to distinguish them from the simpler Predicates with the Verb-Copula "to be," which are called "Primary".

These Predicates are necessary complements to Copulative

and Factitive Verbs (§§ 21, 22), *e.g.*, "Socrates was considered wise" (Secondary); "They considered Socrates wise" (Tertiary). But they may also be involved in the construction of other Verbs: thus—

Primary Predicate : "The water was hot".

Secondary Predicate : "The water was brought in hot".

Tertiary Predicate : "They brought in the water hot".

(Observe that, in all its uses as a Predicate, the Adjective gives fresh information about the Subject: "the water is hot"; as an Attribute, it assumes that such information is already known: "the hot water".)

- 13 **3. Adverbial Complements.**—An Adverb or Adverbial phrase may be added to a Verb or Adjective to complete its meaning. Thus, in "the truly-great act with-prudence," "truly" is an Adverbial Complement qualifying the Adjective "great"; "with-prudence," *i.e.* "prudently," is an Adverbial Complement qualifying the verb "act".

Adverbial Complements qualify the word they refer to in respect of Time, Place, Circumstance, Manner, or Degree. Thus, "On-the-next-day Pompey remained quietly in-camp with-all-his-forces": "Pompey" is the Subject, "remained" is the Verb-Predicate, all the rest are Adverbial Complements of the Verb "remained".

- 14 *Note.*—The Complement may, like the Subject (§ 4), be not a mere word, but an entire Clause; and such Clauses will fall under one of the three headings of Complements just given above. Thus (1) Substantival: "Socrates desired that-he-should-be-wise"; (2) Adjectival: "Socrates, who-was-a-philosopher"; (3) "the truly great act so-that-they-are-always-prudent". See § 34.

- 15 In the second of these, which is a Relative Clause, the word to which the Relative refers is called the *Antecedent*, because, as a rule, it immediately "goes before" (*antecedo*) the Relative. Thus, "Socrates" is the Antecedent of "who".

I. The Parts of Speech.

There are eight Parts of Speech, which affect or are affected by the Syntax of a Sentence in various ways:—

- 16 **1. Substantives**: names of persons, places, things, as, “Cæsar,” “Athens,” “honour”.

A substantive may form the *Subject* or *Object* of the verb, or it may be used *Adverbially*: as, “Socrates spoke,” “he loved Socrates,” “he walked with Socrates”.

A substantive may, like an Adjective, form an *Attribute* or *Predicate*: as, “Socrates, the philosopher” (Apposition, § 11), “Socrates was a philosopher”.

A substantive may be either *Concrete*, expressing something which we can *perceive* (see, hear, etc.) with the five senses, as, “a hero”; or *Abstract*, expressing something which we can *conceive* only with the mind, as, “heroism”.

A substantive which includes several Persons or things is called *A Noun of Multitude*, as, “the army”. Names of persons and places are called *Proper Names*: “Cæsar,” “Athens”.

- 17 **2. Adjectives**: express the qualities of Substantives, as, “good,” “bad”.

An Adjective may be either an *Attribute (Epithet)* or *Predicate*: “the good man,” “the man is good”. (On the different forms of Predicate see § 12.)

An Adjective is often used as a Substantive: “the wicked”.

- 18 **3. Pronouns**: stand for a Substantive or Adjective, as, “he,” “his”; “which,” “what”. They are of five kinds:—

(a) *Personal*: “I,” “thou,” “he”. (*Intensive*, “self”; *Reflexive*, “himself”; *Reciprocal*, “each other”; *Possessive*, “his”.)

(b) *Demonstrative*: “this,” “that,” “the other”.

(c) *Indefinite*: “anyone,” “any,” “someone,” “some”.

(d) *Interrogative*: “who?” “which?”.

(e) *Relative*: “who,” “which”. (On the Antecedent to the Relative, see § 15.)

The plain Personal Pronouns, "he," "his," etc., are omitted if unemphatic.

(All, except the Personal, have *Adverbs*: "thus," "anyhow," "how?" "as".)

19 **4. Verbs**: express an action or state, as, "I smite," "I remain". Verbs are—

(a) *Transitive*: so called because their action "passes over" (*transeo*) to something else. These take a Direct Object in the Accusative and may also take an Indirect Object in the Dative: "I gave a-book to-him".

(b) *Intransitive*: so called because their action does not thus pass on: e.g., "I submit".—Intransitive Verbs cannot take a Direct Object, but they can sometimes take an Indirect Object: "I submit to him". Verbs which cannot take even an Indirect Object are sometimes called *Neuter* verbs.

Observe also the following kinds of Verbs:—

20 *Indeterminate Verbs*: (so called because they determine nothing by themselves) e.g., "I wish," "I try," "I am accustomed," require an Infinitive to complete their sense. This Infinitive is called a *Prolative Infinitive*, because it "carries on" (*profero*) the meaning of the Verb: e.g., "I wish to depart".

21 *Factitive Verbs*, i.e., verbs of (1) "making," (2) "saying," (3) "thinking," require not only a Direct Object in the Accusative, but also an Adjective or Substantive in the same case: as, "the Romans made Cicero consul".

22 *Copulative Verbs*, e.g., "I seem," "I become," etc., and the Verb-Copula "I am," take the same case after them as before them, as, "Cicero became consul".—Factitive Verbs become, in the Passive, Copulative: as, "Cicero was made consul".

(On Factitive and Copulative Verbs see further Primary, Secondary, Tertiary Predicate, § 12.)

23 *Note 1*.—The *Infinitive* is not only a Verb, but also a Substantive: as, "I desire to-die" (= I desire death)—Object;

“to-die is pleasant”—Subject. And so with other Substantival uses (§ 16).

24 *Note 2.*—The *Participle* is not only a Verb, but also an Adjective, *e.g.*, “the stolen apples”—Attribute; “the apples are stolen”—Predicate. So with other Adjectival uses (§ 8).

25 **5. Adverbs** qualify Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs: as, “I walk slowly,” “truly noble,” “almost rightly”. They are classified according to their meaning as, (a) Modal, “he acted well”; (b) Local, “he lives here”; (c) Temporal, “then he fled”.

Note.—Modal adverbs include words expressing Negation, Emphasis, Interrogation, “not,” “indeed,” “whether”.

26 **6. Prepositions**, words prefixed (*prepono*) to other words, have two uses:—

(a) As prefixed to a *Substantive* in the Oblique Cases, they define further the relation of that Substantive to the rest of the Sentence, as, “I stood over him”.

(b) As compounded with a *Verb* (Substantive, Adjective, or Adverb), and making one word with it, they qualify its meaning, as, “he over-stated the truth” (“an over-statement”); and sometimes affect the construction that it takes, *e.g.*, “they overran the country,” where the Intransitive Verb “ran” becomes Transitive by the addition of the Preposition “over”.

(Many Prepositions were originally Adverbs, and some retain an Adverbial force, *e.g.*, “how much is over?”.)

27 **7. Conjunctions** connect words, phrases, sentences. They are of two kinds:—

(a) *Coordinate Conjunctions*, “and,” “but,” etc., which couple similar words, phrases or sentences.

(b) *Subordinate Conjunctions*, “that,” “if,” etc., which join the Subordinate Clause to the Main Sentence.

(The Coordinate Conjunction “and” is also called the “copula,” § 3.)

28 **8. Interjections**: words of exclamation, as, “alas!”.

29 These eight Parts of Speech are also divided into three classes :—

(i.) *Nouns* (*viz.*, (1) Substantives, (2) Adjectives, (3) Pronouns—admitting of Declension).

(ii.) *Verbs* (admitting of Conjugation).

(iii.) *Particles* ((5) Adverbs, (6) Prepositions, (7) Conjunctions, (8) Interjections—admitting no Inflection).

N.B.—The term “Noun” is used particularly of the Substantive.

Of these, the first two, the Nouns and Verbs, both affect and are affected by the Syntax of a Sentence; the Particles (except the Prepositions) have little effect on the grammar of a Sentence, and mainly supplement the sense.

II. Principal Sentences.

30 Principal Sentences are of three kinds :—

(1) **Direct Statement** : *e.g.*, “he has succeeded”.

(2) **Direct Command, Wish, and Exhortation** : “succeed thou!” “oh, that he may succeed!” “let us succeed!”.

(3) **Direct Question** : *e.g.*, “has he succeeded?”.

Note.—Exclamation partakes of the character of all those, but most often resembles the last : “has he succeeded!”.

(The term *Exhortation* is confined to the First Person, Sing. and Plur. : “let us succeed!”.)

III. Subordinate Clauses.

Subordinate or Complementary Clauses are, like Complementary words (§§ 9-12), of three kinds :—

31 **1. Substantival Clauses** : these correspond to the three forms of Principal Sentence :—

(a) **Indirect Statement** : “he mentioned that he had succeeded”.

(b) **Indirect Command or Wish** : “we pray Heaven that he may succeed”.

(c) **Indirect Question** : “you ask whether he has succeeded”.

In these instances the Substantival Clause forms the *Object* of the Main Verb. It may also, with Impersonal Verbs and Phrases, form the *Subject*, “that-he-may-succeed is our desire”. As Subject, the Clause is often “anticipated” in English by the Pronoun “it” : “it is our desire that he may succeed”.

The Substantival Clause may also stand in Apposition to a Neuter Pronoun, *e.g.*, “we only desire this, that he may succeed”; or as a Cognate Accusative (§ 232), “we exhorted him to succeed”.

(Indirect Statements and Questions are not always dependent on words of actual statement or enquiry. Thus, “it is certain that he did this” is an Indirect Statement; “they told us,” or “we did not know, who did this” is an Indirect Question: the Direct forms being “he did this,” “who did this?”.)

32 **2. Adverbial Clauses** express—

(a) **Purpose** (*in order that*): “he came to Athens in order that he might see Socrates”.

(b) **Consequence** (*so that*): “he fought so well that he could not be resisted”.

(c) **Condition** (*if*): “if you are good, you will be happy”.

(d) **Concession** (*although, even if*): “although he had failed, he tried again”.

(e) **Cause** (*because, since*): “he spoke well, because he was an Athenian”.

(f) **Manner, Comparison** (*as, as if, than*): “as you sow, so will you reap”.

(g) **Time** (*when, before, after, since, till*): “when day dawned, the Gauls attacked the camp”.

(h) **Place** (*where, whither, whence*): “he remained where I left him”.

33 **3. Adjectival Clauses** are only of one kind, *viz.*—

Relative Clauses (*who, which*): “the friend^d in whom I trusted”.

Note.—The Antecedent.—The word to which a Relative Clause refers is called the Antecedent (§ 15), *e.g.*, “the friend”. Even an Adverbial Clause may have an *Adverbial* Antecedent, as, “he remained there, where I had left him”.

The Antecedent to a Relative is often omitted if a Personal Pronoun, as, “who was the thane, lives yet” (Shakespeare). But observe that the insertion of an Antecedent will often convert an Indirect Question into a Relative Clause. These two Clauses are specially hard to distinguish. Thus:—

“I asked him who had done this”: Indirect Question (Conjunctive Mood, § 360).

“I asked him the man who had done this”: Relative Clause (Indicative Mood, § 459).

34 *Obs.*—The three Clauses—Substantival, Adverbial, Relative—may be tested by substitution. Thus:—

(1) “He mentioned that-he-had-succeeded,” *i.e.*, his success: Substantival.

(2) “He fought so-well-that-he-could-not-be-resisted,” *i.e.*, irresistibly: Adverbial.

(3) “The friend in-whom-I-trusted,” *i.e.*, my trusty friend: Adjectival.

The hardest to test in this way is the Adverbial Clause. If neither a Substantive nor an Adjective will make sense, the Clause is Adverbial.

Agreement and Government.

35 The Subject, Predicate, Copula, and Complement, whether these be expressed by one word or an entire Clause, stand in a certain relation to each other. This relation is called **Construction**; and Construction is of two kinds, **Agreement** and **Government**.

36 A word is said to *agree* with another word if its inflexions conform to it. Thus, in the Sentence “the man runs,” the Verb-Predicate “runs” agrees with the Subject “man,” because

both are Singular. If we said "the man run," the Verb would not "agree" with its Subject.

37 A word is said to *govern* another word if it requires a certain inflexion in that word. Thus we say "I saw him," because the Verb "see" is Transitive and requires a Direct Object in the Accusative. If we said "I saw he," a law of Government would be violated.

38 So with Clauses. If we said "he comes that he might see," instead of "that he may see," we should violate a law of Agreement. If we said "he compelled us that we might go," instead of "to go," we should be violating a law of Government.

39 The laws of Government, along with the general usage of words and clauses, are given below in II. The Parts of Speech; III. The Syntax of the Simple Sentence; and The Syntax of the Compound Sentence.

The laws of Agreement of Clauses, called *Sequence*, are given in § 343. The laws of Agreement of words, called the **Concords** (*concordia*, agreement), are as follows:—

AGREEMENT.

The Four Concords.

40 1. The Concord of the Verb. 1. The Concord of the Verb.

"The Verb agrees with its Subject in Gender, Number and Case."

Tu pulsas, ego vapulo tantum.

JUV.

You beat, I am only beaten.

οἴχεται πατήρ, γελῶσι δ' ἐχθροί.

SOPH. My father is dead, and mine enemies laugh.

41 2. The Concord of the Adjective. 2. The Concord of the Adjective.

"The Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number and Case."

Verae amicitiae sempiternae sunt.

CIC.

True friendships are eternal.

φθείρουσιν ἤθη χρῆσθ' ὀμιλίαι
κακαί. *Evil companionships corrupt
good manners.*

42 3. The Concord of the Substantive.

“The Substantive agrees in Case with the Substantive to which it stands in Apposition (§ 11) or as Predicate.”

Procas, rex Albanorum, duos filios,
Numitorem et Amulium, habuit.

LIV.

*Procas, King of the Albans, had
two sons, Numitor and Amulius.*

Ἑλλήνων ἀρχηγὸς Πανσανίας.

THUC.

Pausanias, general of the Greeks.

Κύρον σατράπην ἐποίησεν. XEN.

He appointed Cyrus as Satrap.

43 4. The Concord of the Relative.

“The Relative agrees with its Antecedent (§ 15) in Gender and Number.” (In Case, it depends for construction on its own Clause.)

Quis est hic homo, quem ante
aedes video? PLAUT.

*Who is this man, whom I see be-
fore the house?*

φῆν δεξιὰ χεῖρ, ἧς σὺ πόλλ' ἔλαμ-
βάνον. EUR.

*Alas, right hand, from which thou
didst receive much.*

The Composite Subject.

Where there are several Subjects to one Verb or Predicate, they may be treated in two different ways:—

44 A. together :

They may be taken together as one Subject, with the Verb or Adjective in agreement :

Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare
visi sunt. *Castor and Pollux were
seen to fight from horses.*

ὁ Σωκράτης καὶ ὁ Πλάτων σοφοὶ
ἦσαν.

Socrates and Plato were wise.

45 If they differ in Person, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third :

Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus. CIC.

If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

ἐγὼ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πρέσβεις περιήλθομεν. DEM.

The other ambassadors and I went round.

(We can always find the Person by seeing what we should substitute for the several subjects—"we," "you," or "they".)

If they differ in *Gender*, (a) the Masculine is preferred, if there is one; or (b) they are grouped as Neuter things:

(a) Rex regiaque classis una profecti. LIV.

The king and the royal fleet started together.

(a) ἡ τύχη καὶ ὁ Φίλιππος ἦσαν τῶν ἔργων κύριοι. ÆSCHIN.

Chance and Philip were responsible for what happened.

(b) Secundae res, honores, imperia, victoriae fortuita sunt. CIC.

Success, office, command, victory, are all things of chance.

(b) ἦν ἡ ἀγορὰ καὶ τὸ πρυτανεῖον Παρίῳ λίθῳ ἡσκημένα. HDT.

The market-place and the town-hall were decorated with marble.

46 B. separately:

Less often they are taken separately, the Predicate agreeing with the nearest Subject, and being understood with the rest:

Orgetorigis filia et unus e filiis captus est. CAES. *The daughter of Orgetorigis and one of his sons was captured.*

σύ τε Ἕλληνας εἶ καὶ ἡμεῖς. XEN.

You are Greek and so are we.

47 Notes on the ConCORDS.

The verb "to be" as Copula is often omitted:

Nihil bonum, nisi quod honestum. CIC.

Nothing is good, except what is honourable.

As forming part of an Auxiliary Tense, it is often omitted

Neuter Plurals are usually regarded in the lump and followed by a Singular Verb:

διὰ τὰς γυναῖκας πάντα τὰ κακὰ γίνεταί. EUR.

All evils happen through women.

But living people take, as a rule, a Plural Verb:

not merely in the Indicative, but also in the Infinitive :

Postquam exempta fames epulis mensæque remotæ. VIRG.

After their hunger was appeased by the banquet and the viands were removed.

Emissam hiemem sensit Neptunus. VIRG.

Neptune felt that the storm had been let loose.

As the "Verb of existence" it cannot be omitted :

Seges est ubi Troja fuit. ΟΥ.

There is now corn where Troy once stood.

48 **The Personal Pronouns** are omitted unless they are Emphatic :

fugiunt, *they fly* ;

pulchra est, *she is beautiful* ;

erras, *you are wrong*.

The Personal Pronoun may be thus also omitted where a Substantive stands in Apposition to it.

Hannibal peto pacem. LIV.

I, Hannibal, seek for peace.

So, as Antecedent to a Relative (*cf.* Shakspeare, "who was the thane, lives yet" ; *qui s'excuse, s'accuse*).

Bis dat, qui cito dat.

(He) who gives readily, gives twice.

τὰ τέλη τὸν Βρασίδαν ἐξέπεμψαν. ΤΗΥC.

The authorities sent out Brasidas.

The Dual. Strict agreement is found chiefly where the Subject is one word. Otherwise the Verb is Plural.

τὼ ἀδελφῶ ἄμφω ἄπαιδε ἐτελευτήσατήν. ΙΣΑΕΥC. *The two brothers both died childless.*

The Verb "to be," as Copula, is often omitted, as in Latin, but not with Auxiliary Tenses. As "the Verb of existence" it must not be omitted :

οὐκέτ' ἔστι Τροία. ΕΥΡ.

Troy is no more.

(As the verb of existence, εἰμί retains its accent.)

The Personal Pronouns are omitted as in Latin.

Θεμιστοκλῆς ἦκω παρά σε. ΤΗΥC.

I, Themistocles, am come to thee.

ὃν οἱ Θεοὶ φιλοῦσιν, ἀποθνήσκει νέος. *(He) whom the gods love dies young.*

49 **A Noun of Multitude** may be treated as Masculine Plural :

A Noun of Multitude may be treated as Masculine Plural :

Pars per agros dilapsi, pars urbes
petunt finitimas. LIV.

*Part scattered over the fields, part
made for the neighbouring cities.*

- 50 **The "Neuter of the Thing"**
should be observed :

Triste lupus stabulis. VIRG.

*The wolf is a sad thing for the
folds.*

Urbem fecisti quod prius orbis
erat. PROP. *Thou hast made into
a city what was once a world.*

- 51 **The Relative** is usually
attracted to the Gender and
Number of a Predicate Noun :

Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est.
LIV.

*Thebes, which is the Capital of
Boeotia.*

So with Factitive Verbs :

Ii sempiterni ignes quas stellas
dicimus. CIC.

*Those eternal fires which we call
stars.*

(See further "Attraction" and "Sense-Construction," § 551.)

- 52 **The Agreement of Pronouns** should be noticed, especially of
"this" and "that" used as Predicates, and of the English
"it," referring to a previous Substantive :

Hic amor, haec patria est. VIRG.

*This is my love, and this my
country.*

Ubi est liber? Perdidit eum.

Where is the book? I have lost it.

μέρος τι ἀνθρώπων οὐχ ἡγούνται
θεούς. PLAT.

*Some portion of mankind do not
believe in the gods.*

- The "Neuter of the Thing"**
should be observed :


καλὸν ἢ ἀλήθεια καὶ μόνιμον.

PLAT. *Truth is a beautiful and
abiding thing.*

τοῦτό γε αὐτό, ἢ ἀδικία. PLAT.
*This very thing, injustice. (Appo-
sition.)*

- The Relative** is regularly
attracted from the *Accusative*
to the Genitive or Dative of
its Antecedent. The Article is
here usually omitted and the
Noun placed last.

ἀμαθέστατοί ἐστε ὧν ἐγὼ οἶδα
Ἑλλήνων. THUC. *You are the most
ignorant of all the Greeks I know.*

( This attraction must
not take place from the Nom-
inative.)

ἐκεῖνός ἐστιν ἔλεγχος μέγιστος.

LYS. *That is a very great proof.*

ποῦ ἐστιν ἡ βιβλος; ὀλώλεκα
αὐτήν.

Where is the book? I have lost it.

PART II.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

There are eight parts of speech : 1. Substantives, 2. Adjectives, 3. Pronouns, 4. Verbs, 5. Adverbs, 6. Prepositions, 7. Conjunctions and Particles, 8. Interjections.

Of these, the first three bear the common name of "Nouns," being sometimes called respectively "Noun-Substantives," "Noun-Adjectives" and "Pronouns" (§ 29).

1. Substantives.

53 The *Singular* is sometimes used for the *Plural*, especially with names of nations and in military phrases :

E.g., Romanus, the Romans (or the Roman commander). *E.g.*, ἡ ἵππος, the cavalry, the horse (N.B. the Gender).

The *Plural* is sometimes used for the *Singular*, especially in poetry :

E.g., clypeus, dona parentis. *E.g.*, χρυσὸς, δῶρα θεοῦ. Hom. Virg. A shield, his father's gift. Gold, the gift of the god.

(In Prose many such instances are only apparent :

E.g., castra, a camp; lit. its "bastions".) *E.g.*, δώματα, a house; lit. "rooms".)

Often the *Plural* implies separate manifestations of the *Singular Noun* :

E.g., religio, religion; religiones, religious observances. *E.g.*, κρέας, meat; κρέα, pieces of meat.

54 *Abstract Nouns* (§ 16) are often used for *Concrete*; the names of deities for the things they patronise :

E.g., genus, a son; Mars, war. *E.g.*, ὄμλῖα, companions.
(Cf. "a relation," i.e. one related.) Ἡφαίστος, fire.)

Sometimes Substantives are used for *Adjectives* (but such phrases as "a China cup," "a hat-box," would be impossible):

E.g., bellator equus. VIRG.
A war-horse.

E.g., Ἑλλάδα γλώσσαν. ΗΔΥ.
The Greek language.

2. Adjectives.

55 Adjectives are often used for *Substantives*, the gender showing whether a man, woman or thing is meant :

E.g. :—
Bonos boni diligunt. CIC.
The good love the good.

E.g., ἀγαθός τις, a good man ; but
still more often with the article,
ὁ ἀγαθός, the good man.

Neuter Adjectives in the Singular so used are often equivalent to *Abstract Nouns* :

Omne tulit punctum, qui miscuit
utile dulci. HOR.

*He has won every vote, who has com-
bined instruction with amusement.*

οἶδεν τό γ' αἰσχρόν, κανόνι τοῦ
καλοῦ μαθών. EUR.

*He knoweth evil, having learnt it
by the standard of good.*

56 **The Adjective with the Substantive** (*Epithet*) (§ 11) : **The Adjective with the Substantive** (*Epithet*) (§ 11) :

Two Epithets are not used so often of one Noun without a Copula as in English :

E.g., boni et honesti viri, good,
honest men.

E.g., καλοί τε ἀγαθοὶ πολῖταιί,
good, honest citizens.

(But *multus* need have no Copula if the other Epithet and its Substantive form one idea.)

N.B.—With *πολύς* a Copula must be used : πολλά καὶ καλὰ ἔργα, many noble acts.

57 *Note.*—*Any, some, more, none* are often expressed by **quid, aliquid, plus, nihil** with the Genitive :

Ne quid detrimenti respublica
capiat. CIC. *That the State may
not suffer any harm.*

Note.—ἡμίσις agrees in Gender and Number with the Substantive, but the latter is in the Genitive :

αἱ ἡμίσειαι τῶν νέων ἀπέπλευσαν.
THUC.
Half the ships sailed away.

58 *N.B.*—In phrases of Time and Place, “the beginning of,” “the top of,” etc., the Adjective must agree :

Viz., with **summus, medius, imus, primus, ultimus** :

E.g., Primâ luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur. CAES.

At dawn of day the top of the mountain was held by Labienus.

(Distinguish mons summus, a very high mountain, § 90.)

Viz., with ἄκρος, μέσος, πρῶτος, ὕστατος :

E.g., πεδίον ἐπ’ ἄκρον, to the edge of the plain.

(Note the article in μέση ἡ πόλις, the middle of the city ;

ἡ μέση πόλις, the middle city of three, § 102.)

59 **The Adjective in connexion with the Verb (Predicate)** :

Beside the simple (*Primary*) Predicate with the Verb “to be,” the Predicate is sometimes involved in the sentence (*Secondary* or *Tertiary Predicate*, § 12) : *cf.* in English “he wears his hair long”.

Latin marks this by the position of the Adjective (§ 90) :

Roma patrem patriae Ciceronem libera dixit. JUV. (*Secondary.*)

Rome was free when she named Cicero the Father of his country.

The Adjective in connexion with the Verb (Predicate) :

Greek marks this by the position of the Article (§ 95) :

οὐ γὰρ βάνανσον τὴν τέχνην ἐκτησάμην. SOPH. *No vulgar art was this that I acquired. (Tertiary.)*

(So, often with ἔχω.)

60 Note the following :—

Primus feminam servavit.

He was the first to save the woman.

Feminam servavit primam.

The woman was the first person he saved.

Primum servavit feminam.

The first thing he did was to save the woman.

πρῶτος τὴν γυναῖκα ἔσωσεν.

πρώτην τὴν γυναῖκα ἔσωσεν.

πρῶτον τὴν γυναῖκα ἔσωσεν.

61 Adjectives are often used *Adverbially* : *cf.* in English “come quick,” “like ghosts that darkling roam” :

Socrates laetus venenum hausit.

SEN.

Socrates readily drank the poison.

παρὰ δὲ Μαντινείαν ἔτι σκοταῖος

παρήλθεν. XEN. *He passed Man-*

tinea while it was still night.

Comparatives.

After Comparatives two constructions are possible :

- 62 (a) A plain **Ablative** (see § 263) : (a) A plain **Genitive** (see § 263) :

Neminem Lycurgo utiliorem
Sparta genuit. VAL. MAX.

*Sparta produced no more useful
citizen than Lycurgus.*

ὦ παῖ, γένοιο πατρός εὐτυχέ-
τερος. SOPH.

*My son, may you be more fortunate
than your sire.*

- 63 (b) **quam**, "than," with the same Case after it as before it : (b) ἤ, "than," with the same Case after it as before it :

Nulli flebilior quam tibi, Vergili.
HOR.

*By none to be more lamented,
Virgil, than by thee.*

οὐκ ἐλάσσονος ἢ πεντακοσίων
ταλάντων. THUC.

*It amounted in value to not less
than 500 talents.*

(With the Nominative or Accusative, the first is more usual, though both are possible ; with any other Case, the second is necessary for clearness.)

- 64 Before **Numerals** the Particle "than" is usually omitted after Adverbs meaning "more" or "less" :

Romani paullo plus sescenti
cecidērunt. LIV.

*Rather more than six hundred
Romans fell.*

ἀπέθανον ὀλίγῳ ἐλάσσους πενή-
κοντα. THUC.

*There fell rather less than fifty
men.*

- 65 **Two Adjectives or Adverbs** compared with each other are as a rule both put in the Comparative :

E.g. :—
Libentius quam verius. CIC.
With more zeal than honesty.

μανικώτεροι ἢ ἀνδρείοτεροι.
PLAT. *With more frenzy than cour-
age ("the courage of despair").*

- 66 The Comparative is sometimes used absolutely in the sense of "rather," "too," "somewhat"—"comparatively speaking" :

In verbis nimius, et in com-
positione longior. QUINT.

*Too verbose and, in his periods,
somewhat lengthy.*

Μαιανδρίῳ δὲ τυράννῳ ἦν
ἀδελφὸς ὑπομαργότερος. HDT.

*Maeandrius the tyrant had a
brother who was just a little mad.*

67 *Obs.*—Comparatives are usually qualified, not by an ordinary Adverb, but by the Instrumental Case (§ 267):

Multo major, *much bigger.* πολλῶ μείζων, *much bigger.*

68 Some freer idioms are found with the Comparative, *e.g.* :

Opinione celerius, *sooner than* ἐλπίδος κρείσσον, *better than one could be expected.*
could be expected. *could expect.*

Superlatives.

A Superlative, like a Comparative, may be used either absolutely, or in relation to another word :

69 **1. very** : absolutely—of degree : **1. very** : absolutely—of degree :

E.g. :— ἦν γὰρ Θεμιστοκλῆς δι' ἐλαχίστης βούλης κράτιστος γνώμων. THUC. *For Themistocles was very ready in forming plans on very little thought.*
 Ego sum miserior quam tu, quae es miserima. CIC. *I am more wretched than you, who are most wretched.*

70 **2. the most** : usually with a Genitive : **2. the most** : usually with a Genitive :

Indus, qui est omnium fluminum maximus. CIC. ἐπεδείκνυ τῶν ἵππων τοῖς εὐφυστάτους. XEN. *He proceeded to point out the finest of the horses.*
The Indus, which is the largest of all rivers.

71 Observe **quisque** with a Superlative, usually in the Singular and with a Singular Verb—"all the best," etc. : Observe that, even in this sense, the Article is omitted if the Superlative is Predicate (§ 93):

Optimum quidque rarissimum est. CIC. Περσῶν πολὺ κάλλιστος ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ. XEN. *My father was by far the most handsome of the Persians.*
All the best things are most rare.


72 A Superlative is often used in a Relative Clause,—sometimes where we should leave it in the Main Sentence :

Noctu de servis suis quem habuit fidelissimum ad regem misit. NEP. θυμοῦ δι' ὀργῆς ἦτις ἀγρωτάτη. SOPH. *Be wroth with the fiercest anger thou dost know.*
He sent to the king by night the most trusty slave he had.

- 73 *N.B.*—**Quam** with a Superlative, “as much as possible”:
E.g., quam optimus, the best man in the world (§ 455).
 So with a Superlative Adverb:
quam celerrime, with all speed.
- Observe the omission of the Verb “I am able” in ὧς with a Superlative, “as much as possible”:
E.g., ὧς τάχιστα, with all speed (§ 455) (lit. as he most quickly could).
- 74 The Superlative may be strengthened either by ordinary Adverbs, or, like the Comparative, by the Instrumental:
Longe or multo optimus, far the best. *πολύ or πολλῶ ἄριστος, far the best.*
 (Note the phrase, *ut qui maxime, most of all*, lit. “as who does it most”.) (Note the phrase, *ἐν τοῖς πρώτοι, the very first—originally ἐν τοῖς πρώτοις, among the first.*)

Numerals.

- 75 The order in Compound Numerals resembles English: (a) *seventeen*; (b) *twenty-four* or *four and twenty*; (c) *six hundred and thirty-five*. This applies to both Cardinals and Ordinals: thus—
- (a) From 13 to 19, the smaller precedes without *et*:
Septendecim, septimus decimus.
- (a) From 13 to 19, the smaller precedes with *καί*:
ἐπτακαίδεκα, ἐπτακαιδέκατος.
- (b) From 21 to 99, either (1) the larger precedes without *et*, or (2) the smaller precedes with *et*:
- (b) From 21 to 99, either (1) the larger precedes without *καί*, or (2) the smaller precedes with *καί*:
- (1) *Viginti quattuor, vicesimus quartus;*
- (1) *εἴκοσι τέσσαρες, εἰκοστὸς τέταρτος.*
- (2) *Quattuor et viginti, quartus et vicesimus.*
- (2) *τέσσαρες καὶ εἴκοσι, τέταρτος καὶ εἰκοστός.*
- (c) With three or more figures, the largest, as a rule, precedes, with or without *et*:
- (c) With three or more numbers, the largest, as a rule, precedes with *καί*:
Sescenti (et) triginta (et) quinque. *ἑξάκόσιοι καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε.*

(Exceptions occur; but one rule is absolute:  Above 20, the smaller must not precede without a Copula.)

(a) The Cardinals.

76 Round numbers (expressed, as in English, by Adverbs and Prepositions, "about," "up to") may be treated as one phrase:

Ad trecentos occisi sunt.
Quite 300 men were slain.

εἰς τριακοσίους ἀπόλοντο.
Quite 300 men were slain.

77 Note.—**Mille** is an Adjective, **milia** a Substantive:

Mille greges illi. Ov.
He had a thousand flocks.

Note **the Article** of round numbers (cf. "the fifties"):

ἦν δὲ, ὅτε ἐτελεύτα, ἀμφὶ τὰ πενήκοντα ἔτη. XEN.

Quattuor milia hominum Capitolium occupavere. Liv.

Four thousand men seized the Capitol.

He was about fifty when he died.

So τὰ δύο μέρη, two thirds ("the usual two parts"). Cardinals in -os may be used in the Singular:

But if smaller numbers are added, the phrase becomes adjectival:

Tria millia et trecenti homines, 3,300 men.

ἄσπις μυρία. XEN. 10,000 foot (see § 53).

Distinguish *μύριοι*, 10,000; *μυρία*, an indefinite number.

(b) The Ordinals.

78 The Ordinals are used in expressions of time:

Octavus annus est ex quo Britanniam vicistis. Tac.

It is eight years since you conquered Britain.

μετὰ τὴν ἐν Ποτιδαίᾳ μάχην μηνὶ ἕκτῳ. THUC.

Six months after the battle of Potidaea.

Note the use of Ordinals with **quisque**:

Tertio quoque verbo excitabatur. Cic.

He became excited at every other word.

Note the use of Ordinals with **αὐτός**:

ἦρχε Δωριεὺς τρίτος αὐτός. THUC.

Dorieus was in command with two colleagues.

Observe alter, second (not secundus); unus et vicesimus, 21st (not primus).

(Observe the "Temporal Ordinals," *δευτεραίος*, on the second day, etc.)

(c) Other Numerals.

79 **Distributives**: *how many each or at a time*:

Militibus quini et viceni denarii dati sunt. LIV. *Twenty-five denarii were given to each soldier.*

Note.—Distributives are used with Plural Nouns, but the plural of **unus** is retained:

Una castra jam facta ex binis videbantur. CAES. *One camp now seemed to have been formed from two.*

Distributives are used in multiplication: bis quini, *twice five* (not bis quinque).

Multiplicatives: *e.g.*, duplex, *double* (*cf.* geminus).

Obs.—The Distributives and Multiplicatives are often used in poetry for Cardinals:

Centenas manus, *an hundred hands*; duplices palmas, *his two palms*; geminas acies, *the two eyes.*

80 **The want of a Definite Article in Latin.**

A. The Article is ignored in Latin:

Latin has no Definite Article. Thus, *e.g.*, pugna may mean either (1) *a battle* or (2) *the battle*; boni can either be (1) *an Adjective qualifying a Noun*, “good (citizens),” or (2)

Distributives do not exist in Greek. The idea of Distribution is expressed by **ἕκαστος** or by a Preposition, *e.g.*, κατὰ with the Accusative:

κατὰ τὸν ὀπλίτην ἕκαστον δύο μναί. THUC.

Two minae per man.

Multiplicatives: *how many fold*: διπλούς, *etc.* (δισσός, *double*, is half-multiplicative).

Proportionals: *how many times as big as*: διπλάσιος, *etc.*

ὄρνις τριπλασίῳ Κλεωνύμου. AR. *A bird three times as big as Cleonymus.*

(Comparative Gen., § 263.)

Obs.—The Multiplicatives are often used in poetry for Cardinals: *e.g.*,

διπλοῖ Ἀτρεΐδαι } SOPH. *The*
δισσοῦς Ἀτρεΐδας } *two Atridae.*

THE ARTICLE.

The Article was originally (1) a *Demonstrative Pronoun*: which came to be used as (2) a *Relative Pronoun* and (3) the *Definite Article*.

(So in English, “I bought *that* book,” “the book *that* I bought,” “I bought *the* (= *that*) book.”—Similarly the Definite

a Substantive, "the good".—
Note also Neuters like *honestum*, "morality,"; and Participles like *fugientes*, "the
81 fugitives".

So with the idea of Possession: *e.g.*, *manu tenet*, *he holds in his hand*, lit. the hand.—
Observe also such phrases as:

Pompeii copiae plures erant quam
82 Caesaris. *The forces of Pompey were more in number than those of Caesar.*

(The only approximation to a Definite Article in Latin lies in the use of *ille*, and this usually implies some idea of fame:

83 *e.g.*, *Socrates ille*, *the famous Socrates*; *illud Homeri*, *that (well-known) saying of Homer.*)

B. Ways of supplying the want of an Article in Latin.

(1) In Adjectival phrases:

(a) By enclosing the Adjectival phrase:

E.g., *Magna ad Cannas pugna*, *the great battle of Cannæ*. *Caesaris erga me amor*, *Cæsar's love for me.*

84 So with the aid of a Participle:
Pugna ad Cannas facta, *the battle of Cannæ.*

(*N.B.* — "*Magna Cannis pugna*" would be impossible.)

(b) By a Relative Clause:

E.g., *Qui olim vivebant*, *the men of old.*

Article in French, "le," in Italian, "lo," in Spanish, "el," are all derived from the Latin Demonstrative "ille".)

Of the **Demonstrative** use a few instances survive in Attic Greek, *ὁ δέ*, *but he*; *οἱ μὲν—οἱ δὲ*, *some—others*. (Note also *ἦ δ' ὄς*, *said he*, *ὄς* being an older form of *ὁ*.)

And the **Relative** use is not rare in Attic Tragedy:

διπλῆ μάστιγι τὴν Ἄρης φιλεῖ.
ÆSCH.

With the double scourge which Ares loves.

But the chief use is that of the **Definite Article**.

The Article encircles a thing, so to speak, and separates it from all other things. Thus in "the good man": "the" distinguishes "good man" from all other men: Ⓞ. In this way it may mark either (1) particular things or (2) general classes:

(1) **The Definite Article** denotes what is well known or has been just mentioned or is otherwise particularised:

τῶν ἑπτα σοφώτατος ἦν Σόλων.
PLAT.

Solon was the wisest of the Seven Sages.

85 (c) By an Adjective :

E.g., Seditio domestica, *trouble at home.*

(2) In Substantival phrases:

(a) By *quod* with the Indicative :

E.g., Quod vales, valde me delectat. *Your being well delights me.*

86 (b) By a Participial Phrase :

E.g., Caesar occisus, *the death of Caesar.*

(c) By the Infinitive and Gerund :

E.g., Dulce est mori, *to die is pleasant;*

87 the Genitive, Dative and Ablative, and the Accusative after a Preposition being supplied by the Gerund : moriendi, moriendo, ad moriendum.

(3) In the distinction of Noun and Predicate :

(a) By a Relative Clause ; contrast the English in :

Qui boni sunt, ii sunt beati. *The good are happy.*

Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum. *Virtue is the only good thing.*

88 (b) By *pro* with the Ablative, *loco* with the Genitive, etc., after Factitive Verbs :

Omnes homines pro inimicis habebat. *He accounted all men his personal enemies.*

Note.—It has often a mild Possessive force :

ὅτι ταῦτα δοκεῖ, ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα. XEN.

Whoever approves of this, let him hold up his hand.

(*Cf.* French : Je porte dans la main, *I carry in my hand.*)

Obs.—With **Proper Names** the Article must be used with names of countries, ἡ Ἑλλάς, *Greece* (such words being really Adjectives, § 96) ; with other names the custom varies : Σωκράτης or ὁ Σωκράτης.

(2) The “**Generic Article**” denotes a class (*genus*) :

ὁ παῖς πάντων θηρίων δυσμεταχειρότατον. PLAT.

A boy is of all creatures the most difficult to manage.

Obs.—So often with **Abstract Nouns** : *e.g.*, ἡ δικαιοσύνη, *justice* (*cf.* French, l'honneur, *honour*).

The Article as a Noun-Maker.

1. The Article may turn most words into *Substantives* : *e.g.*, οἱ παῖλαι, *the men of old*, οἱ φεύγοντες, *the fugitives*, τὸ θνήσκειν, *death*, τὸ σύμφερον, *expediency*.

89 (c) By the position of the Predicate—in the case of Secondary and Tertiary Predicates :

90 Roma patrem patriae Ciceronem libera dixit. JUV. •

Rome was free when she called Cicero the father of his country.

So distinguish with *summus*, *medius*, *imus*, etc. :

Summus mons, the top of the mountain. *Mons summus*, the highest mountain.

Media via, the middle of the road. *Via media*, the middle road of three.

91 *viz.*, when used as Predicates, these Adjectives usually precede the Noun ; when used as Attributes, they usually follow it (§ 95).

The Order of Words.

The natural order of words in a Clause is: (1) Subject, (2) Direct Object, (3) Indirect Object and Adverbial Complements, (4) Verb :

92 Cicero librum Tulliae offerebat. Cicero offered Tullia a book.

Emphasis.—If any word is emphasised, it is put out of order—especially first or last, since these are the emphatic places. Thus :

(a) Librum Cicero Tulliae offerebat. It was a book Cicero offered Tullia.

2. The Article may turn most words into *Attributives* : e.g., ἡ ἄγαν ἐλευθερία, *excessive freedom*.

So with longer phrases, either Substantival or Adjectival :

τὸ τοῦ Σόλωνος, τὸ μηδένα εἶναι τῶν ζώντων ὄλβιον. HDT.

That saying of Solon's, that-no-one-living-is-happy.

μέμνησθε τῆς ἐν Σαλαμίῃ πρὸς Πέρσῃν ναυμαχίας. PLAT.

You remember the at-Salamis-against-the-Persians sea-fight.

(The Neuter Singular τό is sometimes equivalent to inverted commas :

τὸ δ' ὑμεῖς ὅταν εἶπω, τὴν πόλιν λέγω. DEM.

When I say "you" I mean the state.)

The Article with Subject and Predicate.

The Subject takes the Article, the Predicate does not :

E.g., νύξ ἡ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο. HDT. Day became night.

Note.—So the Object of Factitive Verbs is distinguished from the Predicate :

ὅστις καλέσει κάρδοπον τὴν καρδόπην. AR.

Whoever should call a cardopé (a tub) a cardopos.

(b) *Tulliae Cicero librum offerebat.*
It was to Tullia Cicero offered a book.

- 93 (c) *Offerebat Cicero librum Tulliae.*
It was only an offer that he made, etc.
(d) *Librum Tulliae offerebat Cicero.* It was Cicero who offered.

Attributes:—

(1) *Adjectives* usually **follow** their Noun: *librum egregium*, a fine book. So, too, *Nouns in Apposition*: *librum Iliada*, the book the Iliad.

- (2) *Genitives* usually **precede** the Noun: *Homeri librum*. So, too, the Pronoun *hic* and
94 *monosyllabic Pronouns of number and Adjectives of quantity*: e.g., *hunc librum*, *tot homines*, *multi viri*.

- (3) *Prepositional Phrases and cases governed by Participles or Adjectives are enclosed*; e.g., *librum de Bello Trojano scriptum*, a book written about the Trojan War; *librum Iliadi simillimum*, a book like the Iliad. But where two separate *Attributives, viz., a Genitive and Adjective, or a Prepositional Phrase and an Adjective*, occur
95 together, the Adjective comes first: e.g., *egregium de Bello Trojano librum*, a fine book on the Trojan War; *egregium boni Homeri librum*, the fine book of the good Homer.

The Article with Attributive and Predicate.

(a) With **Attributives**, e.g., the good man:

1. *ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ*, the good man.
2. *ὁ ἀνὴρ, ὁ ἀγαθός*, the man—the good one.
3. *ἀνὴρ ὁ ἀγαθός*, the good man.

(b) With **Predicates**, e.g., the man is good:

1. *ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός*, the man is good.
2. *ἀγαθὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ*, the man is good.

Of these, the first in each, corresponding to the English order, “the good man,” “the man (is) good,” is the most common: the others are used for emphasis or convenience. Especially (a) 2. is used with long Attributives:

οἱ στρατιῶται οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου πεφευγότες.

The soldiers who had fled from the war.

(The order must not be *ὁ ἀγαθὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ*, because *ἀνὴρ* adds nothing to *ἀγαθός*.)

Obs. 1.—The above applies also to the **Tertiary Predicate** (§ 12):

οὐ γὰρ βάνουσον τὴν τέχνην ἐκτησάμην. SOPH.

Not vulgar is this art that I acquired.

96 *Obs.*—Attributes also may be emphasized by alteration in their position, especially by separation from their Nouns: *egregium Cicero librum Tulliae offerebat, it was a fine one, that book which Cicero offered, etc.*

Note 1.—**Similar words** are usually put together: *honesti cum honestate omnia agunt, noble men act nobly in all things.* So *ipse* and *quisque* usually stand next to *se, suus*: *ipse sibi nocuit, he harmed himself.*

Note 2.—**Sum** as Copula usually comes between the Noun and Predicate; as the Verb of existence, it usually comes first: *homo est miser, the man is wretched*; *est homo miser, there is a wretched man.*

Note 3.—A **Monosyllable**, e.g., *se*, is usually put next to another monosyllable, or before a word beginning with a Vowel, where it may be elided.

98 *Note 4.*—**A word referring to the previous sentence** is usually put first in its own sentence. This is especially so with words like *is* or *tum*.

Order of Clauses.

1. *Relative Clauses* are usually **in the middle of the**

Obs. 2.—With **Geographical Phrases** the Proper name is usually treated as the Attributive. Contrast the English idiom:

ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμός or ὁ ποταμὸς ὁ Εὐφράτης.

The river Euphrates.

Note.—**Genitives** are exceptional:

1. ἡ τοῦ πατρὸς οἰκία, *my father's house.*

2. ἡ οἰκία τοῦ πατρός, *the house of my father.*

3. ἡ οἰκία ἡ τοῦ πατρός, *the house—my father's.*

4. τοῦ πατρὸς ἡ οἰκία, *my father's house.*

The first two, corresponding to the English order, are the more common; the last two the more emphatic.

Observe the order with a Genitive and an Epithet:

τὸ τῆς πόλεως μακρὸν τεῖχος, *the long wall of the city.*

Obs. 1.—*Personal Pronouns* come outside (2 and 4), *Reflexives* inside (1):

E.g., ὁ πατήρ μου, *my father*, or μου ὁ πατήρ, *MY father.*

ὁ ἑμαντοῦ πατήρ, *my own father.*

Obs. 2.—*Partitive Genitives* come outside (2 and 4):

Main Sentence — following, like Adjectives, the Noun they refer to :

Romulus, qui rex Romanorum erat, tempestate sublatu8 est.

Romulus, who was king of the Romans, was carried off by a storm.

Note 1.—A Relative Clause is often picked up by a Demonstrative Pronoun : qui boni sunt, ii sunt beati, *those who are good*, etc. ; and is often enclosed between an Attribute and a Noun : omnes quae sunt in Attica civitates, *all the states which are in Attica*.

Note 2.—When qui, quae, quod = et ille, etc., the Relative Clause may stand last : quod etiam accidit, *and this proved true*.

Obs.—Superlatives are often enclosed in a Relative Clause, where we leave them in the Main : quem fidelissimum habuit, *the truest friend he had*.

The Relative must stand first in its own sentence : quorum ob mortem, *owing to the death of whom*.

2. *Substantival Clauses* — Indirect Statement, Command, Question—usually come **after the Main Sentence**. So almost invariably *Consecutive ut* :

E.g., bad citizens, οἱ κακοὶ τῶν πολιτῶν, or τῶν πολιτῶν οἱ κακοί.

The Article with Pronominal Adjectives and with
πᾶς, ὅλος, μέσος, ἄκρος.

(Those marked * often have no Article ; with the rest the Article is necessary in prose, in poetry there is some licence.)

1. The *Predicative Position* is used with οὗτος, ὄδε, ἐκεῖνος ; ἄμφω, ἀμφοτέρω8 ; ἐκάτερο8, ἕκα8τος* :

E.g., οὗτο8 ὁ ἀνὴρ, or ὁ ἀνὴρ οὗτο8, this man.

Note.—Hence observe :

αὕτη ἐστὶν ἀνδρὸ8 ἀρετή. PLAT.

This is the virtue of a man (not "this virtue").

2. The *Attributive Position* is used with τοιοῦτο8*, τοιοῦδε*, τοσοῦτο8*, τοσοῦδε*, τηλικούτο8* ; ἕτερο8*, ἄλλο8* ; ἐμό8, σό8, ἡμέτερο8, ὑμέτερο8, σφέτερο8 : *e.g., ὁ ἐμό8 πατήρ (ὁ πατήρ μου, sup.), my father.*

Obs. 1.—τοιοῦτο8, etc., only have the Article of something just referred to (§ 84) :

E.g., τῆ8 τοιαύτη8 γνώμη8. DEM.
Of such an opinion as has just been touched upon.

Romulus suis imperavit ut Sabinos oppugnarent.

Romulus ordered his men to attack the Sabines.

3. *Adverbial Clauses*—Final, Conditional, Causal, Concessive, Comparative, Modal, Local, Temporal—usually come **before the Main Sentence**, because they precede it in time or thought and lead up to it :

Si hoc facies, poenas dabis.

If you do this, you will suffer for it.

Especially, **Clauses, like words, referring to what has preceded** must come first.

- 102 This is particularly the case with Temporal Clauses: Quod ubi vidit, abiit. *When he saw this, he departed.*

Obs. 1.—**A Substantive common to both Clauses** is usually put first—in the Main Clause. Contrast the English in: Caesar, ubi rediit, castra movit. *When Caesar returned, he struck camp.*

- 103 *Obs.* 2.—Clauses, like words, are **emphasised** by being put out of their place. But always **avoid accumulating verbs at the end**, e.g., erat, sublatus est; oppugnarent, imperavit. This may be avoided by altering the

Obs. 2.—**ἕτερος, ἄλλος** differ in meaning with and without the Article :

ἕτερος ἀνὴρ, *another man* ;

ὁ ἕτερος ἀνὴρ, *the other man.*

ἄλλοι, *others, alii* ;

οἱ ἄλλοι, *the rest, ceteri.*

3. Both *Predicative* and *Attributive* Positions are used with αὐτός, but in a different sense :

αὐτὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ, or ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτός, *the man himself.*

ὁ αὐτὸς ἀνὴρ, or ἀνὴρ ὁ αὐτός, *the same man.*

So with μέσος, ἄκρος, ἔσχατος (see § 58) :

μέση ἡ πόλις, *the middle of the city.*

ἡ μέση πόλις, *the middle city of three.*

With πᾶς* and ὅλος* the difference is hard to detect: πᾶσα ἡ πόλις, *all the city*; ἡ πᾶσα πόλις, *the whole city.* (But πᾶσα πόλις, *every city.*)

Note.—With **Proper Names** αὐτός, *self*, οὗτος and ἐκεῖνος may be used without the Article :

αὐτὸς Μένων. ΧΕΝ.
Menon himself.

position of the Verb in the sub-
Clause, or bringing down some
word to accompany the Verb of
the Main Sentence.

So especially with the deictic
(δείκνυμι, *I point*) οὕτωςί:

Τίμων οὕτωςί.
Timon here.

THE PRONOUNS.

1. The Personal Pronouns.

104 As there is no Personal Pronoun of the Third Person, the
Demonstratives are used instead :

Viz., **ille**, if emphatic; **is**, if
unemphatic.

Viz., **οὗτος**, **ἐκεῖνος**, emphatic;
αὐτόν (§ 108) or **ὁ δέ**, unemphatic.

105 The Personal Pronouns are expressed in the Nominative, if
emphatic (§ 47) :

Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos intro-
ducitis. CIC. *I expelled kings, you
are introducing tyrants.*

ἦ γὰρ σὺ κείνος; SOPH.
What, art thou he?

Note. — **Mei**, **tui**, **nostri**,
vestri are Objective; **nostrum**,
vestrum Subjective.

Note. — **ἐμέ**, **ἐμοῦ**, **ἐμοί** are
more emphatic than **με**, **μον**,
μοι.

106 The order of the Pronouns is usually the reverse of English,
the First Person coming first :

Hence Cardinal Wolsey's
"ego et rex meus," *my King*
and *I*, was grammatically
correct.

ἐγὼ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πρεσβεῖς περιήλ-
θομεν. DEM.
*The other envoys and I went
round.*

Remark.—*Use of the Persons.*

107 The First Person Plural may, as in English, be used for the
First Person Singular; but not the Second Plural for the
Second Singular :

De quo supra mentionem fecimus.
CIC. *Of which I made mention
above.*

τοῦτο πειρασόμεθα διηγήσασθαι.
XEN. *This I will endeavour to de-
scribe.*

Instances of the Second Plural for the Second Singular are only apparent :

Vestras, Eure, domos. VIRG. *The home of you winds, O Eurus.*

The First and Third Person Plural and Second Singular may all be used of general statements, as in English :

E.g., putes, *one would think*; ut perhibent, *as they say.*

The Masculine is usual here, even of a woman :

πεσούμεθ', εἰ χρή, πατρὶ τιμωρομένοι. SOPH. *I (Electra) will fall, if need be, avenging my father.*

E.g., φαίης ἄν, *one would suppose*; ὡς φασιν, *as they say.*

The Intensive Pronouns.

108 **Ipse**, *self*, was originally a strengthened form of *is*, *that man, he* : viz., *is-pse* ; but it is not always connected with the Third Person.

Ipse may be used in three ways :

(a) alone, in the Oblique Cases, of the Third Person only: *ipsum vidi, the man himself I saw.*

(b) Alone, in the Nominative, of any Person: *ipse vidi, I myself saw*; so *ipse vidit, etc.*

(c) With a Substantive: *e.g.*, *ipse vir, the man himself.*

Note the phrase, *ipsissima verba, the exact words.*

109 **Idem**, *the same* : originally *is-dem*. Observe :

Ego vir fortis, idemque philosphus. CIC.

I am a brave man, and also a philosopher.

αὐτός has three meanings :

(1) *him, her, them*, only in the Oblique Cases; and even so it must not stand first: *εἶδον αὐτόν, I saw him.*

(2) *self*, alone, or with a Substantive :

(a) alone, in the Oblique Cases, when it comes first; of the Third Person only: *αὐτόν εἶδον, the man himself I saw.*

(b) Alone, in the Nominative, of any Person: *εἶδον αὐτός, I myself saw*; so *εἶδεν αὐτός.*

(c) If it comes before or after an Article and Substantive: *ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτός* or *αὐτὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ, the man himself* (§ 101).

(3) *The same* : when it immediately follows the Article: *ὁ αὐτὸς ἀνὴρ, the same man* (see § 101).

(*Cf.* "the self-same man"; ΣΗΑΚ., "the self man".)

The Reflexive Pronouns.

- 110 The Personal Pronouns **me**, **te**, etc., may be used Reflexively: The Personal Pronouns cannot be used Reflexively, except in the phrase, *μοι δοκῶ*, *I seem to myself*.
 Quo te rapis? VIRG. *Whither are you betaking yourself?*
- 111 Both these and **se** may be strengthened by **ipse**: The compounds of αὐτός, ἐμάντον, etc., must be used:
 Omne animal se ipsum diligit. τὸ “γῶθι σαντόν” πανταχοῦ
 CIC. *Every animal loves itself* (or στί χρήσιμον. MEN. *The adage*
 se ipse). *“know thyself” is always useful.*

The Third Person Reflexive.

- 112 **Se** and **suus** must always be used instead of *is*, *ejus*, in reference to the Subject of their own Clause (*Direct Reflexive*), and are generally used in reference to the Subject of the Main Clause (*Indirect Reflexive*).
 ἐαυτόν, σφᾶς αὐτούς, σφέτερος αὐτῶν, ἐαυτῶν are used mainly of the *Direct Reflexive*, but may for emphasis be used in the Indirect; οἱ and σφᾶς are only, σφέτερος mainly, *Indirect*:
 (1) *Direct Reflexive*: Eng. “himself”:
 ὡς πᾶς τις αὐτόν τοῦ πέλας μᾶλλον φιλεῖ.
 How everyone loves himself more than his neighbour!
- 113 (1) *Direct Reflexive*: Eng. “himself”:
 Fur se telo defendit. CIC. *The thief defends himself with a weapon.*
- 114 (2) *Indirect Reflexive*: Eng. “him”:
 Pausanias servum oravit, ne se proderet. NEP. *Pausanias implored the slave not to betray him.*
 (On *se* as the Subject of the Infinitive in *Oratio Obliqua* see § 351.)
 ἔφη εἶναι ἀνδράποδον οἱ ἐπὶ Λαυρίῳ. ANDOK.
 He stated that he had a slave at Laurium.
 (On the Subject of *Oratio Obliqua* see § 351.)

But for clearness the Personal Pronoun is sometimes used for the Indirect Reflexive.

- 115 “His own”: the Possessive of the Reflexive Pronoun is often used not of the Subject, but of the prominent word :

Hannibalem sui cives e civitate egerunt. CIC.

His own citizens expelled Hannibal from the state.

Ἀλκιβιάδην οἱ ἑαυτοῦ πολῖται ἐξέβαλον ἐκ τῆς πόλεως.

His own citizens ejected Alcibiades from the state.

- 116 *Note.*—*Se* and *suis* are specially frequent in connexion with *ipse* and *quisque* :

Junius necem sibi ipse concevit. CIC.

Junius inflicted death on himself.

Note.—*αὐτόν, αὐτοῦ* are specially frequent in connexion with *αὐτός* and *ἕκαστος* :

καταλέλυκε τὴν αὐτὸς αὐτοῦ δυναστείαν. ÆSCHIN.

He has destroyed his own power.

- 117 The Third Person Reflexive may, in general statements, be used for the First or Second.

Quisque suos patimur manes. VIRG. *We suffer each his own ghostly punishment.*

οὐδὲ γὰρ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σύ γε ψυχὴν ὄρας. XEN.

For you do not see your own soul.

The Reciprocal Pronoun.

- 118 The Reflexive Pronoun “selves” is often used in a Reciprocal sense—“each other” :

Inter se amant, they love each other (ils s'aiment entre eux, ils s'entr'aiment).

βούλεσθε περιύοντες αὐτῶν πυνθάνεσθαι; DEM. *Do you wish to go about and ask each other?*

- 119 Or **alius alium** may be used :

Alius alii subsidium ferunt. CIC. *They bring help to each other.*

Or the “Reciprocal” **ἀλλήλους** may be used :

ἔσφενδονᾶτο χωρὶς ἀλλήλων μέλη. EUR. *His limbs were whirled apart from one another.*

(There is no proper Reciprocal Pronoun in Latin.)

(ἀλλήλους is contracted from ἄλλοι-ἄλλους, alii-alios.)

The Possessive Pronoun.

- 120 For the Possessive of the Third Person, when this is not Reflexive, the Genitive of the Demonstrative is used :

Viz. ejus, his, eorum, their : *Viz., αὐτοῦ, his, αὐτῶν, their*

E.g., Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu. Cic.

Chilius asks you, and I at his request.

(for the position see § 98):

ἀπέκτειναν οἱ Κερκυραῖοι τὸν παῖδα αὐτοῦ. The Corcyraeans put his son to death.

- 121 *Obs. 1.*—Possessives of all kinds are often strengthened by *ipsius*, agreeing with the Genitive implied :

E.g., Meā ipsius culpā, through my own fault (mei ipsius).

- 122 *Obs. 2.*—The Possessive is omitted if unemphatic :

E.g., Manum tollit, he raises his hand.

Obs. 1.—As Plural Reflexives, *ἡμέτερος αὐτῶν, ὑμέτερος αὐτῶν, our own, your own*, are preferred to *ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ὑμῶν αὐτῶν*; but *ἐαυτῶν, their own*, is more common than *σφέτερος αὐτῶν*.

Obs. 2.—The *Article* is used for an unemphatic Possessive :

E.g., ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα, let him raise his hand (§ 85).

2. The Demonstrative Pronouns.

- 123 **Hic** sometimes means *the latter*, **ille** *the former* :

Romulum Numa excepit; hic pace, ille bello melior fuit. LIV.

To Romulus succeeded Numa : the latter excelled in peace, the former in war.

Hic—ille often means *one—another* :

Hi pacem, illi bellum volunt.
Some desire peace, others war.

Ille expresses fame, **iste** contempt :

οὗτος, τοιοῦτος often refer to what has preceded, **ὄδε, τοιόσδε** to what follows :

τὸ δὲ οὐκ ἔστι τοιοῦτον, ἀλλὰ τοιόνδε μᾶλλον. PLAT. It is not as you have said, but, rather, as follows.

Observe **ὁ δέ, and he ; οἱ μὲν—οἱ δέ, some—others** (§ 81) :

ἡδοναί εἰσιν, αἱ μὲν ἀγαθαί, αἱ δὲ κακαί. PLAT. Some pleasures are good, others evil.

ἐκείνος expresses fame, **οὗτος** contempt :

Xenophon ille, *the well-known Xenophon.*

Stoicus iste, *that wretched Stoic.*

Hic is often used of the First Person: *hâc dextrâ, with this right hand of mine.* (Hic homo, HOR. = ego.)

124 **Is** has no real demonstrative force: it refers to some person or thing named in the context: "he," "him".

Note.—**Is** is the regular antecedent to *qui*, but *hic* or *ille* may be used for emphasis. See inf., § 142.

Observe the Neuter Singular of Demonstratives as referring to a Substantival Clause:

Hoc spectans, ut—

With this object in view, that—.

Καλλίστρατος ἐκεῖνος. *The famous Callistratus. πατήρ οὗτος σός. That fine father of yours.* (§ 103.)

ὄδε is frequent in tragedy of the First Person: *τῆδε χερί, with this right hand of mine.* So *ὄδ' ἀνὴρ = ἐγώ.*

(*αὐτόν* has no real demonstrative force: it refers to some person or thing named in the context: "him".)

Note.—**οὗτος** is the regular antecedent to *ὅς*, but *ὄδε* is used for emphasis. *ἐκεῖνος* is rarely so used (*αὐτόν* never).

of Demonstratives as referring

τοῦτο γιγνώσκων, ὅτι—

Realising this, that—.

3. The Indefinite Pronouns.

125 **Quis**, *anyone* (Adj. *qui*, § 137), cannot come first. It is used in "if" Clauses with *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne*, and with *quo* and *quanto* in Comparative Clauses:

Si mala considerit in quem quis carmina, jus est. HOR.

If anyone should have composed scurrilous verses against anyone, there is always a remedy at law.

Ecquis, *anyone* (Adj. *ecqui*), in Interrogative Clauses.

126 **Quisquam**, *anyone*, **ullus**, *any* (§ 137), are used in Negative

τις, *anyone, someone, a certain one*, is enclitic, *viz.*, it cannot come first, but leans back (*ἐγκλίνει*) on the previous word.

It is both an Adj. and a Subs., and has three main uses:

(1) *anyone*: *e.g.*, in "if" Clauses, *εἴ τις, if anyone*; or in questions, *ἄρα τις ἦλθε; did anyone go?* (Distinguish *τίς* with an accent: *τίς ἦλθεν; who came?*)

(Obs.—In Negative Clauses "anyone" must be translated

and Quasi-Negative Clauses, viz., with *vix*, *aegre*, questions expecting the answer "no," and Comparative Adjectives :

Nec amet quemquam nec ametur ab ullo. JUV. *Let him not love anyone nor be loved by anyone.*

(*Quisquam*, like *quis*, may be used with *si*, but is stronger ; it always implies a negative :

Sapiens, si quisquam. CIC.

Wise, if anyone is, sc. nemo erat sapientior.)

- 127 **Aliquis**, *someone* (Adj. aliqui, § 137), chiefly in Positive Clauses :

E.g., Dicat aliquis, someone might say. (Si vis esse aliquis (JUV.), if you wish to be somebody.)

Quispiam, *someone*, closely resembles aliquis.

- 128 **Quidam**, *a certain man, one* :

Accurrit quidam notus mihi nomine tantum. HOR. *A certain man runs up, known to me only by name.*

Quidam often qualifies a word, expressing contempt or admiration :

Divina quaedam memoria rerum. CIC.

A simply superhuman memory.

- 129 *Note*, also, **quivis**, **quilibet**, *ANYONE* (qui-vis, "who you like," qui libet, "who it pleases you"), *anyone you like* :

οὐδέεις, or, in commands, *μηδέεις* : *οὐ φιλεῖ οὐδένα, he does not love anyone ; μη φιλεῖτω μηδένα, let him not love anyone* : see Negative, § 490.)

Notice the phrase, without a Verb : ἀγαθός, εἴ τις ἄλλος, *good, if anyone ever was*. *τις* is here often attracted in case :

εἶπερ τινός, σθένοντος ἐν πλούτῳ Φρυγῶν. SOPH. *Mighty, if anyone ever was, in the wealth of the Phrygians, sc. εἶπερ τις ἔσθενεν.*

- (2) *someone*, in Positive Clauses :

E.g., λέγοι τις ἄν, someone might say.

Note.—αὐχῶ τις εἶναι, *I boast to be a great man ; παθεῖν τι, to suffer something bad.*

- (3) *A certain man, one* :

Θερόσιτης τις ἦν. SOPH.

There was a certain Ther sites.

τις often qualifies a word, expressing contempt or admiration :

Σκύλλαν τινά. ÆSCH.

A kind of Scylla, a very Scylla.

δυσμαθής τις. PLAT.

A dull sort of fellow.

Note, also, *πᾶς τις*, *ANYONE, everyone, quilibet* ; so also *ὅστις-οὖν, ὅστις δὴ, ὅστις δήποτε, anyone you like* :

Non cuivis homini contingit adire
Corinthum. HOR. *It does not fall
to everyone to go to Corinth.*

Nescio quis, *some one or
other*, "I do not know who":

Nescio quid meditans nugarum.
HOR.

Composing some trifles or other.

Nonnulli, *some*, "not-none,"
viz., a good number.

Sunt qui, *some*, "there are
who" (usually with Subj., §
464).

130 **Alter**, *one, another; the one,
the other*—of two:

(1) Altera ex duabus legionibus
signa sustulit. CAES.

One of the two legions moved off.

(2) Alteram ille amat sororem,
ego alteram. PLAUT. *He loves one
of the two sisters, I the other.*

**(Alteruter, one or the other
of two:**

Video necesse esse alterutrum.
CIC. *I see that one of the two is
necessary.*)

131 **Alius**, *another*, of several
(*N.B.*—one "alius" cannot
mean "one"):

(1) Non alia ante Romana pugna
atrocior fuit. LIV. *No other Roman
battle before was more bloody.*

(2) Alius—alius, *one—other*
(in one or in two sentences):

οὐ παντί τιμῆξέστι πολιτεύεσθαι.
*It is not everyone who can take
part in government.*

οὐκ οἶδ' ὅστις, *someone or other*,
οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως, *somehow or other.*

ὁ, ἢ, τὸ δεῖνα, *so and so* (Gen.
τοῦ δεινός, οἱ τοῦ δεῖνα):

ὁ δεῖνα τοῦ δεινός τὸν δεῖνα
εἰσαγγέλλει. DEM.

*So and so, son of so and so, im-
peaches so and so.*

ἔστιν|οἱ, *some* (§ 464); or as
one word, ἔνιοι, *some.*

ἕτερος, *one, another*, of two;
ὁ ἕτερος, *the one, the other*:

(1) Βάττος ὁ ἕτερος τῶν στρατη-
γῶν ἦλθεν. THUC. *Battus, one of
the two generals, departed.*

(2) ἢ θάτερον δεῖ δυστυχεῖν ἢ
θάτερον. EUR. *Either the one must
suffer or the other.*

(Sometimes ὁ ἕτερος = alter-
uter:

δυοῖν ἀγαθῶν τοῦ ἑτέρου τεύξεσ-
θαι. THUC. *To get one or the other
of two good things.*)

ἄλλος, *other*, of several (*N.B.*
one ἄλλος cannot mean "one"):

(1) θνήσκω· σὲ δ' ἄλλη τις
γυνὴ κέκτήσεται. EUR.

*I die: and some other woman shall
possess thee.*

(2) ἄλλος—ἄλλος, *one—other*
(if in two phrases, μέν—δέ):

Aliud est maledicere, aliud accusare. CIC. *It is one thing to abuse, another to accuse.*

Illi alias aliud isdem de rebus judicant. CIC. *They hold different views on the same subjects at different times.*

132 **Ceteri**, *the other, the rest* :

Spectaculum uni Crasso jucundum, ceteris non item. CIC.

A sight pleasing just to Crassus, not so to the rest.

133 **Quisque**, *each of several*, used only with (1) Reflexives, (2) Ordinals (§ 78), (3) Superlatives (§ 71), (4) Relatives. (Otherwise *omnes* must be used) :

Suo cuique iudicio utendum est. CIC. *Everyone must use his own judgment.*

134 **Uterque**, *each of two*, takes the Genitive of Pronouns, with Substantives it agrees in Case :

Uterque nostrum, *each of us*, utraque manu, *with each hand*.

Ambo, *both*, regarded as a pair: whereas *uterque* means both of two things regarded separately.

135 *Note*.—The Adverbs correspond in form to the Pronouns :

Si quando peccaveris, ne unquam celaveris.

If ever you sin, never conceal it.

(Distinguish *ne semper celaveris*, *do not conceal it for ever*.)

ἄλλον μὲν χλαίνης ἐρύων, ἄλλον δὲ χιτῶνος. HOM.

Plucking one by the cloak, another by the coat.

ἄλλος ἄλλο λέγει. XEN.

One man says one thing, one another.

οἱ ἄλλοι, *the others, the rest*, ceteri. Note the phrase *τά τε ἄλλα καί*, *especially*, lit. “both the other things and”; so *ἄλλως τε καί*, *especially*.

ἕκαστος, *each of several*, is not limited in its use like *quisque*; but, like *quisque*, is often used with Reflexives, with which it is often imbedded in a Substantive:

κατήλθον ἅπαντες εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἕκαστος πόλιν. *They returned every man to his own city.*

ἕκαστος, *each of two, both*, takes usually the Genitive of Pronouns; with Substantives it usually agrees in case: *ἕκαστος ὑμῶν*, *each of you*, but *ἑκάτέρῳ τῷ κέρα*, *on each wing*.

ἄμφω, *ἀμφότερος*, *both*, regarded as a pair: *ἄμφω τὸ χεῖρε*, *both hands*. (On the Article with *ἕκαστος* and *ἄμφω*, see § 99.)

ἐάν ποτε ἀμάρτης, μὴ κρύπτε μηδέποτε.

If you ever sin, never conceal it.

(Distinguish *μὴ ἀεὶ κρύπτε*, *do not conceal it for ever*.)

4. The Interrogative Pronouns.

136 "When" Interrogative must be expressed by **quando**, not by *cum* :

O rus, quando te aspiciam?
HOR.

O country, when shall I behold thee.

Note.—The same Pronouns are used in Direct and Indirect Interrogation.

137 Obs.—The forms **quis, quid** (both Indefinite and Interrogative), **aliquis, aliquid**, are usually Substantival: **qui, quod, aliqui, aliquod** are always Adjectival: *quis? who? qui deus? what god? aliquid mali, some evil; aliquod numen, some deity; si quid, if anything; si quod bellum, if any war.*

(*Quis* and *aliquis*, however, are frequently Adjectival, especially in Poetry: *Quis color?* VIRG. *What colour?* *Aliquis error.* VIRG. *Some guile.*

Note *aliquis* with Adjectives:
Aliquid novum. CIC.
Some new thing.

Quisquam is often an Adjective, esp. in the Nom. and Acc.; *ullus* is sometimes a Substantive, but mainly in the Gen., Dat. and Abl.)

If a question is echoed, Indirect Pronouns are used :

σὺ δ' εἰ τίς ἀνδρῶν ; Ὅστις εἶμι ἐγώ ; ΜΕΤΩΝ. AR. "Who on earth are you?" "Who am I? Meton."

ποῖος is often used contemptuously :

οἱ πρέσβεις οἱ παρὰ βασιλέως. ποῖον βασιλέως ; AR. "The ambassadors from the king." "King indeed!"

Obs. 1.—The forms **ὅστις, ὅπου, ὁποῖος**, etc., have two uses: (1) Indirect Interrogative, (2) Indefinite Relative :

(1) ἐρωτῶ ὅστις ἐστίν.
I ask who he is.

(2) ὅστις ἂν ᾗ, ἀμαρτάνει.
Whoever he is, he is wrong.

πόσος means (1) *how large*, (2) *how many* (so *τοσοῦτος* and *ὅσος*).

Obs. 2.—Note the Article with **ποῖος, πόσος, τοιοῦτος, τοσοῦτος**, to pick up a previous word :

οἶμαι σε ἡμολογήσειν τὸ τοιοῦδε. τὸ ποῖον ; PLAT.
I think you will concede this. What?

Obs. 3.—Rarely the Relative **ὅς** seems to be used Interrogatively for **ὅστις**, chiefly in Herodotus. See § 167.

5. The Relative Pronouns.

The Relative and its Antecedent.

- 138 1. In the full form of expression, the Substantive appears **both in the Main and in the Relative Clause** :

Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exire possent. CÆS.

There were two routes, by which they might go forth.

(This, though common in Latin, is rare in Greek, except for clearness in long sentences.)

2. More often the Substantive precedes (hence "Antecedent") **in the Main Clause**, and is understood in the other :

Animum rege, qui, nisi paret, imperat. HOR.

Rule the temper, which, unless it obeys, commands.

ἔστιν δίκης ὀφθαλμός, ὃς τὰ πάνθ' ὄρα. MENANDER.

There is an eye of justice which sees everything.

3. Sometimes the Substantive appears only **in the Relative Clause**, especially if this comes first :

Quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exerceat. CIC.

Let every one practise himself in the art he knows.

ἦν γὰρ κατ' οἴκου ἐλιπε παρθένον, ταύτη γέγηθε. EUR.

For he rejoices in the maiden whom he left at home.

4. Often there is a Substantive **in neither Clause**, even the Demonstrative (or Personal) Pronoun being omitted :

Quem Deus vult perdere, prius dementat.

Whom God wishes to ruin, (him) he first makes mad.

ὃν οἱ θεοὶ φιλοῦσιν, ἀποθνήσκει νέος. MENANDER.

(He) whom the gods love, dies young.

- 139 *Obs.* 1.—A **neuter Relative** may have as Antecedent an entire Clause : *e.g.*,

Quod etiam accidit, which also came to pass.

ὃ μὴ γένοιτο, which may heaven forbid.

- 140 *Obs.* 2.—A Relative is often equivalent to a **Demonstrative and Copula** : *e.g.*, "which" = "and this" (*e.g.*, last instance) :

Notice especially this use with an Adverb added :

E.g., Quod ubi accidit, and when this came to pass.

(This is not so common in Greek as in Latin, and is never complicated by the addition of Adverbs.)

- 141 *Remark.*—**A second Relative** is not usually, as in English, coupled to a first. If the Cases are different, a Demonstrative is substituted; but a Nominative is often simply omitted:

Omnes tum fere, qui nec extra urbem vixerant nec eos aliqua barbaries infuscaverat, recte loquebantur. CIC. *Almost all, who had not lived outside the city, or whom some provincialism had not spoiled, spoke correctly.*

ἦν ὅδε Ἀφροδίτην μὲν λέγεσθαι φησι, τὸ δὲ ἀληθέστατον αὐτῆς ὄνομα Ἡδονὴν εἶναι. PLAT.

Who is called Aphrodite, though her truest name, so this man asserts, is Pleasure.

Correlation.

- 142 A Relative and its Demonstrative Pronoun must correspond in form. Each is called **the Correlative** of the other to which it corresponds. Thus:

Qui must be used with *is* (*hic, ille, or idem, § 124*):

Is minime eget, qui minimum cupit. PUB. SYR.

He wants for least, who desires least.

So *qualis* with *talis, quantus* with *tantus, quot* with *tot*:

Qualis erat mater, filia talis erit. OV. *Such as the mother was, will the daughter be.*

So with the Adverbs, *tam*—*quam, ita*—*ut*:

Tam ego ante fui liber quam gnatus tuus. PLAUT.

I was once as free as your son.

ὅς must be used with *οὗτος* (*ὅδε* or *ἐκεῖνος*):

οὐκ ἔστιν ἀνηρ οὗτος ὃς θανεῖν ἐρᾷ.

That man does not exist who longs to die.

So *οἷος* with *τοιούτος, ὅσος* with *τοσοῦτος*:

οὔτι τόσος γε ὅσος Τελαμώνιος Αἴας. HOM. *He is nowise as big as Ajax, son of Telamon.*

So with the Adverbs, *οὕτως*—*ὡς* (or *ὥσπερ*):

ἔστιν γὰρ οὕτως ὥσπερ οὗτος ἐννέπει. SOPH.

For it is so even as he says.

- 143 With all these also, the Demonstrative Pronoun may be omitted:

Non sum qualis eram. HOR. *I am not what I was.*

φωνὴ ὅση σκυλάκος. *A voice as loud as a whelp's.*

THE VERB.

The Voices.

144 The **Active** Voice (*ago, I act*) is used when the Subject is considered as the Agent of the Action; the **Passive** Voice (*patior, I suffer*) when he is considered as acted upon, as the Patient of the Action.

Note. — With the **Passive** Voice the Subject is often not only the Patient, but the Agent: *e.g.*, *fertur, he goes* (lit., carries himself); *viz.*, the **Passive** is often like a Greek Middle.

(See § 157, Reflexive use of the **Passive** Voice in Latin.)

The **Middle** Voice is so called as standing “mid-way” between the **Active** and **Passive**, and sharing the character of both: the Subject here does something on or for himself— is both the Agent and the Patient of the Action.

Deponents are “Verbs **Passive** in form, **Active** in meaning.” They are so called from *depono, I lay aside*, as having laid aside the **Active** form. They are really **Middles**.

1. The **Active** Voice.*Transitive and Intransitive* (§ 19).

145 Some Verbs are, as in English, used both **Transitively** and **Intransitively**: *e.g.*,

Trans., *Cedo alicuid, I yield up a thing.* *Transitive, εἶκω τι, I yield up a thing.*

Intrans., *Cedo alicui, I yield to some one.* *Intrans., εἶκω τινι, I yield to some one.*

But this is not so common as in English, and must be regarded with caution; *e.g.*, the word “increase”:

Aqua dolorem augebat, the flood increased their misery. ἡ πλημμυρίς ηὔξησε τὸ πάθος, *the flood increased their misery.*

Aqua crescebat, the flood increased. ἡ πλημμυρίς ηὔξθη (Middle), *the flood increased.*

Obs.—This should be especially noticed in the Verbs *I change, I turn, I roll, I move*, all of which, if Intransitive in sense, should be rendered by the Passive Voice (§ 157): *e.g.*,

Fortuna mutatur, fortune changes.
Vertitur aestus, the tide turns.

Volvuntur anni, the years roll on.
Hostes moventur, the enemy move.

Or the same sense may be given with the Reflexive Pronoun:

Loco se movet, he moves from the place.

(But see next note.)

- 146 Occasionally **Transitive Verbs** are used **Intransitively**, chiefly through the omission of the Reflexive Pronoun or some familiar word: *e.g.*,

Bene habet, it is well; cf. sic se res habet.

Solvere (sc. funem), to loose, i.e., set sail.

Obs.—The same Verb may have some **Tenses Transitive**, others **Intransitive**: *N.B.*—*ἵστημι, I place; ἵστηκα, I stand*:

Trans., Pres. ἵστημι, Impf. ἵστην, Fut. στήσω, Wk. Aor. ἕστησα.

Intrans., Str. Aor. ἕστην, Perf. ἕστηκα, Plupf. εἰστήκη.

Especially, where a Verb has both a Strong and Weak Perfect, a Strong and Weak Aorist, the Strong forms are often Transitive, the Weak Intransitive: *e.g.*, *πέπεικα, I have persuaded; πέποιθα, I trust. ἔβην, I went; ἔβησα, I made to go.*

ἔχω with Adverbs: οὕτως ἔχει, it is so (sic se res habet). (§ 212.)

αἰρεῖν (sc. ἀγκυραν), to weigh (i.e., the anchor).

- 147 Sometimes **Intransitive Verbs** are used **Transitively**, on the "analogy" (§ 521) of some similar Verb: this is especially the case with Verbs of feeling:

Corydon ardebat Alexim. VIRG.
Corydon loved Alexis.
(*Sc. amabat.*)

οὐδένα πάποτε κίνδυνον ἐξέστησαν. DEM. *They never yet shirked any danger (sc. ὑπέφυνον).*

2. The Passive Voice.

The Passive Construction.

- 148 The **Object** of the Active Verb becomes the Subject of the Passive, the **Subject** becomes the Agent.

The **Agent** is expressed by *a* with the Ablative :

Thus "Numa gave laws" becomes :

Leges a Numa datae sunt, laws were given by Numa.

The **Agent** is expressed by *ὑπό* with the Genitive :

Thus "Hippias gave laws" becomes :

νόμοι ὑφ' Ἰππίου ἐτέθησαν, laws were given by Hippias.

- 149 From the living agent distinguish the **Instrument** (§ 266), expressed without a preposition :

Extemplo Aeneae solvuntur frigore membra. VIRG.

Forthwith Æneas' limbs are loosed by cold.

χρηστὸς πονηροῖς οὐ τιτρώσκειται λόγοις.

A good man is not wounded by bad words.

- 150 **Factitive Verbs** (*make, say, think*) become, in the Passive, Copulative (§ 22) :

Thus "the people made Clodius tribune" becomes :

Clodius a plebe tribunus creatus est.

Clodius was made tribune by the people.

Thus "the Athenians made Pericles general" becomes :

Περικλῆς στρατηγὸς ἀπεδείχθη ὑπ' Ἀθηναίων.

Pericles was appointed general by the Athenians.

- 151 **Verbs which govern two Accusatives** in the Active (§ 237) retain the Accusative of the Thing in the Passive :

Thus "he asked me my opinion" becomes :

Rogatus sum ab illo sententiam. I was asked my opinion by him.

Thus "they asked Cyrus for money" becomes :

Κῦρος χρήματα ἠτήθη ὑπ' αὐτῶν. Cyrus was asked for money by them.

- 152 *Note.*—**Intransitive Verbs** must be used impersonally in the Passive :

(a) The Dative of the Active is retained :

Mihi ab istis noceri non potest. CIC.

I cannot be harmed by them.

Note.—Even **Verbs governing the Genitive or Dative** may be thus used personally in the Passive :

πένης λέγων τἀληθὲς οὐ πιστεύεται.

A poor man speaking the truth is not believed.

- 153 (b) A Neuter Verb (§ 19) is used absolutely :

Acriter utrinque pugnatum est.
CAES.

The battle was keenly contested on both sides.

(Neuter Verbs are rarely used in the Passive, except with Neuter expressions and in the Participle : οὐδὲν ἀσεβείται, *no harm is committed*; τὰ κινδυνεύοντα, *the risks that were run.*)

Obs.—The Personal and Impersonal Construction.

- 154 This Impersonal Passive with Neuter Verbs is very common in Latin Prose. It may be translated either by a Substantive (sup. “the battle”) or by the Active (e.g., “they fought”).

The phrase is a vague one, and the Agent, therefore, is rarely expressed.

The Impersonal Passive is used in Greek only with Transitive Verbs and then mainly with the Perfect and Pluperfect.

The Agent, if expressed, is in the Dative (§ 288) :

ἡμέληται περὶ τῶν τοιούτων τῷ νομοθέτῃ. *There has been some neglect on the part of the lawgiver, etc.*

- 155 On the other hand, **the Personal use** is preferred in *Oratio Obliqua* with Verbs of “saying” :

Hannibal ad urbem contendere dicebatur.

It was said that Hannibal was marching on the city.

(The Personal use is here almost invariable, except with the Perfect of *narror*, *nuntior*, *trador*.)

ὁ Ἀσσύριος εἰς τὴν χώραν ἐμβάλλειν ἀγγέλλεται. XEN.

It is announced that the Assyrian is invading the country.

(But the Personal use is not so necessary as in Latin, except with the Adjectives *φανερὸς* and *δῆλος*, § 198.)

Quasi-Passive Verbs.

- 156 For the Passive of one Verb the Active of another Verb is sometimes used :

E.g., Facio, I make, fio, I am made.

(But “fit ab aliquo” is not usual.)

And ὑπό with the Genitive may be used of the Agent :

ὑπὸ τοῦ παιδὸς ἀπέθανεν, *he was killed by his son.*

The Passive as Middle.

The Passive Voice is often used Reflexively :

- 157 (1) **Direct Reflexive**: action performed *on* oneself :

E.g.,

Fertur moriturus in hostes.
VIRG.

He dashes into the foemen to his death.

- 158 (2) **Indirect Reflexive**: action performed *for* oneself :

E.g.,

Virgines longam indutae vestem canentes ibant. LIV.

Virgins clad in long robes proceeded singing.

- 159 *Note.*—Observe that in the first instance, fertur = se fert, Direct Object; in the second, indutae implies “sibi induunt,” *they put on themselves*, Indirect Object.

The first, or Direct, use is very common in Latin, lavar, *I wash myself*, exercemur, *we exercise ourselves*, colliguntur, *they assemble*; the second, or Indirect, use is in Prose almost confined to the Passive

- 160 Participles of Verbs “to put on,” “to put off”.

In **Poetry** it is often used otherwise :

The Middle Voice.

The Middle Voice has two main uses :

- (1) **Direct Reflexive**: action performed *on* oneself :

E.g.,

οἱ Ἕλληνες τὸ πάλαι ἐγράποντο πρὸς ληστέϊαν. THUC.

The Greeks turned (themselves) of old to brigandage.

- (2) **Indirect Reflexive**: action performed *for* oneself :

E.g.,

τὸ δυστυχὲς γὰρ ἠύγνει ἀμύεται. EUR.

For courage wards off misfortune from (viz., for) itself.

From the latter, the Middle comes to be used: *e.g.*,

- (a) Of *responsibility* for an act (the “Causal Middle”): διδάσκειαι τὸν υἱόν, *I get my son taught.*

(b) Of a *mental*, as contrasted with a physical, act: αἰρέω, *I take*, αἰροῦμαι, *I choose.*

(c) In a *special*, rather than a literal sense: σπένδω, *I pour libations*, σπένδομαι, *I make a truce.*

Obs.—The Reflexive Middle, both Direct and Indirect, is, like the Reflexive Pronoun, sometimes used as *Reciprocal* :

Oculus horrendâ in virgine fixus.
 VIRG.
Fixing his eyes upon the dreadful
 161 *maid.*

Inutile ferrum cingitur. VIRG.
He girds on the useless steel.

(Virgil is specially fond of these "Greek Middles," as they are called.)

ὄθουνται ὡς περ ὄες. THEOC.
They hustle like swine.

διαλεγόμεθα, *we converse together.*

(The Direct use is less common than the Indirect: ἔλουσεν ἑαυτήν, *she washed herself*, not ἐλούσατο; but λευκὸν χροῖα ἐλούσατο. EUR. *She washed her white skin.*)

Deponents.

162 Many Deponents, being in reality Direct Reflexives, take some case other than the Accusative: *e.g.*,

Utor gladio, *I employ myself with a sword.*

Reminiscor ejus, *I remind myself of him.*

χρῶμαι ξίφει, *I employ myself with a sword.*

μémνημαι αὐτοῦ, *I remind myself of him.*

Several Verbs are **half-deponent**, *viz.*, Active in the Present, Deponent in some other tense:

Especially in the Perfect: gaudeo, gavisus sum.

Note. — **Coeptus sum** is usual with a Passive Infinitive, but in a Past sense (coepi being Present):

Bello premi sunt coepti. NER.
They began to be oppressed by the war.

Especially in the Future: ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι.

On the other hand, the Present is sometimes Deponent, other tenses Active: ἀλίσκομαι, *I am caught*; but Aor. ἐάλων, Perf. ἐάλωκα. Note, too, the Strong Perfects ἄλωλα, πέποιθα, from ἄλλυμαι, πείθομαι (Middles).

163 Deponents and Middles admit of a **Passive sense** in some tenses:

Especially in the Past Participle and the Gerundive: comitor, *I accompany*; comitatus,

Especially in the Weak Aorist Passive and Perfect Passive: *e.g.*, ἤρέθη, (1) *he was taken*, (2)

accompanied; vereor, I fear; verendus, terrible.

he was chosen; εἵργασται, (1) he has done, (2) it has been done.

- 164 But this cannot be assumed of any verb or tense: thus, beside verendus, terrible, we have veritus, fearing. So amplexus always means embracing.

Note 1.—A few are both Active and Passive: e.g., meritus, deserving or deserved.

Note 2.—Even Deponents governing the Ablative (less often the Genitive) may be Passive in these parts: utendus, to be used (so obliviscendus, oblitus, VIRG.).

Obs.—Throughout, the Gerundive of Deponents is more Passive than the Participle.

Note.—Middle and Passive Tenses.

The Present, Imperfect and Perfect may be either Middle or Passive, but not the Future or Aorist:

(a) The Aorist Middle is never Passive; but the Aorist Passive is often Middle: e.g., “I took part in politics” is either ἐπολιτεύσάμην or ἐπολιτεύθην.

(b) The Future Middle is Passive only in a few verbs, τιμήσομαι, στυγήσομαι, οικήσομαι, στερήσομαι, ὠφελήσομαι.

☞ I shall be loosed, λυθήσομαι, not λύσομαι.

THE MOODS.

- 165 The Moods express the “mode” or manner in which a thing is regarded—the “mood” of the speaker.

The Indicative.

- 166 The Indicative regards a thing as a fact (indico, -are, I state or indicate). It is used:

(a) In **Main Clauses**:

Here it expresses either (1) a Direct Statement (§ 329), or (2) a Direct Question (§ 335).

Observe the difference between the English and the Latin idiom in Melius est, it “would be” better.

(a) In **Main Clauses**:

Note.—The Past Indicative with ἄν expresses a potential “would” or “should” (§ 218).

Note χρῆ, it would be better.

(b) In **Subordinate Clauses**: (b) In **Subordinate Clauses**:

The Indicative is used in all sub-clauses which are of a purely descriptive character.

The following require special notice :

(1) The use of the Perfects Indicative of indefinite frequency, with *quum, ubi, qui*, etc. (§ 419).

(2) The occasional use of *dum* with the Present Indicative, even when subordinate to *Oratio Obliqua* (§ 424).

(3) The use of the Indicative generally in sub-clauses of *Oratio Obliqua*, when these represent a parenthetic remark of the author.

☞ In all these the Indicative expresses a fact, *viz.*, as contrasted with a purpose or consequence.

The following require special notice :

(1) The Future Indicative of Purpose with *ώς, ὅπως, ὅστις* (§ 462).

(2) The Past Indicative with *ἵνα* (or *ώς*) and *εἰ*, to express a Purpose or Hypothesis which is unfulfilled (§ 386).

(3) The Indicative generally with *φοβοῦμαι μή*, of a fear which amounts to a belief (§ 372).

(4) The Indicative of Indirect Speech with *ἔτι*, or of Indirect Questions, in primary time or in the vivid past (§ 353).

☞ In all these the Indicative expresses a fact, *viz.*, what is definite, as contrasted with what is indefinite.

The Imperative.

167 The Imperative (*impero, I command*) is used only in Main Clauses, to express a Direct Command.

Note.—The forms in *-to*, both Second and Third Person, are used only in legal and poetic phrases, and in treaties :

Nec foedera sunt. VIRG.

Let there be no truce between them.

Note.—*οἶσθ' οἶν ὃ δεῖσθαι*, *you know what you ought to do*, lit., do—you know that which, *τοῦτο ὃ* (you ought to do). So *οἶσθ' ὡς ποιήσων* (lit., do, you know how). (§ 137.)

The Conjunctive.

168 While the Indicative regards a thing as a fact, the Conjunctive regards it as a conception.

The term "Conjunctive" refers to the use of the mood in a Subordinate Sentence, as something "conjoined" to the Main Sentence; the term "Subjunctive" expresses the subordinate character of that Conjunction.

In Latin the term "Conjunctive" is generally used merely as an alternative name for the Subjunctive.

In all its uses the Subjunctive may be either "Primary" or "Historic," according to the Tenses used (§ 344).

169 (a) In **Main Clauses** :

(1) *Jussive* :

Exhortation (First Person) and wishes (all three persons).

Note also *ne dixeris*, *do not speak*—a command.

(2) *Potential* : e.g., *dicat aliquis*, *someone might say*.

(3) *Deliberative* : e.g.,

Quid agamus?

What are we to do?

170 (b) In **Subordinate Clauses** :

(1) *Final*, including Verbs of *fearing*, *entreating*, *striving*; *final dum*, *qui*, *quominus*, etc.

Consecutive, including *accidit ut*, *Consecutive qui*, *quin*, etc.

(The Subj. with *quum* is perhaps half-oblique, § 171.)

In Greek the term "Conjunctive" is generally used to include the Subjunctive and "Optative" (*opto*, *I wish*).

The Subjunctive and Optative are, so to speak, the "major" and "minor keys" of the same mood.

(a) In **Main Clauses** :

(1) *Jussive* :

Subj., Exhortation (1st Pers.). Note also *μὴ λέξης*.

(2) *Potential* :

(3) *Deliberative* : Subj., *τί πράττωμεν* ;

Optative, Wishes (First, Second and Third Persons).

Optative with *ἄν* : *λέγοι ἄν τις*.

(b) In **Subordinate Clauses** :

(1) *Final* :

Subjunctive (including Verbs of *Fearing*).

Optative in Historic time.

βαίνει ἵνα ἴδῃ.
He goes to see.

ἔβη ἵνα ἴδοι.
He went to see.

(2) *Hypothetic*: of conditions implying doubt (§ 398).

Si possit, adsit, *he would be here to-morrow, if he could*; si posset, adesset, *he would be here now, if he could* (but he can't).

(3) *Oblique Quotation*: Indirect Questions.

Rogo quid feceris.
I ask what you have done.

171 Similarly the Subjunctive is used in clauses subordinate to the Infinitive of *Oratio Obliqua*, or to another Subjunctive (§ 473). Both of these come under the head of *Oblique*.

This includes Clauses which are “virtually Oblique” (§ 476), *e.g.*, “they praised him because (they said) he was good”.

Note. — Deliberative Questions retain, of course, when Indirect, the Subjunctive, which was used in the Direct.

(2) *Hypothetic Indefinite*: $\alpha\tilde{\nu}$ with Sub- | Plain Optative (Hist.).
junct. (Prin.).

This includes $\epsilon\tilde{\iota}$, $\delta\sigma\tau\iota\varsigma$, $\epsilon\pi\epsilon\iota\delta\eta$, $\xi\omega\varsigma$, $\pi\rho\acute{\iota}\nu$, $\epsilon\acute{\alpha}\nu$, $\epsilon\pi\epsilon\iota\delta\acute{\alpha}\nu$, $\delta\tau\alpha\nu$.

(Such Clauses may have also a Future sense.)

(3) *Oblique Quotation*: | Optative only.

Indirect speech with $\delta\tau\iota$, and Indirect Questions: historic.

Similarly the Optative is used in clauses subordinate to Historic *Oratio Obliqua* of all kinds ($\delta\tau\iota$, Infinitive, or Participle), or to another Optative (§ 473).

Note.—In Indirect Deliberative Questions the Subjunctive is retained, or, in historic time, turned into the Optative.

The Infinitive.

172 The Infinitive is so called as being without limitation (*finis*) in point of Number and Person.

The Infinitive is a Verbal Noun, *viz.*, a Verb and a Noun. As a *Verb* it has Tenses and Voices, may have a Subject and an Object, and can be qualified by an Adverb; as a *Noun* it is Neuter in Gender, and may itself play the part of Subject, Object, etc., of a Sentence; *e.g.*,

Dulce et decorum est pro patria
mori. HOR.

To die for one's country is sweet
and noble (Subject).

Errare, nescire, decipi et malum
et turpe ducimus. CIC.

To err, to be ignorant, to be deceived,
we deem both an evil and a disgrace
(Object).

Cf. in English :—

“For not to have been dipped in Lethé's stream
Could save the son of Thetis from to die.”

Observe, however, that in English (1) the Infinitive is often represented by a participle in -ing, e.g., “dying for one's country,” etc.; (2) the Infinitive is often anticipated by “it”: “it is noble to die,” etc.

173 *Note.*—It is mainly as a Nominative or Accusative that the plain Infinitive can, as a rule, be used.

For other uses, viz., as Genitive, Dative, and Ablative, or after a Preposition, the Gerund takes its place; and in certain idioms the Supine is used.

εἰς οἰωνὸς ἄριστος ἀμίνεσθαι περὶ
πάτρης. HOM. To fight for one's
country is the one best omen (Subject).

οὐχ αἱ τρίχες ποιοῦσιν αἱ λευκαὶ
φρονεῖν. White hairs do not make
wisdom (Object).

(To the Infinitive so used
as Subject or Object τό is often
prefixed.)

But this may be extended
by the Addition of the Article;
when the Infinitive can be
declined throughout: τὸ λύειν,
τοῦ λύειν, τῷ λύειν.

The Infinitive “supplements” in some way the action of the Main Verb. It has two main uses:

174 1. The Prolicative Infinitive 1. The Prolicative Infinitive

carries on (*profero*) the meaning of Indeterminate Verbs—
verbs incomplete in themselves (§ 20):

Possunt, quia posse videntur.
VIRG. They have the power, because
they seem to have it.

τόλμησον ὀρθῶς φρονεῖν. AESCH.
Dare to be right-minded (*sapere*
aude—HOR.).

(With Impersonal Verbs (*e.g.*, “it behoves us to-stay”) the Infinitive is *Nominative*; with Transitive Verbs (*e.g.*, “I dare to-speak”) it is *Direct Accusative*; with Intransitive Verbs (*e.g.*, “I seem to-see”), or with Transitive Verbs which take another Object (*e.g.*, “I teach him to-ride”), it is *Cognate Accusative*. The **Infinitive of Oratio Obliqua** is an instance of this last.)

Obs.—The Prolative Infinitive is not so common in Latin as in English: *e.g.*, many Verbs (*e.g.*, *command*, *advise*, *beg*) take *ut* with Subjunctive (§ 355).

Obs.—The Prolative Infinitive in Greek is much wider than in Latin, corresponding roughly to the English use, and including, *e.g.*, verbs of *commanding* and the like (§ 355).

(This is sometimes called the *Supplementary Infinitive*, because it supplements, or fills in, the sense.)

175 2. The Epexegetic Infinitive.

The Epexegetic or “Explanatory” Infinitive is used after Verbs, otherwise complete in themselves, to express the bearing of an action. It may be regarded as an extension of the Cognate Accusative.

Its use is chiefly poetic, and occurs mainly with Verbs of *going*, *sending*, *giving* :

Venatrix, dederatque comam diffundere ventis. VIRG.

A huntress, and she had given her hair to the breezes to dishevel.

(More often, the Supine in *-um* or the Gerundive takes the place of the Epexegetic Infinitive in Latin. Thus, *diffundere* would probably appear in Prose as *diffundendam*.)

2. The Epexegetic Infinitive.

It is more common in poetry than in prose, and occurs mainly with Verbs of *going*, *sending*, *giving*, *appointing* :

Ἄργεϊ ὀνειδίη καὶ Φρυγῶν ἐπαίνε-
σεις

ἀνέμοις φέρεσθαι παραδίωμι.

EUR. *The taunts of Argives, the praises of Phrygians I give to the winds to sweep away.*

Under this head come the Infinitives after ὥστε, ἐφ' ᾧτε and πρίν.

176 **The Absolute Infinitive. The Absolute Infinitive.**

The Infinitive is used absolutely in certain constructions, dependent on some verb understood.

The **Exclamatory Infinitive** The **Exclamatory Infinitive**

depends on some Verb, *e.g.*, of *speaking*, understood: its Subject is therefore in the Accusative:—

Te nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexari,
sic jacere! CIC.

*To think of your now being so
troubled, so prostrated, Terentia!*

So often in the form of a
half-question:

Mene incepto desistere victam?
VIRG. *Am I to desist from my
enterprise defeated?*

(The Infinitive of Rhetorical
Questions in *Oratio Obliqua* is
similar to this last (§ 485).)

The **Historic Infinitive** depends on some such Verb as *began*; its Subject is therefore Nominative. Only the Present Infinitive is so used. It is frequent in sharp narrative in prose.

Tum pius Aeneas humeris abscindere vestem. VIRG.

*Then duteous Aeneas rent his
cloak from his shoulders.*

τοῦτον δὲ ὑβρίζειν, ἀναπνεῖν δέ.
DEM. *To think of his waxing insolent, and recovering spirit!*

The **Infinitive of Wishes and Commands**: after, *e.g.*, *δοτέ*, understood; Subject, Accusative:

θεοὶ πολῖται, μὴ με δουλείας
τυχεῖν. ÆSCH. *Gods of my country,
grant that I fall not into slavery.*

(This is common in Letters,
Laws, and Treaties, after *κελεύει*, *ἔδοξε*, understood.)

The **Parenthetic Infinitive**: often with *ὡς*, *e.g.*, *ὡς εἰπεῖν*, *so to speak*; also *ὀλίγον δεῖν*, *almost*, *ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν*, *apparently*.

(While the other Absolute Infinitives are Prolative in character, the Parenthetic Infinitive is Epexegetic.)

N.B.—The Historic Infinitive is not used in Greek.

The Infinitive with Substantives and Adjectives.

177 A Prolative Infinitive is sometimes used with Substantives and Adjectives, on the analogy of that with verbs. The chief

ideas so expressed are those of *desire, fitness, custom*, and their opposites :

Virginibus Tyriis mos est gestare pharetram. VIRG.

It is the custom of Tyrian maidens to bear the quiver.

Soli cantare periti Arcades. VIRG.

The Arcadians alone are skilled to sing.

In Latin, this use is chiefly poetic.

δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρα εἶναι καθεύδειν. XEN. *It does not seem to be a fit hour for sleeping.*

Θεμιστοκλεᾶ, ἰκανώτατον εἶπεῖν καὶ γνῶναι καὶ πράξει. LYS.

Themistocles, a man most clever at speaking, deciding, acting.

In Greek, this use is common both in prose and poetry.

The Subject and Predicate of the Infinitive.

(1) The "Accusative and Infinitive".

178 The Subject of the Infinitive is usually Accusative, and the Predicate, where there is one, is in agreement :

Galbam et Africanum doctos fuisse traditum est. CIC.

It has been recorded that Galba and Africanus were learned.

τί δὴ κρίνεις Τέλλον εἶναι ὀλιβιώτατον ; HDT.

Why do you consider that Tellus is the happiest of mankind ?

(2) The "Nominative and Infinitive".

179 If the Subject of a Prolicative Infinitive is the Subject also of the main Verb, the Predicate is usually Nominative :

Socrates parens philosophiae jure dici potest. CIC.

Socrates may rightly be called the father of philosophy.

οὐ γὰρ δοκεῖν ἄριστος ἀλλ' εἶναι θέλει. ÆSCH.

For he wishes not to appear, but to be most noble.

(Where the Subject is mentioned afresh, the Accusative is used :

Sapientem civem me et esse et numerari volo. CIC.

I wish both to be and to be considered a wise citizen.

N.B.—This applies in Greek to all Infinitival uses :

κεκράτηκε Φίλιππος τῷ πρότερος πρὸς τοῖς πράγμασι γίγνεσθαι. DEM.

Philip has prevailed by always being on the scene first.

But simply, Sapiens civis esse (vol.) This is called "Nominative Attraction".

(3) The Infinitive after "Dative Verbs".

180 If a Verb governs an Object in the Dative and an Infinitive, the Predicate is often Dative :

Licet esse beatis. HOR.

It is allowed (to them) to be happy.

. . . Mediocribus esse poetis

Non homines, non di, non cessere columnae. HOR.

Nor men, nor gods, nor publishers have ever allowed poets to be mediocre.

εὐδαίμοσιν ὑμῖν ἔξεστι γενέσθαι.

DEM. *It is allowed to you to be happy.*

So with the Genitive :

ἐδέοντο Κύρου ὡς προθυμοτάτον γίνεσθαι. XEN. *They begged Cyrus to be as zealous as possible.*

(This applies also to the Participle, e.g., after αἰσθάνομαι.)

181 But in such cases the Predicate is as often drawn into the usual Accusative of an Infinitival Clause :

Est mihi supplicii causa, fuisse piam. OV.

It is to me a ground for punishment, that I have been true.

ἐνόμιζον αὐτοῖς προσήκειν ἀγαθοῦς εἶναι. LYS.

They thought it was fitting for them to be good.

(With *Participles used Adverbially* the Accusative is often the more logical construction. Thus, "It seemed good to them, sailing out of the harbour, to engage the enemy": to use the Dative here would mean that their decision was only formed after they had left the harbour. So—

Placuit eis portu egressos cum hostibus pugnare.)

ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς τοῦ λιμένος ἐκπλεύσαντας μάχεσθαι τοῖς πολεμίοις.)

182 **The Supine.**

The Supine in *-um* is the Accusative, that in *-u* the Ablative (or Dative = *ui*) of a Verbal Noun, Fourth Declension.

(1) The Supine in *-um* expresses Purpose, chiefly after

Note 1.—Further uses of the Epexegetic Infinitive.

The Infinitive was originally the Dative of a Feminine Noun (*-ai = η*), expressing the Indirect Object. Hence—

(1) The occasional use, in

Verbs of *coming*, *going*, and *sending* :

Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae. OV.

They come to see, and to be seen themselves.

(Probably Cognate Accusative.)

183 (2) The Supine in *-u* is used in an explanatory sense with Adjectives such as *facilis*, and with *fas*, *nefas* :

Nec visu facilis nec dictu adfacilis ulli. VIRG.

Not easy for anyone to look on or address.

Note.—The Future Infinitive Passive is really a use of the Supine in *-um*. Thus :

Dixit urbem captum iri.

He said that it was being gone to capture the city.

184 The Gerund and Gerundive.

The **Gerund** is a *Substantive* and *Active*, the **Gerundive** an *Adjective* and *Passive*. They have two uses :

(a) The Gerund and Gerundive express **verbal action**.

Here *the Gerund* supplies the Cases wanting to the Infinitive :

E.g., Et propter vitam vivendi perdere causas. JUV.

And for the sake of life, to lose all that makes life worth living.

Poetry, of the Epexegetic Infinitive to express Purpose after Verbs of *coming* and *going* :

μανθάνειν γὰρ ἤκομεν. SOPH.
For we are come to learn.

So, often in Homer, βῆ δὲ θέειν, *he set off running (to run)*.

(2) The use of the Epexegetic Infinitive in a quasi-passive sense with Substantives and Adjectives : μείζον ἢ φέρειν, *too great to bear (i.e., to be borne, for one to bear it)* ; θαῦμα ιδέσθαι, *a wonder to behold (i.e., to be beheld)* ; δεινὸς ιδεῖν, *terrible to see (i.e., to be seen)*, from which distinguish carefully δεινὸς ιδεῖν, *clever at seeing* (§ 177).

(The term “Epexegetic” is often confined to this quasi-passive use.)

Note 2.—The Infinitive with the Article.

The Article τὸ *may* be prefixed to the Infinitive in any of the above uses of the Nominative and Accusative : *e.g.*,

τὸ δρᾶν οὐκ ἤθέλησαν. SOPH.
They did not wish to do it.

Its addition makes other Cases also possible :

ἠπείγοντο πρὸς τὸν ποταμὸν τοῦ πιεῖν ἐπιθυμία. THUC.

They hastened towards the river in eagerness to drink.

The Accusative is used only with a Preposition :

Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt. QUINT. *The character of boys reveals itself in their play.*

- 185 The *Gerundive*, however, is preferred to the Gerund with Transitive Verbs (except in the Genitive Plural, to avoid the sound of a double *-orum*):

In voluptate spernenda virtus vel maxime cernitur. CIC.

Virtue is most specially seen in despising pleasure.

N.B. — The Gerund and Gerundive have no subject expressed.

- 186 (As the Gerundive is Passive, it can be used only with Verbs governing a direct Accusative. Thus :

Ferocia ad non parendum senatui. LIV. *Fierceness in not obeying the senate (not senatum).*

Utendus, potiundus, fruendus are exceptional.)

- 187 (b) The Gerund and Gerundive express **obligation**.

Here the Gerundive is with Transitive Verbs not merely optional, but necessary: Eundum est, *we must go* (Gerund); but

Delenda est Carthago. CATO.

Carthage must be destroyed (Gerundive).

So with a Preposition :

ἐν τῷ φρονεῖν ἡδίστος βίος.

SOPH.

The most pleasing life lies in being wise.

Obs. 1.—This prefixing of the Article makes possible long Infinitival Sentences with a separate Subject :

τὸ Πελοποννησίουσ ἀυτοῖσ μὴ βοηθῆσαι παρέσχεν ἡμῖν Σαμίων κόλασιν. THUC.

The fact that the Peloponnesians did not help them enabled you to chastise the Samians.

(See on the "Noun-Making" Article, § 90.)

Obs. 2.—The Genitive of the Infinitive, with or without ἕνεκα, often expresses purpose :

τὸ δὲ ληστικὸν Μίνωσ καθήρει ἐκ τῆσ θαλάσσης τοῦ τὰσ προσόδουσ μᾶλλον ἰέναι αὐτῷ. THUC.

Minos proceeded to sweep piracy from the seas, that his revenue might reach him more easily.

The Verbal Adjectives

(1) In *-τέος, -τέον* express **obligation** : *-τέος* of Transitive, *-τέον* usually of Intransitive Verbs : *ἰτέον ἐστίν, we must go* (or *ἰτέα ἐστίν, Neuter Plural*) :

οὐ γὰρ πρὸ τῆσ ἀληθείασ τιμητέος ἀνὴρ. PLAT. *For a man must not be accounted before truth.*

- 188 *Obs.*—The *Agent* (1) is usually Dative (§ 287); but (2) with Verbs governing the Dative, *a* with the Ablative is used for clearness:
- (1) *Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda.* CAES. *Caesar had to do everything at the same time.*
- (2) *Civibus est a vobis consulendum.* CIC. *You must consult for the good of the citizens.*
- 189 *Note 1.*—The Gerundive is used with **do, curo, loco**:
- Caesar pontem in Arare faciendum curat.* CAES. *Caesar has a bridge made over the Arar.*
- 190 *Note 2.*—The Gerundive sometimes expresses **possibility**:
- Votaque pro domina vix numeranda facit.* TIB. —*Vows that can scarce be numbered.*
- Obs.* The *Agent* (1) is Dative (§ 289), even with Verbs governing the Dative; but (2) often an Accusative, as if after *δεῖ*, is used:
- (1) *βοηθητέον ἐστὶ τοῖς πράγμασιν ὑμῖν.* DEM. *You must support your interests.*
- (2) *ποιάν ὁδὸν νῦν τρεπτέον καὶ πρὸς τίνα;* AR. *What way and to whom must we turn?*
- Note.*—*-τέον* is often used of Transitive Verbs:
- καταστατέον ἄρχοντα τῆς πόλεως.* PLAT. *We must appoint a ruler of our city.*
- (2) Verbal Adjectives in **-τος** and **-τον** express **possibility**:
- ἄρα γρυκτόν ἐστιν ἡμῖν;* AR. *Can we grant?*
- δυσλύτοις χαλκείμασιν.* AESCH. *Bonds hard to loose.*

The Participle.

- 191 The Participle is so called as “participating” in the character both of a Verb and Adjective. Its uses are threefold: (1) *Adjectival*, e.g., “the dead man”; (2) *Adverbial*, e.g., “hearing this, he was wroth”; (3) *Supplementary*, e.g., “I saw him running”.

1. The Participle as Adjective.

- 192 The Participle may qualify a Noun like an **Epithet**. It here often resembles a Relative Clause.

Timotheus a patre acceptam
gloriam multis auxit virtutibus.
NEP.

*Timotheus increased by many
virtues the glory which he had
inherited from his father.*

The Definite Article is usual
here: *e.g.*, οἱ καθεστηκότες νόμοι,
the established laws; τῶν καθε-
στηκότων νόμων τις (not καθεστηκός
νόμος τις), *an established law*.

From its use as Simple **Predicate** with the Verb "to be" come the Periphrastic Tenses, § 211. It may also, like an Adjective, be used as a Tertiary Predicate, especially with the Verb "to have"; or as a **Substantive** (§ 55).

Obs.—"Those flying" must not be translated "illi fugientes," but "illi qui fugiunt" or *fugientes*.

Obs.—"Those flying" must not be translated ἐκείνοι οἱ φεύγοντες, but ἐκείνοι οἱ φεύγουσιν or simply οἱ φεύγοντες.

2. The Participle as Adverb.

193 The Participle—sometimes with a Particle—may express the meaning of an Adverbial Sentence: *e.g.*,

Time (on the Tenses see § 216):

Plato scribens est mortuus. CIC.
Plato died while he was writing.

Cause (sometimes with *ut*, *utpote*, *tanquam*):

Probro respersus est, tanquam scyphum furatus. TAC.
He was disgraced for having stolen a goblet.

Purpose (Future Participle, sometimes with *tanquam*):

Galli venerunt legionem Romanam oppugnaturi. LIV.
The Gauls came to attack the Roman legion.

Time (to the Present ἄμα or μεταξύ may be added):

Νεκῶς μεταξύ ὀρύσσω ἐπάυσαστο. HDT.
Necho stopped in the middle of digging the canal.

Cause (often with ὡς or ἄτε):

ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, ἄτε παῖς ὢν, ἤδετο τῇ στολῇ. XEN.
Cyrus, being a child, was delighted with the robe.

Purpose (Future Participle, often with ὡς or the Article):

συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον, ὡς ἀποκτενῶν. XEN.
He arrests Cyrus, with the intention of putting him to death.

Condition :

Si latet ars prodest; affert de-
pressa pudorem. Ov.

*If art be concealed, it profits; if
detected, it brings shame.*

So **Means, Concession** (with
quamvis), **Comparison** (*quasi*),
etc.

Condition (Negative μή, §
491):

οὐκ ἂν δύναιο, μὴ καμῶν,
εὐδαιμονεῖν. EUR. *You could not
be happy, if you did not work.*

So **Means, Concession** (with
καίπερ, § 440), **Comparison**
(with ὡς), etc.

194 It is also often used to express **Attendant Circumstances**
or **Manner**, as a mere Adverb: *e.g.*,

Rhenus per fines Trevirorum
citatus fertur. CAES.

*The Rhine flows rapidly through
the territory of the Treviri.*

τί μαθῶν, τί παθῶν, lit., learning
what? suffering what?

τί μαθόντες ἐμαρτυρεῖτε; DEM.
Why did you give evidence?

Note.—The Participle Absolute

195 is so called as apparently standing apart from the Main Sen-
tence: it is really a Case usage.

The “**Ablative Absolute**”
(a Noun and Participle in the
Ablative) is an Ablative of
Accompaniment (§ 272):

Regibus exactis consules creati
sunt. LIV.

*The kings having been expelled,
consuls were elected.*

(1) The “**Genitive Absolute**”
(a Noun and Participle in the
Genitive) is a Genitive of
Origin (§ 264):

ταῦτ' ἐπράχθη Κόνωνος στρατη-
γοῦντος. ISOCR.

*These things were done when
Conon was general.*

196 (Instead of a Participle, a
Second Noun in the Ablative
is often added:

Nil desperandum Teucro duce et
auspice Teucro. HOR.

*We must not despair under
Teucer's leadership and auspices.)*

(2) The **Accusative Absolute**
is an Adverbial Accusative (§
233), confined mainly to a few
impersonals, ἐξόν, δέον, παρόν:

ἀδελφοκτόνος, οὐδὲν δέον, γέγονα.

HDT. *I have slain my brother when
there was no need.*

197 *Obs.*—An Adverbial Participle and a Verb are often used
where we use two Coordinate Verbs and a Copula:

Torquatus Gallum caesum torque
spoliavit. LIV.

*Torquatus slew the Gaul and
despoiled him of his necklace.*

θέλεις τι μείζον ἢ κατακτείνειν
μ' ἐλών; SOPH.

*Dost thou wish more than to take
and slay me?*

198

3. The Supplementary Participle

completes the meaning of certain verbs, like the Supplementary Infinitive (§ 174), with which it sometimes alternates.

This use is rare in Latin, except after Verbs of *seeing, hearing, announcing, finding, representing* :

Parvam te roscida mala vidi cum
matre legentem. VIRG.

*I saw thee, a little girl, plucking
dewy apples with thy mother.*

So in many phrases, where "esse" is said to be understood :

Pons in Hiberno prope effectus
nuntiabatur. CAES.

*The bridge over the Ebro was re-
ported as almost finished.*

Observe also the following, in which the Participle and Substantive are equivalent to a Substantive and Genitive, or to an entire Clause :

Occisus Caesar pessimum facinus
videbatur. TAC.

*The murder of Caesar seemed a
vile crime.*

Ante urbem conditam condendamve. LIV.

*Before the city was built or was
a-building.*

(a) χαίρω, *rejoice* ; ἄχομαι, *grieve* ; αἰσχύνομαι*, *am ashamed* :

χαίρω γε διαλεγόμενος τοῖς
σφόδρα πρεσβύταις. PLAT. *I re-
joice to converse with the very old.*

(b) ἄρχομαι, *begin* ; παύομαι*, *cease* ; διατελέω, *continue* :

παῦσαι λέγουσα. EUR. *Cease to
speak.* (γελῶντας ἔχθρους παύσο-
μεν. SOPH. *We will stop our enemies
from laughing.*)

(c) τυγχάνω, *happen* ; φθάνω, *anticipate* ; λανθάνω, *escape notice* :

ἔτυχον ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ὄπλιται
καθεύδοντες. THUC.

*Hoplites happened to be sleeping
in the market-place.*

(d) Verbs of *knowing* and *perceiving*, and some others : ὄρω, *μανθάνω**, *οἶδα**, *μέμνημαι**, *φαίνομαι**, *ἀγγέλλω*, *φανερὸς εἰμί*, *δῆλος εἰμί*, etc. (see Indirect Speech, § 350) :

δῆλος ἦν Κύρος σπεύδων. XEN.
It was clear Cyrus was in a hurry.

(All these instances are in reality an extension of the Adjectival or Adverbial Participle.)

199 *Remark.*—**The Past Participle Active.**

The want of this may be supplied in several ways:

(1) With a *Deponent*, translate literally: *haec locutus abiit, having so said he departed.*

(2) With a *Transitive Verb*, turn into the Passive: *his factis abiit, having so done he departed.*

(3) With an *Intransitive Verb*, *cum* with Subjunctive must be used: *cum venisset abiit, having come he departed.*

~~☞~~ In (2) the Ablative Absolute must not be used if the Participle can be attached to the Subject or Object:

Graeci Trojam captam incenderunt, the Greeks having captured Troy burnt it (not "*Trojâ captâ eam incenderunt*").

(The want of a Present Participle Passive can be strictly supplied by *cum* with Subjunctive; but often the Past Participle is loosely used: *e.g., being attacked, "quum oppugnaretur,"* or, often, "*oppugnatus*".)

Remark.—**The Supplementary Infinitive and Participle.**

The Verbs marked * may take also an Infinitive, but in a different sense: *e.g.,*

(a) *αἰσχύνομαι ποιῶν, I am ashamed (of) doing (something which I am doing); αἰσχύνομαι ποιεῖν, I am ashamed to do (something which I am not doing).*

(b) *παύομαι πράττων, I desist from doing (something I have been doing some time); παύομαι πράττειν, almost I abstain from the act—I give up the idea of it.*

(d) *φαίνομαι ἀδικῶν, I am clearly guilty; φαίνομαι ἀδικεῖν, I appear to be guilty.*

οἶδα ἀληθεύων, I know I am telling the truth; οἶδα ἀληθεύειν, I know how to tell the truth.

So *μανθάνω, μέμνημαι, ἐπιλανθάνομαι* with Infinitive, *I learn, remember, forget how to do a thing;* while *ἀγγέλλω* with the Infinitive often expresses a command.

The Tenses.

200 The force of the Tenses cannot be properly realised unless it is understood that they represent not merely the *time* of an action, but also its *character*. Thus in Past time we have (1) "he wrote," mere action; (2) "he was writing," incomplete action; (3) "he had written," complete action. And action may be represented in the same ways also in Present and Future time. In a full Tense system there should therefore be $3 \times 3 = 9$ distinct forms. But, owing to vacancies, some of the Tense-forms have to fulfil a double duty.

Thus, both in Greek and Latin, the *Present* and *Future* have to express both mere action and incomplete action.

In Latin also the *Perfect* expresses both complete action in Present time—the "Perfect Proper"; and mere action in Past time—the "Aoristic Perfect". In Greek the Latin Perfect is represented by two distinct forms, the Perfect and the Aorist. On the other hand, the Future Perfect is rare in Greek.

	Past Time.	Present Time.	Future Time.
Mere Action.	<i>he wrote</i> scripsit ἔγραψε	<i>he writes</i> scribit γράφει	<i>he will write</i> scribet γράψει
Incomplete Action.	<i>he was writing</i> scribebat ἔγραφε	<i>he is writing</i> scribit γράφει	<i>he will be writing</i> scribet γράψει
Complete Action.	<i>he had written</i> scripserat ἔγεγράφει	<i>he has written</i> scripsit γέγραφε	<i>he will have written</i> scripserit [γεγραφὼς ἔσται]

The Present Tense.

201 (1) Mere action in Present time, *he writes*, (2) Incomplete action in Present time, *he is writing*.

The “**Historic Present**” is often used in narrative for a Past tense, as in English: *e.g.*,

Devolat et supra caput adstitit. VIRG.	Δαρείον καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γύνονται παῖδες δύο. XEN.
<i>She flies down and hovered o'er her head.</i>	<i>Darius and Parysatis had two sons.</i>

The Present is used where we use a Perfect, with words like “for a long time,” of an action continuing up to the Present: *cf.* French, “On cherche cet homme depuis quelques mois”:

Jampridem cupio Alexandriam visere. CIC.	ἐπὶ τῷ Δήμῳ ξυνόμνοντον πάλαι. AR.
<i>I have long wished to visit Alexandria.</i>	<i>You two have been plotting against Demus a long time.</i>

Sometimes the Present has a half-future or deliberative force —“present intention, future action”:

Circumeo castra. CAES.	N.B.—εἶμι, I am going, viz., I shall go.
<i>I am going round the camp.</i>	
En, quid ago? VIRG.	πῶς λέγομεν; PLAT.
<i>Lo, what am I to do?</i>	<i>How are we to put it?</i>

The Imperfect Tense.

202 The Imperfect represents Incomplete action in Past time: *he was writing.*

This action is often in relation to some other act: “he was writing, when I came”.

The Imperfect often represents **a continued act**, as contrasted with a momentary act; and then it is not always to be recognised by “-ing”:

Aequi se in oppida receperunt murisque se tenebant. LIV.	συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε. XEN.
<i>The Æqui retreated into their towns and remained within the walls.</i>	<i>He sent with her the soldiers which Menon had.</i>

The Imperfect also expresses **habitual** or **repeated action** in past time:

Carthagine quotannis bini reges
creabantur. NEP.

*At Carthage two kings used to be
created annually.*

Σωκράτης, ὡςπερ ἐγίγνωσκεν,
οὕτως ἔλεγεν. XEN.

*Socrates used to speak as he
thought.*

The Imperfect sometimes expresses **action proposed**: "he began to," "he tried to," "he proceeded to":

Altera sententia Hannibalem re-
vocabat. LIV.

*One of the two proposals was for
recalling Hannibal.*

ἃ ἐπράττετο οὐκ ἐγένετο. THUC.

*The attempt did not succeed.
So ἐδίδουν, I offered; ἔπειθον,
I strove to persuade.*

203 (1) **The Perfect Proper**
(with "have")

expresses an act completed in Present time: "*he has written*".

Very often the previous act is forgotten and only the **present state**, which results from it, is remembered: *e.g.*,

Mortuus est, *he is dead.*

πέθνηκε, *he is dead.*

Hence the so-called "**Perfects with Present meaning**": *e.g.*,

Novi, *I know* (lit., I have
learnt).

οἶδα, *I know* (lit., I have
learnt).

Sometimes the Perfect even goes further, and expresses what has been but is no more: *e.g.*,

Fuimus Troes. VIRG.
We Trojans are no more.

εἶρηκα, *I have finished speak-
ing.*

204 (2) **The Aoristic Perfect**
(without "have")

expresses, without qualification, the mere action of the Verb in Past time: as, *he wrote*; *e.g.*,

Libertatem et consulatum L.
Brutus instituit. TAC.

*L. Brutus inaugurated liberty
and the consulship.*

The Aorist (ἀ-ὀρίζω, unde-
fined)

Θουκυδίδης Ἀθηναίος ξυνέγραψε
τὸν πόλεμον. THUC.

*Thucydides the Athenian wrote
the history of the war.*

It expresses apparently **an instantaneous act** in Present time—really an act just past, when mentioned :

Terra tremit, fugere ferae. VIRG. ἔφριξ' ἔρωτι, περιχαρῆς δ' ἀνεπ-
The earth trembles, the wild beasts τόμην. SOPH. I tremble with love,
are gone (or "have gone"). I am elate with joy.

It expresses **general truths**—here also translated as Present (cf. Eng. "Faint heart never won fair lady") :

Nemo nisi victor pace bellum καὶ δὴ φίλον τις ἔκταν' ἀγνοίας
mutavit. SALL. ὕπο. ÆSCH. *Indeed a man some-*
times slays a friend in ignorance.

No one but a victor exchanges war for peace (viz., "ever changed," or "has ever changed").

(This is called the **Gnomic Aorist**, from γνώμη, a maxim.)

205 *Note.*—The last two instances might be of either the Perfect Proper or the Aoristic Perfect : in fact, the same nice distinction, as a whole, is not made in Latin as in English between "I have done" and "I did". The Latin Perfect is to a large extent one tense.

Note.—The Aorist is often used in Greek where in English we should use "have" : e.g., "who has killed him?" "having sailed away" would be Aorist. The Perfect is only used where the result is permanent : e.g., "the king is dead," "the established laws".

(In the Subjunctive it becomes still more so, § 345.)

⚡ Before using a Perfect, think of the Aorist.

The Aorist Indicative is often used for a **Pluperfect** in Relative, especially Temporal, clauses :

Postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides arma poscit. CAES. ἐπειδὴ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρῆος καὶ κατέστη Ἀρταξέρξης. XEN.
When Caesar had come, he demanded hostages and arms. *When Darius was dead and Artaxerxes had become king.*

The Perfect is used frequently in sub-clauses :

Obs.—The Aorist is not necessarily momentary (e.g., συνέγραψε, sup.), but it may appear to be so, as expressing mere action (e.g., ἔφριξα, sup.). So of entrance into a state :

Quocunque aspexisti, tuae tibi occurrunt injuriae. CIC.

Wherever you look, your offences meet you.

(So with the Pluperfect and *εδάκρυνσε*, *he burst into tears* ;
Future-Perfect ; see § 217.) *ἐβασίλευσε*, *he became king*.

206

The Pluperfect

expresses an action completed in Past time : often of one action, as preceding another : “*he had written*” (when I arrived).

(Note *noveram*, *I knew* : cf. (Note *ἤδη*, *I knew* : cf. *οἶδα*,
novi, *sup.*) *sup.*)

207

Note.—The Epistolary Past.

Letters, especially at the beginning, were often written in Past time, from the point of view of the recipient :

Nihil habebam, quod scriberem ; neque enim novi quicquam audieram. *Cic.* *μετ' Ἀρταβάζου ὃν σοι ἔπεμψα πρῶσσε θαρσῶν.* *THUC.* *You may act without diffidence in conjunction with Artabazus whom I send to you*

I have nothing to write to you ; for I have heard nothing new. *(Artabazus being the bearer).*

208

The Future

expresses (1) mere action in Future time, “*he will write*” ; less often (2) incomplete action Future, “*he will be writing*” (see § 211).

The Future often expresses **a command**, as in English “*thou shalt not—*” :

Cum surget, surges ; donec sedet illa, sedebis. *Ov.* *πρὸς ταῦτα πράξεις οἷον ἂν θέλης.* *SOPH.* *Therefore do whatsoever thou wilt.*

Rise when she rises ; while she sitteth, sit.

So with *οὐ*, as a question : *οὐκ ἀπαί ;* *Away ! (will you not go?)*

(See § 588.)

209

The Future-Perfect

expresses action completed in Future time, especially in reference to some other action : “*he will have written*” (when I arrive).

It often expresses the Future result of an action already past (translate as Future) : It is often used for a plain Future, strong, immediate, permanent in result :

Nostris inluserit advena regnis?
 VIRG. *Shall this stranger mock our
 majesty? (viz., be allowed to have
 mocked).*

φράζει, καὶ πεπράξεται. AR.
*Speak and it shall forthwith be
 done.*

Note the idiom with *videro* :

Sed de te videris. CIC.
*But you will of course look to
 yourself (almost Future).*

(Except with a few words,
e.g., τεθνήξω, I shall have died,
 the Future-Perfect is expressed
 by periphrasis: δεδρακώς ἔσο-
 μαι, *I shall have done.*)

210 *Note.*—In **sub-clauses** English often uses a Present or Perfect
 where a Future or Future-Perfect would be logical :

Naturam si sequemur ducem,
 nunquam aberrabimus. CIC.
*If we follow nature for our guide
 we shall never err.*

ἐν ᾧ σὺ παίξει, ἐγὼ γράψω.
While you play, I shall write.

Eum cum videro, Arpinum per-
 gam. CIC.

*When I have seen him I shall go
 on to Arpinum.*

(But more often a Future or
 Future-Perfect in sub-clauses
 is represented by *ἄν* with the
 Present or Aorist Subjunctive
 respectively; see § 217.)

211

The Periphrastic Tenses

are formed, as in English, with the verb “to be” and a Parti-
 ciple, *viz.* :

(1) The Perfect Participle
 Passive: *e.g., amatus sum.*

(1) The Perfect Participle
 Passive: *e.g., τετυμμένοι εἰσὶ.*

(2) The Future Participle
 Active: *e.g., amaturus sum.*

(2) Any Active Participle
 except the Future.

The use of the Periphrastic Tenses is two-fold :—

(a) They supply a **tense not provided for** by the simple
 verb; here they may express action :

*E.g., Profectus ero, I shall have
 started.*

*E.g., γεγραφώς ἔσομαι, I shall
 have written.*

(b) They express a **state** where the plain tenses express an
 action :

Scribam, *I shall write* ;
 Scripturus sum, *I am about to
 write.*

ἀνέφκται ἡ πύλη, *the gate has been
 opened* ; ἀνεφγμένη ἐστὶν ἡ πύλη,
the gate is open.

212 Note the phrase :

Compertum habeo. Ctc.

I have discovered : lit., I have it as a discovered thing.

Fui usually expresses action ;
sum, state :

Janua clausa est, the gate is shut ;
janua clausa fuit, the gate has been shut.

(Observe that *clausa est* could also mean *was shut.*)

On *essem* and *forem* see § 220.

Note the phrase :

ἔχει περάνας. SOPH.

He has achieved it : lit., he is having-achieved it.

(ἔχω is here Intrans., see § 146 ; contrast κρύψασ' ἔχεις, EUR., probably Trans., *thou hast concealed and hast them.* — Note ἔχω (1) with Acc., *I have* ; ἔχων, *with* ; (2) with Adverb, *I am* ; (3) with Infin., *I can* ; (4) with Aor. Participles, as here.)

Tenses in the Oblique Moods.

213 The tenses bear in the Oblique Moods the same sense as to *time* which they bore in the Indicative, but lose to a large extent the distinction of *character*. Especially the **Imperfect** and **Perfect Subjunctive** become blurred as expressing incompleteness and completeness : *e.g.*, *venit ut videret, he came to see* (not “to be seeing”) ; *rogo quid feceris, I ask what you were doing* (as well as “I ask what you did” or “have done”).

(But the Perfect Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is exceptional—always expressing completeness regardless of time.—See further, Sequence of Tenses, §§ 344, 389.)

In the Oblique Moods, except in the Participles and in *Oratio Obliqua*, the tenses lose to a large extent the idea of time, retaining only that of quality. This is shown by the loss in the Oblique Moods of the Augment, which is the sign of past time.

Thus the **Aorist** implies in the Indicative (1) past time, (2) mere action ; in the Moods only (2) mere action, as a rule.

Thus contrast the tenses in :

πράττε, *always act* : πράξον, *do this.* ἀπέλθωμεν καὶ μὴ μένωμεν, *let us go and not remain.*

αἰρετώτερόν ἐστι καλῶς ἀποθανεῖν ἢ ζῆν αἰσχροῦς. ISOCHR.

It is better to die nobly than to go on living basely.

In Final and some other Clauses any tense of the Subjunctive bears a half-future sense: *N.B.*, Verbs of Fearing:

Timeo ne veniat, *I fear that he will come.*

φοβοῦμαι μὴ ἔλθῃ, *I fear that he will come.*

214 The **Prolative Infinitive** is usually Present as in English, but in Poetry the Perfect is often used:

Ut posset vastas exeruisse manus.
Or. That she might protrude her huge hands.

The **Prolative Infinitive** is Present or Aorist (*e.g.*, ἀποθανεῖν ἢ ξῆν, *sup.*); but μέλλω prefers the Future:

περὶ τρίποδος γὰρ ἔμελλον θεύσεσθαι. *Hóm. For they were going to run for a tripod.*

215 (Contrast the English idiom with verbs expressing "power" or "obligation":

Debui hoc facere, *I ought to have done this.*

ὄφελον τοῦτο ποιεῖν, *I ought to have been doing this.*

Poterat venire, *he might have come.*)

ἐδύνατο ἐλθεῖν, *he might have come.*)

Obs.—**Oratio Obliqua** and the Participles.

216 Here the tenses express time that is Past, Present, or Future in relation to the Main Verb. Thus contrast the English (1) "he said that this *was* true," (2) "Cambyses met his death while he *was* invading Egypt," with

(1) Dixit hoc verum esse.

(1) ἔφη τοῦτο ἀληθὲς εἶναι.

(2) Cambyses, Aegyptum invadens, morti occubuit.

(2) Καμβύσης, τὴν Αἴγυπτον εἰσβάλλων, θανάτῳ περιέπεσεν.

(This refers, in *Oratio Obliqua*, only to the main clauses in the Infinitive. The sub-clauses, in the Subjunctive, follow the rule given above.)

(This refers to all clauses, main or subordinate, in *Oratio Obliqua*, whether expressed by the Infinitive, Indicative, Optative, or Participle, §§ 354, 364.)

Indefinite and Potential.

217 (1) **Indefinite time in sub-clauses** is expressed by the *Perfects Indicative*—the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future-Perfect, expressing Present, Past and Future time respectively :

1. Si quis eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. CAES.

If ever any of them does not abide by the ordinance, they exclude him from the sacrifice.

2. Cum rosam viderat, tum ver incipere arbitrabatur. CIC.

Whenever he saw a rose, he thought spring was beginning.

3. Nec hic puer, quotienscumque me viderit, ingemescet. CIC.

The boy shall not groan whenever he sees me.

(An Indefinite Subjunctive sometimes occurs in Livy, but is often virtually Oblique, § 585.)

218 (2) **Potentiality in Main Sentences** is expressed by the Subjunctive: *putares, you would think*; *dicat aliquis, someone might say*, or *would say*; *fuisset, grant that it should have been so*.

Hoc Ithacus velit, et magno mercetur Atridae. VIRG.

This the Ithacan would wish, and the sons of Atreus would purchase at a great price.

The Particle ἄν.

The Particle ἄν has two distinct uses :

(1) In *Sub-clauses* with the **Subjunctive**, expressing (a) vague future action, (b) indefinite present action.

Such clauses are *Conditional*, *ει*; *Relative*, ὅς, οἶος, ὅστις, including *Local*, ὅπου; *Temporal*, ὅτε, ἐπειδή, ἐπεί, πρίν, ἕως, μέχρι.

Here ἄν belongs to the Pronoun or Particle, and immediately follows it, sometimes coalescing with it, *εάν* (or *ἦν*), ὅταν, ἐπὴν, ἐπειδάν :

(a) ἐπειδάν ἔλθῃ, χαρήσω, *when he comes, I shall rejoice.*

(b) ἐπειδάν ἔλθῃ, χαίρω, *whenever he comes, I rejoice.*

Note.—The Aorist Subjunctive with ἄν in *Temporal Clauses* has the force of a *Future-Perfect*.

(2) In *Main Sentences* with (a) the **Optative**, (b) the **Historic Tenses of the Indicative**—expressing potentiality.

Here ἄν belongs to the Verb :

(a) εἴποι τις ἄν, *some one would say, or might say (Future).*

(b) ἔλεγεν ἄν τις, *some one would now be saying (Present).*

εἶπεν ἄν τις, *some one would have said (Past).*

Observe that the *Present Subjunctive*, thus used, expresses Future time; the *Imperfect*, Present time; the *Pluperfect*, Past time.

Note the *Perfect Subjunctive* in:

Paene dixerim. CIC.
I had almost said (lit., I might have said).

(It is doubtful whether *Dixerit aliquis*, *suppose someone to have said*, is Perfect Subjunctive or Future-Perfect Indicative.)

219. *Obs.*—This Potential “would” or “should” is expressed in **Infinitival Clauses** by the Future Participle with “esse” or “fore”; or, especially if Passive, by “fore ut” or “futurum fuisse ut” with Subj. (§ 404: cf. Fr. est-ce que); in **Subjunctival Clauses** by the Perfect Subjunctive, *viz.*, “fuerit” with the Future Participle or Gerundive, or else “potuerit” with the Infinitive (§ 405).—In both, the context alone determines what tense of the Subjunctive is represented.

(The Third Singular of the Aorist must not be elided before *ἄν*: *εἶπεν ἄν*, not *εἶπ’ ἄν*.)

Note 1.—*ἄν* with the Imperfect or Aorist Indicative sometimes expresses frequentative action in Past time:

διηρώτων ἄν αὐτοὺς τί λέγοιεν.
PLAT. I would often ask them what they meant.

Note 2.—*ἄν* with Optative, 1st Person, may express a mild Future, *λέγοιμι’ ἄν*, *I will speak*; 2nd Person, a mild command, *λέγοις ἄν*, *kindly speak*.

Obs.—This *ἄν* may be retained with Infinitive or Participle, the context alone deciding whether the Optative or Historic Indicative be represented (§§ 404, 405, 598).

Notes on the use of *ἄν*:

1. *With the Subjunctive*:

ἄν is sometimes omitted in Prose with *μέχρι, ἕως, πρὶν*:
μέχρι πλοῦς γένηται. THUC.
Till the voyage should begin.

ἄν is sometimes added to *ὤς* or *ὅπως*—not *ἵνα*—in Final Clauses with the Subjunctive, giving to purpose a touch of consequence:

Dixit fore ut urbs caperetur. *He said that the city would be captured (lit., that it would be the case that).*

Non dubium est, quin, nisi subvenissemus, urbs capienda fuerit.

There is no doubt that, had we not come to the rescue, the city would have been taken.

(But, nisi subveniamus, capienda fuerit, *were we not to come, it would be taken.*)

220 *Note.*—**Essem** may almost always be used; **forem** has in it something of potentiality—"would" or "should":

Quum porta aperta esset (*not foret*) intrarunt. *Finding the gate open, they entered.*

Imperavit ut porta aperta foret (*or esset*). *He ordered that the gate should remain open.*

But always *Foret ut, it would be the case that.*

τοῦτ' ἐλαβὼν μου τὸ σκιάδειον ὑπέρεχε ἄνωθεν, ὡς ἂν μὴ μ' ὀρώσιν οἱ θεοί. **AR.**

Take this parasol here of mine and hold it over me, so that the gods may not see me (as then they will not).

2. *With Indicative and Optative:*

ἄν is sometimes repeated for clearness in long sentences, or for emphasis:

οὐκ ἂν ἀποδοίην οὐδ' ἂν ὀβολὸν οὐδενί. **AR.**

I would not give, no, not an obol to anyone.

ἄν is sometimes separated from its verb, especially with such words as οἶδα, φημί, δοκέω:

οὐκ οἶδ' ἂν εἰ πείσαιμι. **EUR.**
(*Sc. οὐκ οἶδ' εἰ πείσαιμι ἄν.*) *I do not know if I could persuade him.*

THE CASES.

221 There were originally eight Cases: 1. Nominative, 2. Vocative, 3. Accusative, 4. Genitive, *of*, 5. Dative, *to, for*, 6. Ablative, *from*, 7. Locative, *at, in*, 8. Instrumental, *with*.

Of these, Latin has lost the last two, Greek the last three: the loss is supplied in the following way:—

Latin.

1. Nominative.
2. Vocative.
3. Accusative.
4. Genitive (partly Locative).
5. Ablative. A. Ablative Proper.
B. Instrumental Ablative.
C. Locative Ablative.
6. Dative.

Greek.

1. Nominative.
2. Vocative.
3. Accusative.
4. Genitive. A. Genitive Proper.
B. Genitive of Ablation.
5. Dative. A. Instrumental Dative.
B. Locative Dative.

1. The Nominative.

222 The Subject of a Finite Verb is in the Nominative Case :

Labuntur anni. HOR.
The years glide on.

(The Subject of the Historic Infinitive is Nominative, § 176.)

1. The Nominative.

πατὴρ ὄλωλε. SOPH.
My father is dead.

(On the Nominative and Infinitive see § 179.)

223 The Predicate of a Copulative Verb (see § 22) is in the Nominative :

Cicero declaratus est consul. CIC.
Cicero was declared consul.

ὁ Περικλῆς ἤρέθη στρατηγός.
Pericles was chosen general.

224 **2. The Vocative.**

The Vocative is the Case of the Person addressed (*voco, I call*):

Pompei, meorum prime sodalium.
HOR.
Pompeius, first of my boon-companions.

σκόπει τοίνυν, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη.
PLAT. *Consider therefore, Socrates, said he.*

(ὦ is usually added, as here.)

3. The Accusative.

The Accusative expresses (a) the goal of an action, (b) the extent of an action.

(a) **The Goal of an Action :**

225 **1. The Accusative of Motion to** (§ 307): *e.g.*,

Romam eo.
I go to Rome.

226 **2. The Accusative of the Direct Object :**

The Direct Object of a Transitive Verb, or any Verb used Transitivity, is in the Accusative :

Haec studia senectutem oblectant.
CIC. *These studies delight old age.*

1. The Accusative of Motion to (see § 307).

(This is rare in Prose without a Preposition.)

2. The Accusative of the Direct Object :

αἰάζω τὸν Ἄδωνιν. BION.
I mourn for Adonis.

227 Many Intransitive Verbs, when compounded with Prepositions, become Transitive, and take a Direct Object :

Brutus Mutinam circumsedet.	Κροῖσος ἄλλον διαβάς. ΗΡΤ.
Cic. <i>Brutus is besieging Mutina.</i>	<i>Croesus, having crossed the Halys.</i>

228 The Subject of the Infinitive is Accusative, being really the Direct Object of the Main Verb (§ 178) :

Nuntiat Philippum adesse.	ἔφη τὸν Φίλιππον παρῆναι.
<i>He announces Philip to be here.</i>	<i>He said that Philip was at hand.</i>

(b) **The Extent of an Action :**

229 1. Extent in **Space**: motion over, distance, etc. (§ 309) :

Tria milia repimus.	ἐξελαίνει δύο σταθμούς.
<i>We crawl three miles.</i>	<i>He marches three stages.</i>

230 2. Extent in **Time**: Duration (§ 300) :

Quinque annos vixit.	πέντε ἔτη ἐβασίλευσεν.
<i>He lived five years.</i>	<i>He reigned five years.</i>

231 3. **The Accusative of Respect**

qualifies Verbs and Adjectives, showing that in respect of which they are used :

Os humerosque deo similis. VIRG.	βέλτιόν ἐστι σῶμά γ' ἢ ψυχὴν νοσεῖν. MENANDER.
<i>In face and bearing like unto a god.</i>	<i>It is better to ail in body than in mind.</i>
(So cetera, in other respects.)	So τὰλλα, in other respects.

232 4. **The Cognate Accusative**

shows the compass or manner of an action or a state. It is so called as being often allied (*cognatus*) in meaning to the Verb it qualifies :

Fortuna ludum insolentem ludit.	ζήσεις βίον κράτιστον ἢν θυμοῦ κρατῆς. MENANDER.
HOR.	<i>You will live the best life if you control your temper.</i>
<i>Fortune plays an insolent game.</i>	

233 5. The Adverbial Accu- 5. The Adverbial Accu-
sative sative

is an extension of the Cognate Accusative to Neuter Adjectives and words used Adverbially :

Dulce ridentem Lalagen amabo. πάντες ἐπ' αὐτῷ ἡδὺν ἐγέλασαν.
HOR. *I will love sweetly-laughing* HOM.
Lalagé. *They all laughed lightly at him.*

Two Accusatives.

234 Note 1.—Transitive Verbs compounded with Prepositions may take two Accusatives, one after the Verb, the other after the Preposition :

Caesar equites flumen transjecit. τεῖχος περιβάλεισθαι τὴν πόλιν.
CAES. *Cæsar threw his cavalry across* HDT.
the river. *To cast a wall round the city.*

235 Note 2.—Factitive Verbs of *making, saying, thinking,* take a second Accusative in apposition to the first :

Socrates totius se mundi civem σὺ Ἔρωτα οὐ θεὸν νομίζεις.
arbitrabatur. CIC. *Socrates thought* PLAT.
himself a citizen of the whole world. *You do not consider Love a god.*

236 Note 3.—Verbs of *asking, teaching, concealing,* can take two Accusatives, one of the Person, one of the Thing :

Antigonus iter omnes celat. NEP. πολλοὶ με σίτων αἰτούσι, πολλοὶ
Antigonus conceals his line of δὲ ἱμάτια. XEN. *Many ask me for*
march from all. *food, and many for clothes.*

237 With these Verbs the Accusative of the Thing may be retained after the Passive (§ 151) :

Latinae legiones militiam Ro- διδάσκομαι λόγους. EUR. *I am*
manam edoctae. LIV. *schooled in speech.* (Other such
The Latin legions were schooled verbs are ἀποστερέω, *I deprive :*
in Roman discipline. *κακὰ ποιέω, I do harm to.)* ..

Obs.—**Exclamation** (*cf.* § 338).

238 The Nominative, Vocative and Accusative may all be used absolutely in exclamations—the Accusative being after some verb of *saying* or *thinking* understood :

1. O studia et mores! CIC.
What tastes! what customs!

2. Proh sancte Juppiter! CIC.
O holy Juppiter!

3. Me miserum. VIRG.
Woe is me!

1. ὦ πόλις, πόλις. ARIST.
O my city, my city!

2. ὦ Ἡρακλεῖς. ARIST.
O Heracles!

3. ὦ ἐμὲ δαίλαιον. EUR.
Woe is me!

4. The Genitive

is so called, as expressing the *genus* or kind to which a word belongs. Its chief use is with Substantives.

239 1. The Possessive Genitive

expresses the possessor, author, father, and generally that to which anything should be referred; answering the question "Whose?"

Contempsi Catilinae gladios. CIC.
I have braved the swords of Catiline.

ὁ Δαρείου ἵππος ἐχρεμέτισε. HDT.
The horse of Darius neighed.

240 "It is the part of" is expressed by a Possessive Genitive dependent on an Infinitive:

Cujusvis hominis est errare. CIC.
It is the nature of any man to err.

ἐσθλοῦ γὰρ ἀνδρὸς τῇ δίκῃ γ' ὑπη-
ρεεῖν. EUR. *For it is the part of
a good man to assist justice.*

241 The Possessive Genitive sometimes depends on a Noun understood; cf. "St. Paul's":

Ad Vestae. HOR.
To Vesta's (temple).

εἰς Αἴδου.
To (the house) of Hades.

242 Contrast the English and Latin idiom in:

Pompeii copiae plures erant quam
Caesaris.

*Pompey's troops were larger than
those of Caesar.*

Note the Possessive Genitive
with the Article:

οἱ Ἀρταξέρξου στρατιῶται πλεί-
ονες ἦσαν τῶν Κύρου.

*The troops of Artaxerxes were
larger than those of Cyrus.*

243 2. **The Partitive Genitive**

expresses the whole of which a part is being considered ; answering the question " Among which ? "

Elephanto belluarum nulla est prudentior. CIC.

Of animals none is more sagacious than the elephant.

2. **The Partitive Genitive**

τῶν λαμβανόντων ἄρ' εἰσὶν οἱ μανθάνοντες PLAT.

Learners are among those who receive.

244 *Note.*—With expressions of Number and Superlatives *e* with the Abl. is often used : Unus ex illis, *one of them.* Note : Nos omnes, *all of us (not nostrum).*

Note.—On ἡμις, ἄκρος, etc., see § 57. οἱ ἡμίσεις τῶν πολιτῶν, *half the citizens.*

(Observe πάντες ἡμεῖς, *all of us.*)

245 (The Partitive Genitive may be used after Neuter Pronouns, Adverbs, and sometimes Verbs : *e.g.*,

Aliquid mali, *some evil* ; nihil injuriae, *no injury* ; ubinam gentium? *where on earth?* satis eloquentiae, *enough eloquence* ; id temporis, *at that time* ; scribe tui gregis hunc (HOR.), *count him in your train.*)

ἐς τοῦτο μωρίας, *to such a pitch of folly* ; ὄψε τῆς ἡμέρας, *late in the day* ; ὡς εἶχον τάχους, lit., *as they had of speed, at full speed* ; τῆς γῆς ἔτεμον, *they ravaged (some) of the land* : cf. j'ai du pain. So after μετέχω, *I share*, etc.)

246 3. **The Descriptive Genitive**

shows the material or character of a thing, or the use of a word ; it answers the question " What sort ? "

Ingentem farris acervum formicae populant. VIRG.

Ants lay waste a huge heap of grain.

3. **The Descriptive Genitive**

δρῶσι σῶρους σίτου, ξύλων, λίθων. XEN.

They see piles of grain, timber, stones.

(The Genitive is here equivalent to an Adjective, and is called an **Attributive Genitive.**)

- 247 *Note.*—**Quality and amount** require an Adjective (*cf.* § 273, Ablative):
- Ingenui voltus puer ingenuique pudoris. JUV. *A youth of noble face and noble modesty.* (“Face” here = expression.)
- Note.*—**Amount** requires an Adjective:
- τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδος. XEN.
A three days’ journey.
- (Otherwise *Quality* is not expressed by the Genitive.)
- 248 (Sometimes the Genitive is equivalent to a Noun in Apposition: it is then called the **Genitive of Definition**: *e.g.*,
- Vox voluptatis. CIC. τὸ κλεινὸν ὄνομα τῆς σωτηρίας.
The word pleasure. EUR. *The glorious word safety.*
- But Ἡ ~~Ἡ~~ Urbs Roma, *the city of Rome.* But Ἡ Μένδη πόλις, *the city of Mendé.*)
- 249 4. **The Subjective and Objective Genitives** are used after Verbal Nouns, and express respectively the Subject and Object of a verbal action.
- (a) **Subjective** Genitive (the enemy fled):
- Fuga hostium.
The flight of the enemy.
- (b) **Objective** Genitive (men love knowledge):
- Erat insitus menti cognitionis amor. CIC.
Love of knowledge had been implanted in the mind.
- (a) **Subjective** Genitive (the king died):
- ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως θάνατος.
The death of the king.
- (b) **Objective** Genitive (they feared the Helots):
- μέγιστος φόβος περιέστη τὴν Σπάρτην τῶν Εἰλωτῶν. THUC.
The greatest fear of the Helots possessed Sparta.
- 250 The Objective Genitive may follow **Adjectives** containing a verbal notion:
- Quis famulus amantior domini quam canis? COL. εὐχῆς δικαίας οὐκ ἀνήκοος θεός.
What servant is fonder of a master than is a dog? MENANDER.
God is not unmindful of righteous prayer.

(On the Genitive with **similis** see § 281.)

(On the Genitive with **κύριος**, **ἄξιος**, etc., see § 265.)

251 The Genitive also follows **Verbs**—partly objective, partly otherwise.

(1) **Memini**, to remember; **obliviscor**, to forget; **misereror**, to pity:

Ipse jubet mortis te meminisse deus. MART.

God himself bids you remember death.

Note.—*Memini*, *reminiscor*, *obliviscor* often take an Accusative; *recordor* usually; *revoco*, *miseror*, *commiseror* always.

(1) **μυμήσκομαι**, remember; **λανθάνομαι**, forget; **ἐπιμέλομαι**, care for; **ἀμελέω**, neglect; **φείδομαι**, spare; **καταφρονέω**, despise: **ὁ τῆς Θέτιδος υἱὸς κινδύνου καταφρόνησεν.** PLAT.

The son of Thetis despised danger.

(**μέλει**, **μεταμέλει** take Dative of Person, Genitive of Thing:

ἐμοὶ δ' ἔλασσον Ζηνὸς ἢ μηδὲν μέλει. AESCH.

I care less than nothing for Zeus.)

252 (2) The five Impersonals, **piget**, vexes, **puget**, shames, **paenitet**, repents, **taedet**, wearies, **miseret**, pities, take Accusative of Person, Genitive of Thing:

Miseret te aliorum, tui te nec miseret nec puget. PLAUT.

You pity others, for yourself you feel neither pity nor shame.

(2) Verbs of the senses: **ἄπτομαι**, touch; **γεύομαι**, taste; **ὀσφραίνομαι**, smell; **αἰσθάνομαι**, perceive:

τί δῆτα κλάεις; Κρομμύων ὀσφραίνομαι. “Why then do you weep?” “I smell onions.”

So ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόντην. XEN. *They seized Orontes by the girdle.*

253 (3) **Interest**, interests, and **refert**, concerns, take (a) the Feminine Ablatives *meā*, *tuā*, *sua*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, or (b) a Possessive Genitive—but with *refert* the Genitive is rare. To both, the Genitives of Value

Note.—**ἀκούω** takes Genitive of Person, Accusative of Thing:

ταῦτα Καλύψους ἤκουσα. HOM. *This I heard from Calypso.*

(3) Verbs of *straining after*, **ἐπιθυμέω**; *attaining*, **τυγχάνω**; *missing*, **ἀμαρτάνω**:

magni, etc. (§ 257), are often added :

(a) *Illud meâ magni interest te ut videam.* CIC. *It is of great importance to me that I should see you.*

(b) *Interest omnium recte facere.* CIC. *It is for the good of all to do right.*

- 254 (4) **Potior** takes either a Genitive or Ablative (§ 269) : *Potiri oppido or oppidi, to get possession of a city.*

255 5. **The Genitive of Fulness and Want.**

Verbs and Adjectives implying fulness or want are followed by a Genitive :

E.g.,

Plenus, egeo, indigeo :

Acerra turis plena. HOR.
A casket full of incense.

Obs.—Words implying want, *e.g., egeo, indigeo*, take also a Privative Ablative—*careo* always (§ 260). Words of fulness, especially Verbs, *e.g., impleo*, take also an Instrumental Ablative (§ 269).

- 256 6. **The Genitive of Cause**, *viz.*, of the crime, follows Verbs and Adjectives of *accusing, acquitting, condemning* :

Alter latrocinii reus, alter caedis convictus est. CIC.

One was accused of robbery, one convicted of murder.

τοῦ σκοποῦ ἀμαρτῶν τοῦ παιδὸς ἔτυχεν. ANTIPIH. *He missed the mark and hit the child.*

A *Partitive Genitive* also follows verbs : *e.g., μετέχω, μεταδίδωμι* ; a *Separative Genitive* (§ 260) verbs like *παύω*. Verbs of mastery, *βασιλεύω*, etc., take either a *Comparative Genitive* (§ 263) or an *Indirect Dative* (§ 278).

5. **The Genitive of Fulness and Want.**

E.g., πλήρης, κενός, πίμπλημι, δέομαι, δεῖ, σπανίζω :

ποταμὸς πλήρης ἰχθύων. XEN.
A river full of fish.

N.B.—*πολλοῦ δεῖ*, *far from it* (lit., it lacks much ; *cf.* French, “il s'en faut de beaucoup”).

Obs.—The *Genitive of Want* is half-Privative (§ 260). Verbs of fulness take also an *Instrumental Dative* (§ 269).

6. **The Genitive of Cause** is used :

(1) With Verbs of *accusing, acquitting, condemning* :

διώκω μὲν κατηγορίας, φόνου δὲ φεύγω. LYS.

I prosecute for libel, I am prosecuted for murder.

Note.—The *penalty* is usually expressed by the Instrumental Ablative :

Miltiades, capitis absolutus, pecuniâ multatus est. NEP.

Miltiades was acquitted on the capital charge, but fined a sum of money.

(But there was some confusion between the crime and the penalty. Thus Cicero says both capitis damnari, *to be condemned on a capital charge*, and, capite damnari, *to be condemned to death.*)

257 7. The "Locative" Genitive :

The following Genitives were originally Locatives :

(1) **The Genitive of Place** (§ 307) : Romae, *at Rome.*

(2) **The Genitive of Value** : with Verbs of *buying, selling, valuing.* This is confined to vague phrases, magni, parvi, plurimi, minimi, pluris, minoris; also flocci (*fleece*), nauci (*nut*). For definite price, the Instrumental Ablative is used :

Quanti emptae? Octussibus.
HOR. *How much did they cost?*
Eight asses.

258 *Obs.*—The following are also perhaps Locative : Maturus aevi (VIRG.), *mature in age*; Pendere animi, *to be in suspense*

(But κατηγορεῖν τινος δειλίαν, *to accuse some one of cowardice*; καταγιγνώσκειν τινὸς θάνατον, *to condemn some one to death.*)

(2) With Verbs of *feeling*, ζηλώω, θαυμάζω, χάριν ἔχω, etc. :

ζηλῶ σε τοῦ νοῦ, τῆς δὲ δειλίας στυγῶ. SOPH.

I envy thee for thy wit, but hate thee for thy cowardice.

(3) In exclamations (*cf.* Eng. "alas for my ill-fortune") :

ἀλλαντοπώλης; ὦ Πόσειδον τῆς τέχνης. AR. *A sausage-seller! Poseidon, what a trade!*

7. **The Genitive of Value** : with *to buy, sell, value* :

δόξα χρημάτων οὐκ ὠνητή. ISAEUS.

Glory is not to be purchased for money.

N.B.—πολλοῦ, οὐδένος ποιεῖσθαι, *to make much, nothing of.*

So after τίμιος, ἄξιος, *worth* (§ 265), and Verbs of *exchanging.*

(To *buy* and *exchange* take also Instrum. Dative, § 268.)

(On the **Genitives of Time and Place**, νυκτός, *by night*, see § 303.)

Obs.—Many of the Genitives classed as Objective or Causal may be *Genitives of Respect.* This is especially so with some

of *mind*. But both here, and in many instances classed as Objective, etc., the Genitive is probably a vague *Genitive of Respect*. Thus :

Integer vitae scelerisque purus.

HOR. *Blameless of life and all unstained by sin.*

5. The Ablative.

(The Ablative has three uses : A. *Ablative Proper*, B. *Instrumental*, C. *Locative*.)

A. Ablative Proper.

259 1. **The Ablative of Motion**
from : Roma, *from Rome* (§ 307).

260 2. **The Ablative of Separation or Privation :**

After Verbs implying to *remove, release, deprive, cease, differ* and the like :

Barbari oppugnatione desistunt.
CAES. *The barbarians cease from the assault.*

So with Verbs of *wanting, indigeo, egeo, careo, yaco* (§ 255).

So with Adjectives, Adverbs and (§ 291) Prepositions implying the same ideas :

E.g., liber, orbis, procul, sine, etc.

Procul negotiis, solutus omni fenore.
HOR. *Far from business, freed from all usury.*

of the vaguer Genitives after Adjectives. Sometimes the Genitive depends on a word contained in the Adjective: *e.g.,*

δομάτων ὑπόστεγοι. SOPH.

Under shelter of the house.

In other cases, *e.g.,* with words expressing “*want*,” it is difficult to distinguish between the Genitive Proper and the Genitive of Ablation.

(See *infra*, § 260.)

B. Genitive of Ablation.

1. **The Genitive of Motion**
from : in Prose, with Preposition (§ 305).

2. **The Genitive of Separation or Privation :**

ἐπεὶ δὲ θρήνων καὶ γόων ἐπαύσατο. EUR. *But when she had ceased from moaning and lament.*

So with Verbs of *wanting, δέομαι, σπανίζω, ἀπορέω* (see *supra*, § 255).

E.g., γυμνός, ὄρφανος, χωρίς, ἄνευ, etc.

γλῶσσα καθαρὰ τῶν σημείων.
HDT.

A tongue clear of the marks.

- 261 **3. The Ablative of Origin :** **3. The Genitive of Origin :**
 Apollo Jove natus est et Latona. πατρός λέγεται Κῦρος γενέσθαι
 CIC. Καμβύσου. XEN.
Apollo was born from Jove and *Cyrus is said to have been the son*
Latona. *of Cambyses.*
 (Of distant ancestors, *ab* or (More often *ἐξ* or *ἀπό* is pre-
ex is prefixed.) fixed.)
- 262 **4. The Ablative of the Agent, with *a* or *ab* :** **4. The Ablative of the Agent, with *ὑπό* :**
 marks the person from whom the action arises or originates ;
 see Passive Construction, § 148.
- 263 **5. The Comparative Ablative** (Major humano, *larger than human*) : **5. The Comparative Genitive** (*μείζων ἀνδρός, larger than a man*) :
 shows the point of departure from which the Comparison originates : “ A is better, judging from B,” § 62.
- 264 **6. The Ablative Absolute** (Regibus exactis, *the kings being expelled ; Teucro duce, with Teucer as leader*) is probably an Ablative of Accompaniment (§ 272). See § 195. **6. The Genitive Absolute** (Θεοῦ θέλοντος, *God willing*) probably, in spite of its resemblance to the Latin Ablative Absolute, marks the Antecedent Circumstances like 4 (§ 195).
- 265 The following also take an Ablative : The following also take a Genitive :
 (1) **dignus, indignus ; dignor** (*I deem worthy*) : (1) **ἄξιος, ἀνάξιος, ἀξιώω** (*I deem worthy*) (*cf.* § 257) :
 Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori. HOR. τί δ' ἄξιον μοι τῆσδε τυγχάνει φυγῆς ; EUR.
A man worthy of praise the Muse forbids to die. *What have I done to earn this banishment ?*
 (2) **Opus est, there is need of :** (2) **χρεία ἐστι, δεῖ,** *there is need of :*

Ubi res adsunt, quid opus est
verbis? SALL. *When facts are forth-*
coming, what need is there of words?

σοί τε γὰρ παίδων τί δεῖ;
EUR. *What need hast thou of children?*

Obs.—The last three, the
Ablative Absolute, and the Ablat-
ives with *dignus* and *opus*, are
probably rather Instrumental
(Accompaniment or Means).

B. The Instrumental Ablative.

266 1. The Ablative of Means or Instrument (*cf.* § 149):

Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit.
HOR.

*The wolf attacks with his teeth, the
bull with his horns.*

The idea of Means includes many idioms, the character of
which is sometimes obscured by the English equivalent: *e.g.*,
“he entered *by* the gate,” “I hold *in* (*viz.*, with) my hand,”
“to receive *within* (*viz.*, with) the house”. So also—

267 2. The Ablative of Measure of Difference:

Hibernia dimidio minor est Bri-
tanniá. CAES.

*Ireland is smaller than Britain by
one half.*

So Multo major, *much bigger.*

268 3. The Ablative of Price (see Genitive of Value, § 257):

Vendidit hic auro patriam. VIRG.
*This man sold his country for
(with) gold.*

5. The Dative.

The Dative has three uses:
A. *Instrumental*, B. *Locative*,
C. *Dative Proprie*.

A. The Instrumental Dative.

1. The Dative of Means or Instrument (*cf.* § 149):

χρηστὸς πονηροῦς οὐ τιτρώσκειται
λόγοις. MENANDER.

*A good man is not wounded by bad
words.*

2. The Dative of Measure of Difference:

Ὀρέστῃς τῇ κεφαλῇ μείζων ἦν
τῶν νῦν ἀνθρώπων.

*Orestes was taller by a head than
the men of to-day.*

So πολλῶ μείζων, *much bigger.*

3. The Dative of Penalty, less often Price:

ἐξημίωσαν Φρόνιχον χιλίας
δραχμαῖς. HDT. *They fined Phry-*
nichus (with) a thousand drachmae.

(**Muto** pacem bello, *I change peace for war*, or *war for peace*.)

269 4. **The Ablative of Material:**

E.g., Britannii lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti. CAES.

The Britons live on milk and meat, and are clothed with skins.

So with the Adjectives **plenus, praeditus, fretus**; and the Verbs **utor, fruor, fungor, vescor, potior**:

Hannibal cum victoriâ posset uti frui maluit. Liv.

Hannibal, when he might have used his victory, preferred to enjoy it.

(*Plenus* and *potior* take also a Genitive (§§ 254, 255).)

270 5. **The Ablative of Cause:**

Mantua Vergilio gaudet, Verona Catullo. Ov.

Mantua rejoices in (through) Virgil, Verona in Catullus.

271 6. **The Ablative of Connexion**, after, *e.g.*, misceo, conjungo, especially in the Passive Participle:

Commixtis igne tenebris. VIRG.
Gloom mingled with fire.

(After Finite Verbs *cum* is usually added.)

272 7. **The Ablative of Manner or Attendant Circumstance**, usually with an Epithet or *cum*:

(See Genitive of Value, § 257.)

So ἀλλάσσω, *change*, with Dat.

4. **The Dative of Material:**

ἄρμα τε οἱ χρυσοῦ τε καὶ ἀργύρῳ εὖ ἤσκηται. HOM.

And his chariot is well-inlaid with gold and silver.

So χρόμαι, *I use*, and in the same sense, νομίζω:

ἔχρητο τῇ τραπέζῃ τοῦ πατρὸς. DEM.

He had dealings with his father's bank.

(Most Verbs and all Adjectives implying to "abound in" take a Genitive of Fulness (§ 255).)

5. **The Dative of Cause:**

εὐπραγίαις οὐκ ἐξυβρίζομεν. THUC.

We do not break out into insolence through success.

6. **The Dative of Connexion**, after, *e.g.*, ὀμιλέω, μίγνυμι, συλλέγομαι, μάχομαι, ἀκολουθέω, ἔπομαι:
θρόμβῳ δ' ἔμιξεν αἵματος φίλον γάλα. AESCH. *And mingled the sweet milk with gouts of blood.*

(With these, σύν or ἄμα is often added.)

7. **The Dative of Manner or Attendant Circumstance**, usually with an Epithet or σύν:

Jam veniet tacito curva senecta
pede. Ov.

Soon bent old age will come with
silent step.

οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἀπελεῖ τῇ νίκῃ
ἀνέστησαν. THUC.

The Athenians retired with their
victory incomplete.

Sometimes literal Accompaniment is thus expressed: *e.g.*, "he came with a large army".

Probably the Ablative Absolute is of this kind (§ 264). *(It is often expressed by ἔχων: e.g., πολλὸν στρατὸν ἔχων παρήλθεν.)*

With certain Adverbial Phrases the Preposition may be omitted:

Jure, *rightly*; more, *after the manner of*; vi, *by force*.

δίκῃ, *rightly*; πέζῃ, *on foot*; δρόμῳ, *at full speed*.

273 8. **The Ablative of Quality**, with an Epithet (*cf.* the Genitive of Quality, § 247):

Senex promissá barbá, horrenti capillo. PLIN.

An old man with a long beard and rough hair.

Note.—To the Dative of Accompaniment αὐτοῖς is often added:

μίαν ναῦν ἔλαβον αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν. THUC.

They took one ship, men and all (with the men themselves).

Note that the *Ablative* is used chiefly of physical qualities, the *Genitive* only of mental qualities.

(The Dative of Quality should not be used in Greek: *e.g.*, "with long hair," μακρὰν ἔχων τὴν κόμην: *cf.* § 272.)

C. The Locative Ablative.

274 1. **The Ablative of Place where**: rure, *in the country* (§ 307).

275 2. **The Ablative of Time when**: vere, *in spring* (§ 301).

276 3. **The Ablative of Respect** (*cf.* Accusative, § 231):

B. The Locative Dative.

1. **The Dative of Place where**: Μαραθῶνι, *at Marathon* (§ 307).

2. **The Dative of Time when**: τῇ προτεραίᾳ, *the day before* (§ 301).

3. **The Dative of Respect** (*cf.* Accusative, § 231):

Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis. Ov. *Ennius mighty in genius, rude in art.*
 λόγῳ μὲν δημοκρατία, ἔργῳ δὲ ἀρχή. THUC. *In theory, a republic; in fact, a despotism.*

So in such phrases as "few *in* number," "Calchas *by* (in) name," "a Persian *by* (in) race".

So of the *Part Affected*: In most of these the Accusative can also be used; the *Part Affected* is invariably Accusative.
 Et corde et genibus tremit. HOR. *She trembles both in heart and knee.*

6. The Dative

C. The Dative Proper.

(1) The Dative of the Indirect Object.

277 (a) With Transitive Verbs of *giving, telling, showing, promising, entrusting, owing*, which take a Direct Accusative:

Caesar Pompeio tres legiones tradidit. CAES. *Caesar handed over three legions to Pompey.*
 ἡ μωρία δίδωσιν ἀνθρώποις κακά. MENANDER. *Folly brings evil to men.*

278 (b) After Intransitive Verbs, to *believe, spare or pardon, obey, command, persuade, permit, please, help, hurt*:

Credo, invideo, parco, ignosco, pareo, impero, persuadeo, permitto, placeo, subvenio, noceo:
 πιστεύω, φθονέω, συγγιγνώσκω, πείθομαι, ἐντέλλομαι, παραινέω, συγχωρέω, ἀρέσκω, βοηθέω, λυμάνομαι (ON συν-, see § 280):

Imperare sibi maximum imperium est. SEN. *To master oneself is the highest mastery.*
 πείσομαι δὲ μᾶλλον τῷ θεῷ ἢ ὑμῖν. PLAT. *I shall obey God rather than you.*

(Many Verbs similar in meaning to the above take a Direct Accusative; e.g., compare with the last six:

Jubeo, moneo, sino, delecto, juvo, laedo.)
 κελεύω, πείθω, ἐάω, τέρπω, ὠφελέω, βλάπτω.)

279 *Note.*—If the Verbs in (b) are used Transitivity, they of course take an Accusative of the Direct Object:

Caesar equites toti provinciae
imperaverat. CAES.

*Caesar had requisitioned the whole
province for cavalry.*

παρανέσαι γέ σοι θέλω τὰ
λῶστα. ÆSCH.

*I wish at any rate to give thee the
best advice.*

- 280 Beside the above, many Verbs, whether Transitive or Intransitive, when compounded with Prepositions, take a Dative: especially compounds of **sum**, especially compounds of **ἐπί** e.g., *desum, prosum*; even and **πρός**, in the sense of adding or attacking.

E.g.:

εὐπετῶς ἐπιθήσει Εὐβοίᾳ. HDT.
You will easily attack Euboea.

(Compounds of **σύν** take a Dative of Connexion, Instrumental, § 271.)

- 281 Many Adjectives and Adverbs, e.g., *useful, becoming, kind, obedient, like*, take a Dative, like the Verbs they resemble:

Par levibus ventis volucrique similima somno. VIRG. *Like to light winds, and similar to fleeting sleep.*

κύματα πелώρια, ἴσα ὄρεσιν
HOM.

Huge waves, like mountains.

Similis, dissimilis take a Genitive always of Personal Pronouns, usually of living things: *Ille similis est mei* (PLAUT.), *He is like me.*

(With words implying difference, **ἀλλότριος, διάφορος**, a Separative Genitive is usual, § 260. But note **διάφορός τινι**, *at variance with someone.*)

(2) The Dative of Interest.

- 282 While the Dative of the Indirect Object is confined to certain Verbs, the Dative of Interest may be used with any Verb. It is called also the **Dativus Commodi** or **Dativus Incommodi**, if it expresses what is distinctly to anyone's Advantage or Disadvantage.

Sic vos non vobis mellificatis,
apes. OV.

Thus ye make honey not for yourselves, O bees.

πᾶς ἀνὴρ αὐτῷ πονεῖ. SOPH.
Every one labours for himself.

(So **ἀμύνειν, τιμωρεῖν τινι**, *to defend, avenge any one* (keep

(So **arceo** or **defendo** aliquid off, punish, for some one);
 alicui, to keep off something ἀμύνειν, τιμωρεῖν τινα, to keep off,
 from (for) any one.) πυνίσις some one.)

283 Sometimes this Dative expresses merely the **Person Judging**,
 the person from whose point of view a statement is made :

Quintia formosa est multis, mihi candida. CAT.	Ἐπίδαμνος ἔστι πόλις ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑσπλέοντι. THUC.
Quintia is beautiful in the eyes of many, in mine she is fair.	Epidamnus is a city on the right hand as you sail in.

284 In its vaguest use it is called the **Ethic Dative**—confined to
 personal pronouns: cf. “knock me on this door”.

Quid mihi Celsus agit? HOR.	μέμνησθέ μοι μὴ θορυβεῖν.
What is my friend Celsus doing? (Or, What, I pray, etc.)	PLAT. Remember, I pray, not to interrupt.

285 The Dative of Interest often occurs where we should use
 a Genitive or a Possessive Pronoun :

Sese flentes Caesari ad pedes pro- jecerunt. CAES. They threw them- selves in tears at Caesar's feet.	σκῆπτρον δέ οἱ ἐξέπεσε χειρός. HOM. And the staff fell from his hand.
---	---

286 The following special uses are only forms of the Dative of
 Interest in another guise :

(1) The Dative of the Possessor : with the Verb “to be”:	(1) The Dative of the Possessor : with the Verb “to be,” etc.:
--	--

Est mihi namque domi pater. VIRG. For I have a father at home (there is for me).	ἐνταῦθα Κύρω ἦν παράδεισος μέγας. XEN. Cyrus had a large park there.
--	--

287 (2) The Dative of the Agent : with Gerunds, Gerun- dives, and Verbal Adjectives (§ 188):	(2) The Dative of the Agent : with Verbal Adjectives (§ 188):
---	---

Mihi dormiendum est, I must sleep cf. “sleep is the thing for me”). (In Poetry this use extends to Passive Participles.)	ὠφελιγέα σοι ἡ πόλις ἐστίν. XEN. You must benefit the State (lit., here is the State for you, to be benefited).
---	---

288 (3) **The Dative of the thing** or **Predicative Dative** expresses the result, purpose, or bearing of an action. It is often joined to a Dative of the Person, when the whole phrase is called the *Double Dative* :

Exitio est avidum mare nautis.
HOR. *The ravenous sea is (for) a destruction to sailors.*

Obs.—The Dative of Agent is also used with the Third Person Singular of the Perfect and Pluperfect Passive :

ἐπειδὴ παρεσκεύαστο Κορινθίους.
THUC.

When the Corinthians had made their preparations.

(The Dative of the Thing is not used in Greek.)

The Prepositions.

Prepositions define further the meaning already present in the case. They were once adverbs, and some remain so still.

289 (1) **Twenty-eight Prepositions with the Accusative only :**

Ad, to ; **adversus**, against ; **apud**, at, near ; **ante**, **post**, before, after (time, place, or relation) ; **pone**, behind ; **circum**, **circa**, **circiter**, round, about ; **cis**, **citra**, on this side of ; **ultra**, on the other side of, beyond ; **contra**, against, opposite to ; **erga**, towards (not of place) ; **inter**, among, between, during ; **extra**, outside ; **intra**, within (time, or place) ; **infra**, **supra**, beneath, above (place or relation) ; **juxta**, adjoining ; **ob**, on account of ; **penes**, in the power of ; **per**, through (place, time, or relation) ; **praeter**.

(1) **Three Prepositions with the Accusative :**

εἰς (ἐς), into, to ; **ὧς**, to (of Persons) ; **ἀνά**, up, throughout :
ἀφίκετο ὧς Περδικκᾶν καὶ ἐς τὴν Χαλκιδικήν. THUC. *He came to Perdiccas and to Chalcidice.*

Note 1.—εἰς is preferred before both consonants and vowels by Attic Prose writers, except Thucydides, who uses ἐς ; in Attic Verse, ἐς is usual before consonants, εἰς before vowels, unless the metre requires ἐς.

Note 2.—ἀνά is found in Epic with the Dative. Observe ἄνα (N.B. accent) for ἀνάστηθι, up ! (§ 295.)

Two Prepositions with the Dative only :

along, past, besides; **prope**, near; **propter**, on account of, along; **secundum**, along, next to, according to; **trans**, across, over; **versus**, towards.

Note.—*Versus* always follows its case :

Brundisium versus. CIC.
Towards Brundisium.

290 (2) Twelve Prepositions with the Ablative only :

A, **ab**, by, from; **absque**, without (rare); **coram**, in the presence of; **de**, down from, concerning; **sine**, without; **tenus**, as far as; **pro**, in front of, on behalf of; **prae**, in front of, compared with; **palam**, in the sight of; **clam**, unknown to; **cum**, with; **e**, **ex**, out of, from.

Note 1.—*A, e* before Consonants; *ab, ex* before Vowels or Consonants.

Note 2.—*Mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quibuscum* : not *cum me*, etc.

Note 3.—*Tenus*, like *versus*, always follows its case; it also takes a Genitive.

Capulo tenus abdidit ensem.
VIRG.

He buried his sword to the hilt.

Note 4.—*Clam* is used in Comedy also with the Genitive

ξύν (*σύν*), with; **έν**, in (of time or place).

Note.—*σύν* is preferred in Prose; *ξύν*, the older form, in Tragedy, unless the metre requires *σύν*.

(*μετά* with the Genitive absorbs many of the uses of *σύν* with the Dative.)

Four Prepositions with the Genitive only :

ἀντί, instead of; **ἀπό**, from; **ἐκ** (*ἐξ*), out of; **πρό**, before (of place, time, or preference).

Note.—*ἐκ* is used before consonants, *ἐξ* before vowels.

(2) Five Prepositions with the Accusative and Genitive :

διά, through; 1. Acc. = on account of; 2. Gen. = by means of, (motion) through.

κατά, down; 1. Acc. = along, according to; 2. Gen. = down from, down on.

ὑπέρ, over; 1. Acc. = beyond, more than; 2. Gen. = on behalf of.

ἀμφί, about; 1. Acc. = round, nearly; 2. Gen. = concerning.

μετά, attendant on; 1. Acc. = after; 2. Gen. = with.

(Note especially *δι' αὐτόν*, because of him, *δι' αὐτοῦ*, by his means; *μετ' αὐτόν*, after him, *μετ' αὐτοῦ*, with him.)

or Accusative. Even with the Ablative it is rare as a Preposition in Prose.

Note.—The Dative is found in Poetry with *μετά* (*among*) and *ἀμφί* (*about*).

291 **(3) Four Prepositions with Accusative or Ablative :**

Super, *above*; 1. Acc. = *over, beyond*; 2. Abl. = *rest over*.

Sub, *under*; 1. Acc. = *to under*; 2. Abl. = *rest under*.

Subter, *under*; 1. Acc. = *to under*; 2. Abl. = *rest under*.

In; 1. Acc. = *into*; 2. Abl. = *in, on*.

(With all four, the Accusative implies *motion*; the Ablative *rest*: Sub *arbore restat, he remains under the tree*; sub *arborem venit, he comes under the tree*. But the motion is often previous to the action of the Verb: Sub *arborem conedit, he halted under the tree*.)

292 *Obs.*—Several of the above are also Adverbs: *pone, circum, ante, post, all in -tra, palam, clam, coram*.

The Adverbs **procul, simul** are also used as Prepositions with the Abl. (§§ 260, 271); **causâ, gratiâ**, *for the sake of*, can be followed by the Gen.

Distinguish Longum *post tempus, after a long time*

(3) Five Prepositions with the Accusative, Genitive and Dative :

ἐπί, *on*; 1. Acc. = *against*; 2. Gen. = *on (partially)*; 3. Dat. = *on (wholly)*.

παρά, *beside*; 1. Acc. = *to (beside), contrary to*; 2. Gen. = *from (beside)*; 3. Dat. = *near (beside)*.

περί, *around*; 1. Acc. = (*motion*) *round*; 2. Gen. = *concerning*; 3. Dat. = (*rest*) *round*.

πρός, *to*; 1. Acc. = *towards, regarding*; 2. Gen. = *in respect to*; 3. Dat. = *in addition to*.

ὑπό, *under*; 1. Acc. = *to under*; 2. Gen. = *from under*; 3. Dat. = (*rest*) *under*.

Many Adverbs are also used as Prepositions :

(a) With *Dative* : *ἄμα, ὁμοῦ, along with*.

(b) With *Genitive* : *πλήν, except*; *ἄνευ, ἄτερ, χωρίς, δίχα, without*; *ἔνεκα, ἔνεκεν, ἕκατι, for the sake of* (these follow their case); *λάθρα, κρύφα, unknown to*; and Adverbs of Place: *εἴσω, inside*; *ἐκτός, outside*; *μεταξύ,*

(Prep.), and Longo post tempore, a long time afterwards (Adv.).

between; ἔγγύς, πέλας, πλησίον, ἄγχι, near. (The last four less often take a Dative.)

293 The following idioms with Prepositions should be noticed :

Ad Cannas, at Cannae; ad voluptatem vivere, to live for pleasure; nihil ad rem, not to the point; ad haec, in addition to this; per te stetit, it was through you; per deos, in Heaven's name; per haec, by these means; propter haec, on account of this; secundum legem, according to law; contra legem, contrary to law; praeter hoc, except this; praeter spem, beyond one's hopes; apud eum, at his house; apud (contra) Massiliam, off Marseilles; cum dis, with Heaven's help; ex Metello consule, from the consulship of Metellus; ex itinere captus, captured on a journey; e dextra, on the right (so ad dextram); unus ex illis, one of them; in Ganymede, in the case of Ganymede; in equum ascendere, to mount on horseback (but equo vehi, to ride); in gratiam, for the benefit of; in hostes, against the enemy; sub noctem, at nightfall; sub montem, close up under the mountain; sub specie pacis, under pretence of

πρὸς βωμόν, at the altar; πρὸς ἡδονὴν ζῆν, to live for pleasure; πρὸς ταῦτα, therefore; πρὸς τούτοις, in addition to these things; πρὸς αὐτοῦ, by him (agent); πρὸς θεῶν, in Heaven's name; διὰ τούτων, by these means; διὰ ταῦτα, on account of this; κατὰ νόμον, according to law; παρὰ νόμον, contrary to law; οὐδὲν παρὰ ταῦτα, nothing except this; παρ' ἐλπίδα, beyond one's hopes; παρὰ Κύρον, Κύρου, Κύρω, to, from, at the court of Cyrus; μετ' αὐτοῦ (σὺν αὐτῷ), with him; μετὰ ταῦτα (ἐκ τούτων), after these things; ἐκ δεξιᾶς, on the right (so ἐπὶ δεξιᾶς, πρὸς δεξιάν, κατὰ δεξιάν); τυφλὸς ἐκ δεοδορκότος, blind after seeing; ἐφ' ἵππου, on horseback; ἐπ' ἐμοῦ, in my time; τὰ ἐπὶ Θράκης, the parts Thracewards; ἐπὶ πολέμῳ, with a view to war; ἐπὶ τούτοις, on these conditions; ἐπ' αὐτόν, against him; ὑπὸ νύκτα, at nightfall; ὑπὸ ὄρος, or ὑπὸ ὄρους, under the mountain; ὑπὸ σάλπιγγος πίνευ, to drink to the sound of the trumpet;

peace; ab omni parte, *on every side*; ab aliquo, *by anyone (agent)*; stare ab aliquo, *to be on anyone's side*; de his, *about this*; pro patriâ, *for one's country*; supra modum, *beyond measure*.
 ἰπὸ τινος, *by anyone (agent)*; οἱ περὶ Πείσανδρον, *Pisander's followers*; περὶ τούτων, *about these things*; ὑπὲρ πόλεως, *for one's country*; ὑπὲρ αἴσαν, *beyond measure*.

Notes on the Prepositions.

294 Prepositions are sometimes used "proleptically" (§ 545), anticipating a condition not yet attained.

Chiefly with *in* and the Ablative: *e.g.*,

In sacri vertice montis abit. Ov.
Departs (and abides) on the summit of the sacred mount.

Frequent with ἐν, εἰς, ἐκ, especially with the Article:

ἐκδιδράσκουσιν οἱ ἐκ τῶν Ὀρνεῶν. Thuc.
The men at Orneæ escape.

295 The Preposition generally **precedes** both the Substantive and its Attribute: *e.g.*,

Cum multâ vi; propter belli Latini metum.

But it often comes between the Substantive and Adjective: *e.g.*,

Magnâ cum curâ; uno in illo proelio.

In Poetry it often precedes the Attribute alone: *e.g.*,

Coelo demittit ab alto. VIRG.

Namque sub Oebaliae memini me turribus altis. VIRG.

μετὰ πολλῆς σπουδῆς, ἐν τῇ τῶν πολεμίων χώρᾳ.

In Prose this rule is almost invariable; in Poetry there is some licence. Note the following examples:

τῆσδ' ἀπ' Ἰδαίας χθονός.
 ἴσχε διὰ πολυρράφου στρέφων πόρτακος.
 ἐν τοῖς Ἀτρεΐδου δούλος ᾤκισται δόμοις.

In poetry also a two-syllabled Preposition often **follows** its Noun; *cf.* English, "We roam the fields around": *e.g.*,

Altaria circum, *round the altars.*

τῆσδε τῆς χώρας ὑπερ, *for this country.* N.B., the accent is

(~~Κ~~ This licence does not extend to monosyllables. Thus, in writing verses, such phrases as Littus ad, *to the shore*, must be avoided.)

here thrown back ("Anastrophe") with all except ἀντί, ἀμφί, διά, ἀνά (§ 289).

περί is often postponed after a Genitive, even in Prose.

296

Prepositions in Composition with Verbs.

All the above Prepositions, except adversus, versus, tenus, penes, clam, palam, coram, and those in -tra, can be joined to Verbs; also **ambi-**, *on both sides*; **dis-**, *asunder*; **re-**, *back*; **se-**, *apart*; **por-** (= pro), *forward*.

All these Prepositions, except ὡς, to, are used also in Composition; also the semi-Adverbial **δίχα**, *apart*; **πάλιν**, *back*; **ὁμοῦ**, *along with*; and some others.

E.g., ὁμολογῶ τι, *I agree with someone*.

297 A few special meanings of Prepositions in Composition should be noticed :

Subrideo, *smile (slightly)*; submitto, *send secretly*; lux sublapsa, *light flashing up (from under)*; subverto, *overthrow*; declamo, *bluster loudly*; desaevit hiemps, *the storm rages itself out*; denuntio, *threaten*; deduco, *lead forth*; perficio, *finish*; pereo, *die*; excipio, *succeed (in order)*; emorior, *die off*; abutor, (1) *use fully*, (2) *misuse*; reddo, *render what is due, give back*; resigno, *unseal*; transfero, *translate, transcribe*; transmuto, *interchange*; intersum, *take part in*; intermitto, *interrupt*; intervello, *thin*.

ὑπογελῶ, *smile (slightly)*; ὑποφεύγω, *escape secretly*; ἀναίρω, *overthrow*; καθαιρέω, *overthrow*; κατακλαίω, *weep bitterly*; κατακοιμῶ τὴν ἡμέραν, *sleep out the day*; κατηγορέω, *accuse*; κατάγειν, *restore from exile*; διατελέω, *finish*; διανέμω, *distribute*; διάδοχος, *a successor*; ἀποθνήσκω, *die (off)*; ἀποχράομαι, (1) *use fully*, (2) *misuse*; ἀποδίδωμι, *render what is due, give back*; ἀποκαλύπτω, *uncover*; μεταγράφω, *translate, transcribe*; μεταλλάσσω, *interchange*; μεταδίδωμι, *μετέχω, give, have a share of*; μεταπέμπω, *send for*.

298 With Compound Verbs the Preposition is, as a rule, **repeated** only where physical motion is implied : e.g.,

Mare or per mare percurrere, νήσον or διὰ νήσον διελθεῖν, to pass over the sea ; but, Multas res oratione percurrere, τὴν νήσον διελθεῖν, to pass over an island ; ἕκαστα λόγῳ διελθεῖν, to enumerate details. (But usually abhorrere ab, to shrink from.) repeated.)

299 One Preposition in Composition is often explained by another :

Ad- by in ; ab- by de or ex ; ἐν- or ἀνα- by εἰς ; ἀπο- or de- by ex ; e.g., in murum ascendere ; ex equo descendere. κατα- by ἐξ ; e.g., ἐμβαίνειν εἰς ναῦν ; καταβαίνειν ἐκ δίφρου.

A Compound Verb may sometimes govern either a new case (§ 280) or the one required by its Preposition. This is especially so in phrases expressing "motion to" :

Curetum adlabimur oris— τοὺς ἡμῶν ἐπιστρατεύσαντας— VIRG. (Dative) ; but, Fama Thuc. (Dative) ; but, τοὺς μὴ adlabitur aures—VIRG. (Accusative). ἐπικαλουμένους ἐπιστρατεύουσιν. —Thuc. (Accusative).

Time, Place, Space.

1. Time : how long, when, within which.

Time is expressed by a Case, without a Preposition.

300 (1) **Time how long** : the Accusative (§ 230) : (1) **Time how long** : the Accusative (§ 230) :

Pericles quadraginta annos prae-
fuit Athenis. CIC.

Pericles was head of Athens for
forty years.

τρεῖς ἐννέα ἔτη ἐγένετο ὁ πόλεμος.
THUC.

The Peloponnesian War lasted for
thrice nine years.

Note the expression of age with the Participle, "being born" :

Cato quinque et octoginta annos
natus excessit e vita. CIC.

Cato died at the age of eighty-
five.

ἐπεχείρει δημογορεῖν οὐδέπω
εἴκοσιν ἔτη γεγονώς. XEN.

He attempted to address the people
when not yet twenty-one.

301 (2) **Time when**: the Ablative (§ 275):

Mancipia venibant Saturnalibus tertiis. Cic.

The slaves were sold on the third day of the Saturnalia.

(2) **Time when**: the Dative (§ 275):

οἱ ἐν Ἰθωμῇ τετάρτῳ ἔτει συνέβησαν. Thuc.

Those on Ithome came to terms in the fourth year.

302 With Numbers expressing "time after, before which," the Ordinal (§ 78) is preferred where we use the Cardinal:

Anno tricesimo altero post urbem conditam.

32 years after the founding of Rome.

(With **abhinc** either the Ablative or an Accusative of Duration may be used: *thirty days ago*, *abhinc diebus triginta* or *abhinc dies triginta*.)

τεσσαρακόστη ἡμέρα ὕστερον ἢ Ποτίδαα ἀπέστη. Thuc.

Forty days after Potidaea revolted.

(With οὗτος an Accusative of Duration may be used:

ἐξῆλθομεν τρίτον ἔτος τουτί.

DEM. (On τουτί see § 103.)

It is now three years since we went out.)

303 (3) **Time within which**: the Ablative:

Tribus horis Aduaticam venire potestis. Cic.

You can get to Aduatua within three hours.

So especially with negatives, "for":

Roscius Romam multis annis non venit. Cic.

Roscius has not been to Rome for many years.

(So of vaguer phrases, *nocte dieque*, *by night and day*. In all these, the Ablative, expressing any point within a space of time, must be distinguished

(3) **Time within which**: the Dative:

Ἑρμαῖ μία νυκτὶ οἱ πλείστοι περιέκοπσαν. Thuc.

Most of the Hermae were mutilated in one night.

Note.—The **Genitive** is also used for Time When and Time Within Which: *νυκτός*, *by night*; *τρὶς τοῦ ἐνιαύτου*, *thrice a year*; *δεκά ἡμερῶν*, *within ten days*.

(The Genitive of Time When expresses habitual action or indefinite time and has usually no epithet: *νυκτός εὖ καθεῖδεν*, *he slept well o' nights*; *ἐκείνη τῇ νυκτὶ εὖ καθεῖδεν*, *he slept*

carefully from the Accusative, *well on that night ; τὴν νυκτὰ εὖ*
 which expresses action lasting *καθεῦδεν, he slept well through-*
 throughout a space of time.) *out the night.)*

2. Place : *whither, whence, where.*

Place is usually expressed by a Case with a Preposition :

- 304 (1) **Place whither** : the (1) **Place whither** : the
 Accusative with *in* or *ad* : Accusative with *εἰς* or *πρός* :
 Caesar in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit. CAES. *Caesar hurried into Italy by forced marches.* Ἀθηναῖοι ἐβόηθον εἰς Μαραθῶνα. HDT. *The Athenians marched to Marathon.*
- 305 (2) **Place whence** : the (2) **Place whence** : the Genitive
 Ablative with *ab* or *ex* : Ablative with *ἀπό* or *ἐξ* :
 Ducite ab urbe domum, mea carmina, ducite Daphnim. VIRG. ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς φεύγει ἐκ Πελοποννήσου εἰς Κέρκυραν. THUC. *Themistocles flies from the Peloponnese to Corcyra.*
- 306 (3) **Place where** : the Ablative with *in* : (3) **Place where** : the Dative with *ἐν* :
 Castra sunt in Italia contra rempublicam collocata. CIC. Λεωτυχίδης ἡγήετο τῶν ἐν Μυκάλη Ἑλλήνων. THUC. *Leotyichides commanded the Greeks at Mycale.*
- 307 *Note.*—With the **names of towns and small islands, domus, foras, rus**, the Accusative (§ 225), Ablative (§ 259) and Locative (§ 257) are used without a Preposition. (The *Locative* = (a) Genitive, if First or Second Declension and Singular (§ 257); (b) Ablative, if Third Declension or Plural (§ 274). *Note.*—With a few words Place Whither may be expressed also by the suffix *-σε*, or *-δε*, Place Whence by the suffix *-θεν*, Place Where by the Locative Dative without a Preposition. Thus : *οἰκαδε, οἰκόνδε, homewards ; Ἀθήναζε (= Ἀθηνas- δε), to Athens ; ἄλλοσε, to another place. οἴκοθεν, from home ; Ἀθήνηθεν,*

Demaratus fugit Tarquinius Corintho. CIC.

Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth.

(a) Quid Romae faciam? JUV.
What am I to do at Rome?

(b) Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis. CIC.

Philippus is at Naples, Lentulus at Puteoli.

So domi, *at home*; militiae, *abroad*; humi, *on the ground*.

(Some words have either Locative or Ablative termination: Tibure or -i, Carthagine or -i, rure or -i.)

- 308 **Road by which**: the Ablative of the Instrument (see Remark, § 266):

Ibam forte Viâ Sacrâ. HOR.

I happened to be walking along the Sacred Way.

from Athens; ἄλλοθεν, from elsewhere.

Μαραθῶνι καὶ Σαλαμῖνι καὶ Πλαταίαις. PLAT.

At Marathon, and at Salamis, and at Plataea.

So οἶκοι, *at home*; Ἀθήγησι, *at Athens*; χάμαι, *on the ground*.

(-οι and -αι are the proper Locative terminations) (§ 274).

Note the Possessive Genitive in Οἰνὴ τῆς Ἀττικῆς (THUC.), *Oenoe in (of) Attica*. (A real Genitive of Place Where occurs in Poetry, § 579.)

Road by which: the Accusative, like space over (§ 309):

οἱ Πλαταιῆς ἐχώρουσιν τὴν εἰς Θήβας φέρουσαν ὁδόν. THUC.

The Plataeans went along the road which leads to Thebes.

3. Space, Distance, Measure.

- 309 (1) **Space over which**: the Accusative (§ 229):

Milia tum pransi tria repimus. HOR.

Then having lunched we crawl three miles.

- (1) **Space over which**: the Accusative (§ 229):

Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς, παρασάγγας εἰκοσιν. XEN.

Cyrus advances three stages, twenty parasangs.

- 310 (2) **Distance**: the Accusative (§ 229) (sometimes the Ablative, § 267):

Marathon' abest ab Athenis circiter milia passuum decem. NEP. (Or milibus passuum.) *Marathon is about ten miles from Athens.*

- (2) **Distance**: the Accusative, as with "Space over which" (§ 229):

ἀπέχει ἡ Πλάταια τῶν Θηβῶν σταδίους ἑβδομήκοντα. THUC.


Plataea is seventy stades from Thebes.

- 311 (3) **Measure**, height, breadth, etc. : the Accusative (§ 229) : (3) The expression of **Measure** is exceptional (§ 247) :

Erant muri Babylonis ducenos pedes alti. PLIN.

The walls of Babylon were each 200 feet high.

πυραμῖς λιθίνῃ τὸ ὕψος τριῶν πλέθρων. XEN. *A stone pyramid of three plethra, as to height.* (Gen. of Amount, and Acc. of Respect.)

( Instead of "to go to a person *at* a place," the usual idiom is "to go *to* a place to a person"; and so with motion from :

Ex suis unum Romam ad patrem mittit. LIV.

He despatches one of his friends to his father at Rome.)

ἀπέπλευσαν ἐς Φωκαίαν ὡς Ἀστυάχον. THUC.

They sailed to Astyochus at Phocaea.)

312 Case-Construction of the Commoner Verbs.

Two Accusatives.

Rogo, celo, doceo.

Genitive.

Memini, obliviscor, misereor, (piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret, Acc. and Gen.).

Genitive or Ablative.

Egeo, indigeo, potior.

Ablative.

Utor, fruor, vescor, fungor, dignor, careo (opus est mihi).

Dative.

Parco, pareo, placeo, ignosco, invideo, impero, credo, subvenio, succurro, suadeo, persuadeo, permitto, irascor, minor, faveo, nubo, insto, resisto,

Two Accusatives.

αἰτέω, κρίπτω, διδάσκω.

Genitive.

μιμνήσκω, μιμνήσκομαι, λανθάνομαι,

αἰσθάνομαι, πυνθάνομαι, (ἀκούω),

ἄπτομαι, γένομαι, ὄσφραϊνομαι,

ἐπιθυμέω, τυγχάνω, ἀμαρτάνω,

μετέχω, μεταδίδωμι, παίσομαι,

κατηγορέω, καταγινώσκω, καταφρονέω,

ὀλιγωρέω, ἐπιμέλομαι, ἀμελέω,

φείδομαι, ἀπορέω, δέομαι,

(δεῖ, μέλει, μεταμέλει, μοι).

Genitive or Dative.

βασιλεύω, ἄρχω, ἡγήομαι.

Dative.

χράομαι, ἀκολουθέω, ἔπομαι,

πιστεύω, πείθομαι, παρανέω,

(objicio), obviam eo, noceo,
prosum, desum, intersum,
(licet, libet, convenit).

(The Impersonals may also
take Acc. and Infin., § 381.)

ἀρέσκω, φθονέω, ἀπειλέω,
ἐπιτίθεμαι, ἐντυγχάνω, συγγιγ-
νώσκω,

βοηθέω, ἀμύνω, τιμωρέω,
(δοκεῖ, ἔξεστι, συμφέρει).

THE CONJUNCTIONS.

1. Copulative: *and*.

313 **Et** has four meanings: (1) *and*, (2) *both*, (3) *also*, (4) *even*.
-que*, (1) *and*, (2) *both*, must be attached to a word: *multaque*.

Atque, ac, and, is used especially in coupling two similar words: *Cura atque diligentia, care and diligence*.
(*Atque*, before vowels or consonants; *ac*, only before consonants.)

καί has four meanings: (1) *and*, (2) *both*, (3) *also*, (4) *even*.
τε*, (1) *and*, (2) *both*, is enclitic (§ 324): *πολλά τε*.

Note.—**καί** is often used in the sense of “namely,” “or rather”. *Note* *κἀγώ* = *καί ἐγώ*.

Distinguish, in questions: *πῶς καί*, asking for fresh information, and *καί πῶς*, *how, pray* ironical. On *εἰ καί, καί εἰ* see § 439.

314 When **several words are coupled**, *e.g., brothers, parents, children*, the following systems are used:

(a) *Fratres et parentes et liberi* (or in Poetry, *-que—que*).

(b) *Fratres, parentes, liberi*.

(c) *Fratres, parentes, liberi-que*.

(But *not* *Fratres, parentes et liberi*.)

(a) *ἀδελφοὶ καὶ τοκεῖς καὶ παῖδες* (or in Poetry, *τε—τε*).

(b) *ἀδελφοί, τοκεῖς, παῖδες* (“*asyndeton*,” no Copula).

(c) *ἀδελφοί, τοκεῖς, παῖδες τε*.

(But *not* *ἀδελφοί, τοκεῖς καὶ παῖδες*.)

315 The following **expressions for “both—and”** may be used:

(a) **Et—et**: the commonest, both for words and clauses.

(a) **καὶ—καί**: both for words and clauses.

(b) **-que—-que**: chiefly for words and in Poetry.

(c) **-que—et**: for words only (not in Cicero or Cæsar).

(d) **Et—-que**: for sentences.

(Also **cum—tum**, or **tum—tum**, “both—and”.)

(b) **τε—τε**: less common, chiefly Poetic.

(c) **τε—καί**: the commonest, both for words and clauses.

(But not **καί—τε**.)

(ἄλλως τε καί, *especially*: lit., “both otherwise and”.)

316 The following **combinations with the Negative** should be noticed:

And not, **neque** (or *neve*, § 334); but **et non** may be used to negative a particular word.

Neither—nor, **neque—neque**. The following are also possible: **et—neque, neque—que** (but not *que—neque*).

Note.—*Nec* and *neque* are used indifferently before Vowels and Consonants. They sometimes mean *not even*.

And not, **οὐδέ** (or *μηδέ*, § 334); but **καὶ οὐ** may be used to negative a particular word.

Neither—nor, **οὔτε—οὔτε**. The following are also possible: **τε—οὔτε, οὔτε—τε**.

Note.—**οὔτε** is not used alone, but with another **οὔτε** or with **τε**. **οὐδέ** is used alone; **οὐδέ** sometimes means *not even*.

2. Disjunctive: *or*.

317 **Aut**, or (*haud, not*): strong —of two opposed terms.

Vel, or (*volo, I wish*): weak.

So **aut—aut, vel—vel**, *either—or, whether—or*.

ἤ, or: both “*vel*” and “*aut*”. (Distinguish **ἤ, than**, and **ἤ = -ne, interrogative**.)

So **ἤ—ἤ, either—or, whether—or**.

318 Distinguish carefully the following, which may all be rendered equally by the English “**whether—or**”:

(1) *Disjunctive*: **aut servus aut liber; vel bonus vel optimus**.

(2) *Conditional*: **sive vult sive non vult**.

(3) *Interrogative*: **rogavi utrum fugisset an caesus esset**.

(1) *Disjunctive*: **ἢ δούλος ἢ εἰλεύθερος**.

(2) *Conditional*: **εἴτε βούλεται εἴτε καὶ μὴ**.

(3) *Interrogative*: **ἤρόμην πρότερον πεφεύγοι ἢ τεθνήκοι**.

3. Adversative: *but*.

- 319 **Sed**, *but*, especially after negatives: strong opposition. **ἀλλά**, *but*, especially after negatives: strong opposition.
- Autem, vero**, *but*, often almost “and” or “while”: **δέ***, *but*, often “and” or *N.B.* “while”. (As a stronger autem is the stronger of the two. So **at**, a weak *but*. alternate for **δέ**, **μέντοι** may be used.)

Thus: (1) “they did not kill the men, *but* enslaved them”; (2) “they killed the men, *but* (while) they enslaved the women”:

(1) *Viros non necaverunt, sed in servitutum redegerunt.*

(1) *τοὺς ἄνδρας οὐκ ἀπέκτειναν ἀλλὰ κατεδούλωσαν.*

(2) *Viros quidem necaverunt, feminas autem in servitutum redegerunt* (or both *quidem* and *autem* may be omitted).

(2) *τοὺς μὲν ἄνδρας ἀπέκτειναν, τὰς δὲ γυναῖκας κατεδούλωσαν. (Ὅρ τὰς μέντοι γυναῖκας κ.τ.λ.)*

- 320 Note also **sed enim**, *but* (stay) *for*; **immo vero**, or simply **immo**, *nay rather*; en *vero*, *but lo*; *nec vero*, *nor in truth*; **verum**, *but*, stronger than *vero* (*verum enim vero*, *but in truth*); *verum*, *verily*; *verum*, *granted that*; **quamquam**, **atque**, and **yet**; **tamen**, **attamen**, *nevertheless*.

ἀλλὰ γάρ, *but* (stay) *for*; **μὲν οὖν**, *nay rather*; **καὶ μὲν**, *and now, but lo* (e.g., introducing a fresh actor); **οὐ μὲν**, *but in truth not*; **ἀλλὰ μὲν**, *but in truth* (*enimvero*); **ἤ μὲν**, *verily* (of oaths); **καὶ δὴ**, *but granted that*; **καίτοι**, *and yet*; **ὁμως**, **ἀλλ' ὁμως**, **ὁμως δέ**, *nevertheless*.

Observe *non modo—sed etiam*, *not only—but also*.

Observe *οὐ μόνον—ἀλλὰ καί*, *not only—but also*.

Note.—Intensive Particles.

- 321 **Quidem**, *indeed*: often followed (e.g., § 319) by *autem*, when *quidem* means “on the one hand”. Notice *ne-quidem*, *not even*; *equidem* (*ego qui-* **μὲν***, *indeed, on the one hand*, must always be followed by **δέ** (see § 319), or by **μέντοι**, (except when *ἔπειτα* succeeds: see *infra*, § 325).

dem), *I, even I*; *siquidem*, *that is, if*.

Quippe, *forsooth*: notice *quippe qui* with Subjunctive, *seeing that he* (§ 468).

Nempe, *doubtless, you must know*: *nempe tu, you*.

Sane, *in truth, verily*: often in proverbs. Emphatic: *fortis sane, very strong*.

Vero, *indeed*: e.g., *tum vero, then indeed*.

Scilicet, *evidently, of course*: chiefly ironical.

Nimirum, *undoubtedly, I presume*.

Saltem, *at least, at any rate*.

Tandem, in questions, *pray*: e.g., *quid tandem? what, pray?*

γε*, *indeed, at least*: notice *ἔγωγε, I indeed*; *εἰ γε, that is, if*; *ὅς γε*, with Indicative (*Lat. quippe qui*), *seeing that he*. (§ 468).

τοι*, *forsooth*: emphatic, *σέ τοι, you*; often in Proverbs: e.g., *κιχάνει τοι βραδύς ὠκύν, the slow outstrip the swift*.

δή emphasises, *πολλάκις δή, very often*; or summarises, *τότε δή, then indeed*.

δήθεν*, *scilicet*: often ironical, *as was pretended*.

δήπου*, *nimirum*: *undoubtedly, I presume*.

γούν* (*γε οὖν*), *at least, at any rate*.

ποτε*, in questions, *pray*: *τί ποτε; what in the world?*

4. Causal: *for*.

322 **Nam, ἰενim*, namque, et-enim, for**.

γάρ*, *for*. Sometimes *καὶ γάρ, etenim, namque*.

These are often used in questions and wishes, and where in English we express no conjunction at all: e.g.,

Oderant virum. Saepe enim injuste egerat.

τεκμήριον δέ. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἦλθον κ.τ.λ.

They hated the man: he had often acted unjustly.

The following is a proof of this. When they came, etc.

5. Conclusive: *therefore*.

323 **Igitur, ergo, therefore**; *accordingly*, as in English. Often

οὖν*, *οὐκοῦν, therefore* (but *οὐκ οὖν—; therefore—not?*).

in questions, *so, then*; sometimes ironical, *it seems*.

Proinde, *therefore, then*: especially in commands.

Itaque, *and so*.

ἄρα *, *so, then, it seems* (distinguish in questions *ἄρα, -ne*).

δήτα *, **νυν** *, **τοίνυν** *, *then*: often in commands.

ὥστε (*ὡς τε, itaque*), *and so*.

(Distinguish “therefore” in connexion with Sub-Clauses: *e.g.*, “Because we are rich, we are not therefore happy”:

Non quia divites sumus, ideo sumus felices.)

οὐχ ὅτι πλούσιοί ἐσμεν, διὰ τοῦτο εὐδαιμονοῦμεν.)

Position of Conjunctions.

324 The words marked *, *autem, vero, enim*, come second in a sentence; *tamen, ergo, igitur*, first or second.

-que, quidem, come after the word, or the first word of the Clause, they refer to.

The rest come first, before the word or Clause. Thus:

Et urbes et homines cepit.

He captured both cities and men.

Et urbes cepit et homines occidit.

He both took cities and slew men.

The words marked *, **μέν**, **δέ**, **γάρ**, **οἶν**, **μέντοι**, **ἄρα**, **τοίνυν**, **νυν** come second; those without an accent being enclitic (§ 125).

τε, **γε**, **γοῖν** come after the word, or the first word of the Clause they refer to.

The rest come first.

⚡ Note that the Conjunctions which come second even separate the Article from its Substantive: *e.g.*, **ὁ τε ἀνὴρ καὶ ἡ γυνή**, *both the man and the woman*, not **ὁ ἀνὴρ τε**.

(The above Conjunctions are all Coordinate, *viz.*, they must couple two *similar* things—two Nouns in the same Case, two Verbs in the same Mood, two parallel Clauses, etc.; for Subordinate Conjunctions see the Compound Sentence: the commonest are

ut, quod, quum, quia, ubi, quando, dum, priusquam, si, ne.

ὡς, **ὅτι**, **ἵνα**, **ὥστε**, **ὅπως**, **ὅτε**, **ἐπεί**, **ἐπειδὴ**, **πρὶν**, **ἕως**, **εἰ**, **μή**.)

325 *Remark.*—**Different Conjunctions** should, for clearness, be used for larger Clauses and for the small Clauses or the words inside them: *e.g.*,

Et naves habent plurimas et scientia atque usu nauticarum rerum reliquos antecedunt. CAES.

Asyndeton (the omission of a Conjunction) is frequent in (a) official phrases: Cn. Pompeio, M. Crasso consulibus; (b) antithesis: probare vera, falsa denegare; (c) quick narrative: abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit; (d) where a word is repeated: omnia providi, omnia paravi.

ἐπόρθουν μὲν τὴν ἤπειρον, ὕβριζον δὲ τὰς νήσους, ἐλυμαίνοντο δὲ τὴν Πελοπόννησον καὶ μεστὴν στάσεων ἐποίησαν. ISOCHR.

Asyndeton occurs in Greek with words (*e.g.*, ἀδελφοί, § 314); with Clauses it is very rare, being almost confined to οὕτως, resumptive of a previous Sentence, and to ἔπειτα in the idiom πρῶτον μὲν—ἔπειτα (which is rather commoner than ἔπειτα δέ). When in doubt, use δέ.

Interjections.

326 Interjections are Exclamatory Particles, used to draw attention or express feeling. The commonest are:

O, O; heu, eheu, alas; heus, heia, ho; en, ecce, behold. ὦ, O; φεῦ, οἴμοι, alas; εἰ, εἴθε, O that; ἦν, behold.

Interjections do not, as a rule, affect the construction of a Sentence; but there are some exceptions:

Hei mihi, woe is me; vae oἴμοι τῆς τύχης, alas for my victis, alas for the conquered fate (§ 256).
(Dat.) νῆ Δία, yes by Zeus (ναί, yes); μὰ Δία, no by Zeus (μή).

Note also, proh Jupiter (Nom. or Voc.), in Jove's name;

mehercle, *by Hercules* (= me Hercules juvet, *may Hercules help me*).

(Observe, *heia age, come now!* The Sing. may be retained even with a Plural Vocative.)

Note δ in crasis: *e.g.*, $\delta\upsilon\nu\theta\rho\omega\pi\epsilon$, *i.e.*, $\delta\ \acute{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\omega\pi\epsilon$.

(Observe $\epsilon\iota\ \delta'$ $\acute{\alpha}\gamma\epsilon$, *come now!* *heia age.* $\epsilon\iota$ is here an exclamation, from which $\epsilon\iota$, *if*, was afterwards derived.)

Adverbs.

327 Adverbs, as a rule, qualify only Adjectives and Verbs: see Introduction.

(A few instances of Adverbs with Substantives occur, chiefly in Poetry: *omnes circa populi* (Liv.), *all people round*; *paene insula* (Cat.), *a peninsula*; *iste post phaselus* (Cat.), *that which was afterwards a yacht*.)

But, with the aid of the Article, they may qualify Substantives, or become Substantives themselves (§§ 88, 89):

$\omicron\iota\ \pi\acute{\alpha}\lambda\alpha\iota$, *the men of old*.

$\eta\ \pi\rho\iota\nu\ \epsilon\upsilon\tau\upsilon\chi\acute{\iota}\alpha$, *our former good fortune*.

PART III.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

328 The Simple Sentence expresses one plain thought. It is of three kinds: (1) Direct Statement; (2) Direct Command, Exhortation and Wish; (3) Direct Question. Also Exclamation.

329

1. Direct Statement.

The Verb in Direct Statement is usually in the Indicative Mood:

Romulus spolia opima tulit.
Romulus won the spoils of honour.

Λεωνίδας ἐν Θερμοπύλαις ἀπέθανεν. *Leonidas died at Thermopylae.*

Sometimes Potential Subjunctive: *Dicat aliquis, someone might say* (§ 218).

Note also λέγομι' ἄν, *I will say*; εἶποι τις ἄν, *someone might say* (§ 218).

330

2. Direct Command, Exhortation, Wish.

(a) Command.

Second Person:

Positive: the Imperative:

I, sequere Italiam. VIRG.
Go, seek Italy.

Negative: (1) *ne* with Imperative, poetic:

Equo ne credite, Teucri. VIRG.
Do not trust the horse, ye Trojans.

(2) *ne* with Perfect Subjunctive; in Prose and Poetry, but common in neither:

(a) Command.

Second and Third Persons:

Positive: the Imperative:

γνώθι σεαυτόν. ORACLE.
Know thyself.

Negative: (1) *μή* with the Present Imperative, of a general command: e.g., *μὴ κλέπτε, do not ever steal* (as in the Commandments).

(2) *μή* with the Aorist Subjunctive, of a particular com-

Ne feceris quod dubitas. PLIN.
Do not do anything about which
you are in doubt.

☞ (3) *Noli* with the Infinitive: the regular idiom in Prose:

Nolite id velle quod fieri non potest. CIC.

Do not wish what cannot be.

Third or First Person:
Present Subjunctive, whether
Positive or Negative (Neg., *ne*):

Aut bibat aut abeat. CIC.

Either let him drink or go away.

331 (b) **Exhortation:** the First Person Subjunctive (usually Plural), (Negative, *ne*):

Sed moriamur, ait. VIRG.

But let me die, she said.

332 (c) **Wishes:** the Subjunctive. Negative *ne*: Particles *utinam, si, o si, si modo*:

(1) *Future* time, Present Subjunctive:

O mihi praeteritos referat si Jupiter annos. VIRG. Oh, if Jupiter would restore past years to me!

(2) *Present* time, Imperfect Subjunctive:

Utinam populus Romanus unam cervicem haberet. SUET.

Would that the Roman people had but one neck.

(3) *Past* time, Pluperfect Subjunctive:

mand: e.g., μή κλέψῃς τούτο, do not steal this.

ὄν μήτ' ὀκνεῖτε μήτ' ἀφήτ' ἔπος κακόν. SOPH.

Do not keep shrinking from him; utter no single evil word.

So with the Third Person:
Positive: ἀπελθέτω, let him go away (not ἀπέλθῃ).

Negative: (1) μή ἀπερχέσθω, let him never go away.

(2) μή ἀπέλθῃ, let him not go away now.

(b) **First Person—Exhortation:** Subjunctive (usually Plural), (Neg., *μή*):

ἀλλ', εἰ δοκεῖ, πλέωμεν. SOPH.

But let us sail, if it be thy will.

(c) **Wishes:** Optative, possible; Indicative, unfulfilled. Neg. *μή*: Particles εἴθε, εἰ γάρ, εἰ.

(1) *Future* time, Optative:

ὦ παῖ, γένοιο πατρός εὐτυχέστερος. SOPH.

My son, mayest thou be more fortunate than thy father.

(2) *Present* time, Imperfect Indicative:

εἴθ' εἶχες, ὦ τεκοῦσα, βελτίους φρένας.

Would, my mother, that thou hadst a better mind.

(3) *Past* time, Aorist Indicative:

O utinam primis arsis ignibus infans. Ov.

Would thou hadst been burnt with early fires in infancy.

(With any of these, the Particle, though commonly inserted, may be omitted.)

- 333 *Note*.—Sometimes, where we should use “have” in English, the Perfect Subjunctive may be used to express a wish: *e.g.*,

Hac Trojana tenus fuerit fortuna secuta. VIRG.

Let the fortune of Troy have followed us thus far.

- 334 In Jussive Sentences “never” must be **ne unquam** (not nunquam); “nor,” **neve** or **neu** (not neque):

Ne unquam peccet neve erret!

Let him never sin nor err.

(For other ways for expressing Commands and Wishes see § 588.)

335

Indicative.

A Direct Question may be introduced either by an Interrogative Pronoun, “who,” “whence,” “where,” etc., or by an Interrogative Particle. But the latter is sometimes omitted.

By **Pronouns**: quis, unde, quando (not quum), etc.:

O rus, quando te aspiciam?

Hor.

O country, when shall I see thee?

εἶθε σοι, ὦ Περικλεῖς, τότε συγγεγόμεν. Xen. *Would, Pericles, that I had met you then.*

(With the Optative, a Particle may or may not be used; with the Indicative, a Particle is necessary.)

Note 1.—ὄφελον, μὴ ὄφελον with the Present or Aorist Infinitive may express an unfulfilled wish in Present or Past time respectively. So also εἶθ' ὄφελον:

εἶθ' ὄφελ' Ἄργους μὴ διαπτάσθαι σκάφος. Eur. *Would that the hull of the Argo never had sped through.*

In Jussive Sentences use **μηδέποτε**, *never* (not οὐδέποτε); **μηδέ**, *nor* (not οὐδέ):

μηδέποτε ἀμαρτανέτω μηδ' ἀδικείτω.

Let him never sin or do wrong.

3. Direct Question:

Indicative (Negative οὐ).

By **Pronouns**: τίς, πόθεν, πότε, etc. (see § 136):

πούδ' ἐστὶ Τεῦκρος, καπὶ τῷ λέγει τάδε; Soph. *Where is Teucer, and why does he say this?*

(Distinguish *quis, quid*, Subs., and *qui, quod*, Adj. (§ 137):

Quis hoc fecit? *Who did this?*
 Qui homo hoc fecit? *What man did this?*

Sometimes two Pronouns are combined:

πῶς ἐκ τίνος νέως ἦκατε; EUR.
How and from what ship came ye?

336 By **Particles**:

(a) Open: **-ne**, attached to the first word:

Comitemne sororem sprevisti moriens? VIRG. *Didst thou despise thy sister for comrade in thy death?*

(b) Desiring the answer "yes": **nonne**:

Canis nonne similis lupo est? CIC.
A dog is like a wolf, is it not?

(c) Desiring the answer "no": **num**:

Num barbarorum Romulus rex fuit? CIC. *Romulus was not a king of barbarians, was he?*

(d) Alternative: **utrum—an** (-ne—an):

Utrum tu mas an femina es? PLAUT.
Art thou man or woman?

("Or not" is *annon*.)

Obs.—*ne* and *utrum* are sometimes omitted.

337 Note.—**Deliberative Questions**: the Subjunctive:

Quid faciam? roger, anne rogem? OV.
What am I to do? be asked, or ask?

By **Particles**:

(a) Open: **ἄρα** (or **ἦ**):

ἄρ' οἴσθ' ἀφ' ὧν εἶ; SOPH.
Dost thou know those from whom thou art sprung?

(Distinguish *ἄρα*, then, § 323.)

(b) Desiring the answer "yes": **ἄρ' οὐ** (or **οὐκουν**):

ἄρ' οὐχὶ μωρόν ἐστι τοῦ γχείρημά σου; SOPH. *Thine enterprise is foolish, is it not?*

(c) Desiring the answer "no": **ἄρα μή** (or **μὴν = μή οὐν**):

ἄρα μή τέθνηκεν ὁ βασιλεύς; *Surely the king is not dead, is he?*

(d) Alternative: **πότερον** or **πότερα—ἦ** (*ἄρα—ἦ*):

πότερα δικαστήν ἢ δικήφορον λέγεις; AESCH. *Is it judge or avenger thou dost mean?*

("Or not" is *ἦ οὐ*.)

Obs.—*ἄρα* and *πότερον* are sometimes omitted.

Note.—**Deliberative Questions**: Subjunctive (Neg. *μή*):

εἴπωμεν, ἢ σιωῶμεν, ἢ τί δράσομεν; EUR.
Are we to speak or keep silent, or what shall we do?

(The Imperfect Subjunctive (Sometimes *βούλει* or *θέλεις* is used of a Past Deliberative: are prefixed: *βούλεσθ' ἐπεισπέσωμεν*; AR. *Are we to attack?* (do you wish us to?))

Quid faceret? VIRG. *What was he to do?*

338

Exclamation.

An Exclamation shares, in a way, the nature of all three of the above—Statement, Wish, Question; but most commonly it resembles the last, being often introduced by Interrogative Pronouns:

Hei mihi, qualis erat! quantum mutatus ab illo Hectore! VIRG. *Ah me, what form he bore! how changed from that Hector of old!*

'Ατρείδη, ποῖόν σε ἔπος φύγεν ἕρκος ὀδόντων. HOM. *Son of Atreus, what word hath escaped the barrier of thy teeth!*

(Sometimes *ut, how, is used.* (Sometimes Relatives are used, *cf.* § 469:

Ut vidi, ut perii! VIRG. *When I saw, how was I undone!*

οἶά μ' ἔοργας, what hast thou done to me! ὡς ἐμάνην, how mad I was!)

On the absolute use of the Nominative, Vocative and Accusative in Exclamations see § 238. The Accusative sometimes has a contemptuous force.

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

339 The Compound Sentence consists of a Principal Sentence, and one or more Subordinate Clauses (see § 2).

Subordinate Clauses are divided into three classes: (1) *Substantival*, (2) *Adverbial*, (3) *Adjectival*, according as they stand to the Principal Sentence in the relation of a Substantive, an Adjective, or an Adverb (§ 34).

1. Substantival Clauses (§ 31).

340 (a) *Indirect Statement*; (b) *Indirect Command, Exhortation, and Wish*; (c) *Indirect Question*.

2. Adverbial Clauses (§ 32).

341. (a) *Final* ("in order that"); (b) *Consecutive* ("so that"); (c) *Conditional* ("if"); and, which are to some extent developments of these, (d) *Concessive* ("although," "even if"), (e) *Comparative* ("as," "as if," "than"); (f) *Causal* ("because," "since"); (g) *Temporal* ("when," "while," "until"), and (h) *Local* ("where," etc.).

3. Adjectival Clauses (§ 33)

- 342 are *Relative Clauses*, being introduced by a Relative Pronoun, "who," "which," "such as," "whoever," etc.

Sequence.

- 343 The Subordinate Clause may be pitched in one of two Keys, according as a thing is regarded in the Principal Sentence from the point of view of (1) Present time, *e.g.*, "he comes," or of (2) Past time, "he came". The first of these points of view is called *Primary*, as being the "first" or most natural way of regarding a thing; the second is called *Secondary* or *Historic*, as being the "next" or less obvious way of looking at it, the point of view of a narrative or history. Thus we say "he comes that he *may* see," but "he came that he *might* see"; "he asks what *is* truth," but "he asked what *was* truth".

This alteration of the Subordinate Clause to suit the Main Sentence is called *Sequence*: and the law of Sequence is that Primary should be "followed" (sequor) by Primary, Historic by Historic.

<p>In Latin, Sequence is of Tenses, and means that Primary Tenses of the Indicative must be followed by Primary Tenses of the Subjunctive, Historic Tenses of the Indicative by Historic Tenses of the Subjunctive.</p>	<p>In Greek, Sequence is of <i>Moods</i>, and means that Primary Tenses of the Indicative must be followed by the Primary Mood, the Subjunctive (or Indicative); Historic by the Historic Mood, the Optative.</p>
---	---

344 In the **Indicative** the Tenses are :

(1) *Primary* : Present, Future, Perfect proper, Future-Perfect.

(2) *Historic* : Imperfect, Aoristic Perfect, Pluperfect.

These are followed in the **Subjunctive** by

(1) *Primary* : Present, Perfect.

(2) *Historic* : Imperfect, Pluperfect.

The Clauses to which the Law of Sequence applies are mainly of three kinds : 1. Final Clauses ; 2. Consecutive Clauses ; 3. Indirect Questions.

Thus, in Final Clauses :

Adest ut videat, *he is here that he may see* (Primary).

Aderat ut videret, *he was here that he might see* (Historic).

So in Indirect Questions :

Rogo quid feceris, *I ask what you did* (Primary), etc.

345 *Note 1.*—The **Imperative** takes Primary Sequence. So too the **Present Subjunctive** of Wishes and Exhortations.

Note 2.—The **Historic Present** and **Perfect with "have"** take either Sequence. The **Perfect Subjunctive** in Main

In the **Indicative** the Tenses are :

(1) *Primary* : Present, Future, Perfect, Future-Perfect.

(2) *Historic* : Imperfect, Aorist, Pluperfect.

The Sequence of Mood is of three kinds :

(1) *Primary* : 1. *Final* *iva*, etc., Subjunctive ; 2. *Indefinite Relative*, etc., *av* with Subjunctive ; 3. *Indirect Speech and Question*, Indicative.

(2) *Historic* : 1. *Final* *iva*, etc., Optative ; 2. *Indefinite Relative*, etc., Optative ; 3. *Indirect Speech and Question*, Optative. *Viz.*, Optative in all.

Thus, in Final Clauses :

πάρεστω *iva* *ιδη*, *he is here that he may see* (Primary).

παρηῆν *iva* *ιδου*, *he was here that he might see* (Historic).

So with the Indefinite Relative and with Indirect Speech with *οὔτι*.

Note 1.—The **Imperative** and **Subjunctive** take Primary Sequence ; but the **Optative** of Wishes, or the Potential Optative with *av*, generally take (1) an Optative by attraction in Indefinite Clauses, (2) Primary Sequence in Final

Sentences is Primary, in Dependent Clauses either Primary or Historic.

(Cicero prefers Historic Sequence after the Perfect "with have".)

- 346 *Obs.*—In Final Clauses Sequence presents no difficulty. In Consecutive Clauses and in Indirect Questions a difficulty sometimes occurs which may be turned by the use of the **Perfect Indicative or Subjunctive**, though sometimes the idea of continuous action is hereby lost:

(1) Vivum adeo timui ut horrescam vel mortuum. *I used to fear him so much in his life, that I tremble at him even when he is dead.*

(We really say here "I have feared him". Note that timebam would violate the Sequence.)

(2) Rogo quid feceris.
I ask what you were doing.

(Note that the Latin could also mean "I ask what you did" or "have done".)

- 347 In both cases the continuous action may be retained by the insertion of a Perfect Subjunctive, as a sort of Junction at which one may change from the one Sequence to the other:

Clauses and Indirect Speech or Question.

Note 2.—The **Historic Present** is usually regarded as a Historic Tense, the **Gnomic Aorist** as a Primary Tense.

Obs.—**Vivid Sequence.** In all three kinds, however, Primary Sequence may, for the sake of vividness, follow also a Historic Tense:

παρῆν ἵνα ἴδοι (Historic); παρῆν ἵνα ἴδῃ (Vivid). *He was present, that he might see.*

ἠρώτησα ὅ τι ποιούης (Historic); ἠρώτησα ὅ τι ποιεῖς (Vivid). *I asked what you were doing.*

In *Indirect Speech and Question* the Vivid Sequence is not merely possible but necessary (1) in any clause (a) with the Past Indicative and ἄν (to avoid confusion with the Optative with ἄν), and (b) with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative (as these tenses have no proper Optative); (2) in sub-clauses, with the Aorist Indicative (as the Optative here would represent ἄν with the Subjunctive).

Thus:

(1) (a) ἠρώτησα ὅ τι ἐποίησας ἄν. *I asked what you would have done (ποίησας ἄν would mean, what you would do).*

the Perfect Subjunctive in sub-clauses being both Primary and Historic (§ 345):

(1) Adeo timebam ut facere non potuerim quin horrescam.

I used to fear him so much that I could not help trembling.

(2) Rogo quid fuerit quod faceres. *I ask what it was that you were doing.*

(b) ἠρώτησα ὅ τι ἐποίεις. *I asked what you had been doing (ποιοῖς would represent a Present: "what you were doing").*

(2) ἠρώτησα εἰ ὅπερ ἐποίησας ἐσφάλῃ. *I asked if what you had done had failed (ποιήσεως would here represent ὅπερ ἂν ποιήσης, Indefinite).*

On the Tenses of the Infinitive and Participle see § 216.

SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

348

1. Indirect Statement.

One construction only: Accusative and Infinitive (*cf.*, "I assert this to be true"):

Democritus dicit innumerabiles esse mundos. Cic.

Democritus says that there are countless worlds.

Note 1.—**Nego** is used for "I say that—not" (*not dico non*):

Negat esse deos.

He says there are no gods.

349 Note 2.—**Spero, promitto, minor** usually take the Future Infinitive:

Sperabam id me assecuturum. Cic.

I was hoping to attain this.

350 Note 3.—*Esse* is very often omitted with the Future Infinitive Active (see last instance), and not infrequently with the

Three constructions are possible:

(a) **Accusative and Infinitive** with Verbs of *saying* and *thinking* (Negative οὐ):

λέγεται Ἀλκιβιάδην Περικλεῖ διαλεχθῆναι περὶ νόμων. XEN.

It is said that Alcibiades conversed with Pericles about the laws.

Note 1.—"I say that—not" is οὐ φημι (*nego*), not φημι οὐ.

Note 2.—ἐλπίζω, ὑπισχνέομαι, ὄμνυμι, ἀπειλέω usually take the Future Infinitive (Negative μή). (These do not take ὅτι, § 353.)

ᾧμοσαν μὴ εἰς Φωκαίαν ἕξεν. HDT. *They swore not to go to Phocaea.*

(b) The **Participle** is used instead of the Infinitive (§ 198) with Verbs of *perception*—physical or mental (Neg. οὐ):

Past Participle Passive or Dependent (see § 198):

Boiotum crasso jurares aëre natum. HOR.

You would avow him born in the thick air of Boeotia.

(The Verb of Speaking may in such cases be regarded as a Factitive Verb (§ 235).)

351 *Obs.*—**Se** must be used for the Third Person, Masculine or Feminine, Singular or Plural, when the Subject of the Infinitive is the Subject also of the Main Verb (§ 114):

Pollicebatur pecuniam se esse redditurum. CIC.

He promised that he would return the money.

Both this and the other Personal Pronouns are usually expressed: Simulo me furere, *I pretend to be mad.* (So *me assecuturum, sup.*)

352 In the Passive, with such phrases as “it is said that,” “it seems that,” a Personal Construction is usually preferred:

Hannibal ad urbem contendere dicebatur.

It was said that Hannibal was marching on the city.

(Not, *dicebatur Hannibalem.* See § 155, Personal Construction.)

δράω, ἀκούω*; εὐρίσκω; αἰσθάνομαι*, πυνθάνομαι*; μαθάνω, γινώσκω; οἶδα, ἐπίσταμαι; μέμνημαι*, λανθάνομαι; also δεικνυμι, ἀγγέλλω. (* These usually take a Genitive.)

οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐκ ᾔδεσαν Κῦρον τεθνηκότα. XEN. *The Greeks did not know that Cyrus was dead.*

Obs.—**Nominative Attraction.** If the Subject of the Infinitive or Participle is the same as the Subject of the Main Verb, the Nominative is used (§ 179). The Subject itself (1) if unemphatic, is omitted; (2) if emphatic, is expressed by αὐτός—all three Persons:

(1) ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ἔφασκεν εἶναι Διὸς υἱός. *Alexander used to say that he was the son of Zeus.*

(2) οὐκ ἔφη αὐτὸς ἀλλ' ἐκείνον στρατηγεῖν. THUC. *He said that not he but the other was general.*

With σύνοιδα ἐμαντῶ, *I am conscious with myself*, the Participle may be either Nominative or Dative:

σύνοιδα ἐμαντῶ οὐδὲν ἐπίσταμένῳ (or ἐπιστάμενος). PLAT.

I am conscious that I know nothing.

(On the Personal construction with φανερός and δηλός see § 198.)

353 (The phrase "Indirect Statement" refers not merely to Verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, but also to such phrases as "he did not know that," "I feel certain that," and Impersonal phrases such as "it is agreed that," constat inter omnes: all of which are constructed with the Accusative and Infinitive.

On the use of *quod* with the Indicative, and *ut* with the Subjunctive in certain Clauses expressing "fact," see § 377.)

354 *Remark.*—The *Tenses* of the Infinitive are Past, Present, or Future, not in themselves, but in relation to the Main Verb; in other words, the Tense of the speaker must be retained:

He said that we were doing wrong,
dixit nos peccare.

He said that we had done wrong,
dixit nos peccavisse.

He said that we should do wrong,
dixit nos peccaturos esse.

(ο) ὅτι or ὡς (1) with the **Indicative**, if Primary; (2) with the **Optative** (or Vivid Indicative), if Historic (§ 344) (Negative οὐ):

(1) λέγει ὡς οὐδέν ἐστιν ἀδικώτερον φήμης. ÆSCHIN. *He says that nothing is more unjust than rumour* (Primary).

(2) ἔγνωσαν ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἶη. XEN.

They realised that their fear was groundless (Historic).

φανερῶς εἶπον ὅτι ἡ πόλις τετείχισται ἤδη. THUC. *He said openly that the city had been already fortified* (Vivid).

Obs.—This construction applies both to Infinitive Verbs and, though less so, to those with the Participle. But φημί takes only the Infinitive; εἶπον only ὅτι or ὡς.

☞ With all these, the Infinitive, Participle, and ὅτι, the Tense of the Speaker must be kept. (On Tenses of the Infinitive and Participle see § 216.)

355 **2. Indirect Command, Exhortation, Wish.**

Ut or *ne* and Subjunctive,
(1) Present, (2) Imperfect,
§ 344; e.g., after **impero** *,
persuadeo *, **hortor**, **oro**, **rogo**,

The Infinitive: Negative μή
(Tense, Present or Aorist,
§ 214); e.g., **κελεύω**, **αἰτέω**, **παρ-
αινέω** *, **παρακελεύομαι** *, **πειθω**,

moneo. (* These take a Dative.)

(1) Rogat eos atque orat ne oppugnet filium suum. CIC.

He begs and entreats them not to attack his son (Primary).

(2) Caesar imperavit suis ut pontem interscinderent. CAES.

Caesar ordered his men to cut down the bridge (Historic).

(This construction follows the law of Final Clauses, § 384.)

Here, as in Direct Command, and not must be **neve** or **neu** (§ 334).

356 *Obs.* 1.—**Jubeo** and **velo** take Accusative and Infinitive :

Caesar Helvetios suum adventum expectare jussit. CAES. *Caesar told the Helvetians to wait his arrival.*

Obs. 2.—“ I order—not ” must be **veto** or **impero ne**, not **jubeo non**.

357 Verbs of *wishing* usually take a Plain Prolate Infinitive ; also Accusative and Infinitive, or Plain Subjunctive : *e.g.*,

Velim rescribas. CIC. (Without *ut*.) *I wish you would answer.*

358 (Some Verbs of *speaking*, *e.g.*, **nuntio**, may introduce a Command, with *ut* or *ne* and the Subjunctive ; but **dico**, *I tell*, is rarely so used. Thus, “ Caesar told them to wait ” : use **jussit**, § 356.)

etc. (* These, and Verbs of *speaking* implying to *Command*, take a Dative) :

ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ὀπλίτας μένειν ἐν τάξει. XEN.

He told the hoplites to remain in their ranks (Present, Continuous).

Μοίρας ἔπεισας ἀφθίτους θεῖναι βρότους. AESCH.

You persuaded the Fates to make men immortal (Aorist, mere act).

(Note that **κελεύω**, **πείθω** take an Accusative.)

The Compound Negatives must be **μηδέποτε**, **μηδαμοῦ**, etc., § 344.

Obs. 1.—ὅπως with Future Indicative is sometimes used (*cf.* § 385).

Obs. 2.—Verbs of Forbidding, *e.g.*, **ἀπαγορεύω**, often take **μή** with Infinitive (§ 510). Note also **οὐκ ἔω σε μένειν**, *I forbid you to stay.*

θέλεις εἰκάθω ; SOPH. *Do you want me to yield ?* (See § 387.)

(Any Verb of *speaking* may introduce a Command. The Object is then Dative, the Negative **μή** :

εἶπον τῷ Πausανίᾳ τοῦ κήρυκος μὴ λείπεσθαι. THUC. *They told Pausanias not to leave the herald.*)

359 Several Verbs in English *e.g.*, “I warn,” “I persuade,” “I tell,” can introduce either an Indirect Statement or an Indirect Command, and will take their construction accordingly. The two uses can be distinguished by finding the words of the speaker: *e.g.*, “I warned him to go”—original word “go!”; “I warned him there was danger”—original words “there is danger”.

360

3. Indirect Questions.

These include not merely such Sentences as “I ask whether he has come,” but also such Sentences as “I do not know whether he has come,” “I will tell you whether he has come”: in all equally, a direct form, “Has he come?” is implied.

Mood and Tense. The Subjunctive: Tense according to Sequence: *viz.*, (1) Primary, Present or Perfect; (2) Historic, Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Pronouns and Particles. As in Direct Questions. But “I ask if” is not *rogo si*, but *rogo*—*ne*, or *rogo num* (*num* does not here expect the answer “no”); “or not” is usually *necne*, not *annon*.

(1) *Videndum est quando et cui et quemadmodum et quare demus.*
CIC.

We must consider the occasion, the recipient, the manner, the object of our gifts.

(2) *Epaminondas quaesivit num salvus esset clypeus.*

Epaminondas enquired if his shield was safe.

Mood and Tense. As in Indirect Statement with *ὄτι*: *viz.*, (1) Primary, Indicative; (2) Historic, Optative or Vivid Indicative.

Pronouns and Particles. As in Direct Questions. But the Indirect forms, *ὅστις*, *ὅπου*, may be also used; “I ask if” is not *ἔρωτῶ ἄρα*, but *ἔρωτῶ εἰ*; *if not* is either *εἰ—οὐ* or *εἰ μή*; or *not*, either *ἢ οὐ* or *ἢ μή*.

(1) *ἵστε ὅπῃθεν ὁ ἥλιος ἀνίσχει καὶ ὅποι δύνεται.* XEN.

Ye know whence the sun rises and whither he goeth down.

(See also under Interrogative Pronouns, § 137.)

(2) *διηρώτα τὸν Κῦρον πότῃρα βούλοιο μένειν ἢ ἀπιέναι.* XEN.

She asked Cyrus whether he wished to stay or go (Historic).

Note.—For Future Time, use the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem* :

Fac me certiolem quando ad-futurus sis. CIC. *Let me know when you will be here.*

ἠπόρουν τί ποτε λέγει ὁ θεός. PLAT. *I was in doubt as to what the god meant (Vivid).*

(Here also the Tense of Direct Question must be kept, § 354.)

361 Such Sentences as “He described the size and character of the island” may often be rendered as Indirect Questions: “He said how great the island was, and of what sort”.

362 (Observe **nescio an**, *I almost think that*, lit. “I do not know whether” :

Nescio an noris hominem. PLIN. *I do not know if you know the man* (§ 383.)

(An echoed Question becomes Indirect and uses Indirect Particles (§ 136) :

Σὺ δ' εἰ τις ἀνδρῶν; Ὅστις εἶμ' ἐγώ; Μέτων. AR. *Who on earth are you? Who am I? Meton.*

363 **Indirect Deliberative.**

Subjunctive : (1) Primary, Present; (2) Historic, Imperfect :

(1) *De pueris quid agam, non habeo.* CIC.

What to do about the children, I do not know.

(2) *Non satis Bruto vel tribunis militum constabat quid agerent.* CAES.

Brutus and the military tribunes were uncertain what to do.

(Sense alone distinguishes these from plain Indirect Questions.)

Indirect Deliberative.

(1) Primary, *Subjunctive* ; (2) Historic, *Optative* (or Vivid Subjunctive, § 346).

(1) *οὐκ ἔχω ὅπως σοι εἶπω ἃ νοῶ.* PLAT.

I do not know how to tell you what I think.

(2) *ἐπήροντο τὸν θεόν εἰ παραδοῖεν τὴν πόλιν.* THUC.

They asked the god if they should give up the city (Historic).

ἠπόρῃσαν ὅπη καθορμίσωνται. THUC.

They were in doubt where to put in (Vivid).

(Such Sentences as “He had nowhere to turn” are Indirect Deliberative Questions: “He did not know where he was to turn”. See the first instance above.)

364

Note.—Subordinate Clauses.

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Speech, Command, and Question, are in the **Subjunctive** (see § 474):

Ais, quoniam sit natura mortalis, immortalē etiam esse oportere. CIC.

You say that, since there is a mortal nature, there must also be an immortal one.

(On Indirect Speech, Command and Question, and the Sub-Clauses in these, see further *Continuous Or. Obl.*, § 479.)

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Speech, Command, and Question, follow the rules given for ὄτι (§ 353): *viz.*, Primary, Indicative; Historic, Optative or Vivid Indicative.

But in Subordinate Clauses **the Indicative** must always be retained with **Historic Tenses**. (Both with the Indicative and Optative the Tense of the speaker must be here also retained.) §§ 346-7.

365

Substantival Clauses (*continued*).

The following are akin to the above Substantival Clauses, especially to Indirect Statement and Command. In construction they vary between a Prolate Infinitive and the construction of a Final or Consecutive Clause.

1. *Effect, cause, compel.*

Impello, facio, efficio, ago: *ut or ut non* with Subj. (§ 388).

Sol efficit ut omnia floreat. CIC. *The sun makes all nature to flourish.*

366 Observe “*id agere ut,*” to do one’s best to. (Ut is often omitted after the Imperative, fac.)

Note.—**Cogo**, *I compel*, usually takes an Infinitive. (*Compello* means “I drive together,” not “I compel”.)

ἀναγκάζω, ποιέω, with Infinitive (Negative μή):

ἠναγκάζοντο ἀμύνεσθαι. HDI. *They were compelled to defend themselves.*

Note 1.—ὥστε may be prefixed to the Infinitive (§ 388).

Note 2.—**πράσσω, ποιέω**, take also ὅπως and Future Indicative (§ 385). (*βιάζομαι* does not mean “I compel a man to do a thing”.)

2. *Try, strive, be eager.*

367 (1) **Conor, studeo**, with **πειράομαι, σπουδάζω, σπεύδω**,
 Infinitive : with Infinitive :
 Illa graves oculos conata attollere. ἐσπουδάζεις ἄρχειν Δαναΐδας.
 VIRG. She striving to uplift her heavy eyes. EUR. Thou wert eager to lead the Danaans.

368 (2) **Nitor**, *ut* or *ne* with Subjunctive (Final, § 384):
 Nitebantur ne quid gravius in eum consuleretur. SALL.
 They strove that no hard sentence should be passed on him.
 Such verbs are also constructed with ὅπως, ὅπως μή, with the Future Indicative ; or ὅπως, ὅπως μή (or simply μή, lest), with Subjunctive or Optative : like Final Clauses.

(**Tempto** takes either Infinitive or *ut, ne*, with Subjunctive.) (Also with εἰν and Subj. or εἰ with Opt., to try whether.)
 Note.—**Constituo**, I determine, takes the Infinitive. Note.—**μέλλω**, I intend, takes the Future Infinitive (§ 214).

3. *Take care, beware.*

369 **Provideo, curo, caveo**, *ut* or *ne* and Subjunctive (§ 384):
 Cura ut valeas. CIC. φυλάσσομαι, etc., with ὅπως and Future Indicative (Negative μή):
 Take care of your health. ὄρα ὅπως μή σου ἀποστήσονται Πέρσαι. HDT.
 Cave ne portus occupet alter. HOR. See to it that the Persians do not revolt from you.
 Take care that another seize not the harbour first.

370 Note.—After the Imperative *cave, ne* is often omitted :
 Note.—The Imperative ὄρα is often omitted before ὅπως :

Cave faxis te quidquam indignum. HOR. ὥσπερ με τὸν Ἀθάμανθ' ὅπως μή θύσετε. AR. Mind you don't sacrifice me like Athamas (sc. ὄρα ὅπως).
 Beware of doing anything unworthy of thee.

(Faxis = facias.) Obs.—Less often these verbs take μή and Subjunctive.

4. *Fear.*

371 **Timeo, metuo, vereor**. φοβοῦμαι, δείδω (δέδοικα), etc.
 (1) *Ne* or *ne non* with Sub- (1) (a) Of Future things, μή

junctive ("I fear lest," "I fear lest not"):

Non vereor ne janua frangatur.
HOR.

Nor am I afraid that the door may be broken in (Primary).

Timuit ne non succederet. HOR.

He was afraid that he would not succeed (Historic).

372 Note.—Ut, "how," is sometimes used for *ne non*:

O puer, ut sis vitalis, metuo.
HOR.

My son, I fear that you will not live long.

(Observe the sequence in:

Vereor ne Romulus barbarorum rex fuerit. CIC.

Romulus was a king of barbarians, I fear.)

373 (2) Infinitive ("I fear to"):

Cur timet flavum Tiberim tan- gere? HOR. Why is he afraid to bathe in the yellow Tiber?

5. Allow, permit; prevent, refuse, deny, forbid, doubt.

374 Allow: **sino**, Acc. and Infin.; **permitto**, Dat. and *ut, ne*, Subj.

Prevent, etc.: see *infra* on *quominus, quin*, §§ 510, 512.

or *μη οὐ* with Subjunctive or Optative (§ 344):

δέδοικα μὴ οὐδ' ὄσιν ἢ ἀγορεύειν. ΠΛΑΤ. I am afraid it may not even be right to deny it. (Prim.)

ἔδεισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς τὸ κέρας. ΧΕΝ.

The Greeks were afraid they would charge on the wing. (Historic.)

(b) Of Present and Past things, *μή* or *μη οὐ* with Indic.:

δέδοικά σ', ὧ πρεσβύτα, μὴ πληγῶν δέει. ΑΒ. I am afraid, old man, you need a beating.

φοβοῦμαι μὴ λόγους τισὶ ψεύδεσιν ἐντετυχήκαμεν. ΠΛΑΤ. I am afraid we have lit on false arguments.

Obs.—With the Subjunctive the Verb of fearing is sometimes omitted (§ 514).

(2) Infinitive ("I fear to"):

φοβήσεται ἀδικεῖν τὸν ἀδελφόν. ΧΕΝ. He will be afraid to wrong his brother.

5. Allow, permit; prevent, refuse, deny, forbid, doubt.

Allow: **ἔω**, Acc. and Infin.; **ἐπιτρέπω**, Dat. and Infin.

Prevent, etc.: see *infra* on *μή* and *μη οὐ* with Infin., §§ 510, 512.

375

6. Impersonal Verbs.

1. It is customary, it happens that (statement of fact).

Mos est*, usually Infinitive (sometimes *ut, ut non*, with Subjunctive).

νομίζεται, it is customary; συμβαίνει*, it happens, Infinitive:

Contingit, evenit, fit, ut or *ut non* with Subjunctive.

Accidit*, accedit*, ut or *ut non* with Subjunctive (also Infinitive, or *quod* with Indicative).

376 (1) *Virginibus Tyriis mos est gestare pharetram.* VIRG.
It is the custom for Tyrian maidens to bear the quiver.

377 (2) *Accidit ut unâ nocte omnes Hermae dejicerentur.* NEP.
It happened that in one night all the Hermae were thrown down.

Note the phrase **est ut** with Subjunctive, *it is possible that.*

Observe the phrase **tantum abest ut—ut**, *so far from*; see § 444.

378 (3) *Accedit huc quod postridie ille venit.* CIC.
Added to this is the fact that he came next day.

2. *It is allowable, expedient, necessary, pleasing* (cf. Indirect Command).

379 **Decet, dedecet, juvat, libet*, expedit*, opus est:** Infinitive.

Licet*, oportet, necesse est: Infinitive, or Subjunctive without *ut*.

Placet*, convenit*: Infinitive, or *ut, ne* and Subjunctive.

συνέβη Γέλωνα νικᾶν. HDT.
The result was that Gelo was victorious.

Obs.—Sometimes a personal construction is preferred:

παρὼν ἐτύγχανον. SOPH. *It happened that I was there* (§ 198).
φανερὸς ἦν ἀμαρτάνων. *It was clear he was wrong* (§ 198).

Note 1.—With *συμβαίνει, ὥστε* sometimes precedes the Infinitive.

Note 2.—Observe the phrases: **οὐκ ἔσθ' ὅπως**, with Indicative (Negative *οὐ*), *it is impossible that*; **οὐχ ὅπως—ἀλλά**, *so far from*; see § 444. (Cf. *πολλοῦ δεῖ οὕτως ἔχειν*, *it is far from being so.*)

Note 3.—**δῆλον ὅτι**, *it is clear that* (or *δηλόνοσι*, *clearly*)—the only use of *ὅτι*, *that*, except after a Verb of Speaking.

ἔξεστι*, *it is allowed*; **συμφέρι***, **πρέπει***, **χρή**, **δεῖ**, **ἀνάγκη***, *it is fitting, etc.*; **ἀρέσκει***, **δοκεῖ***, *it seems good*: all with the Infinitive.

ἀλλ' εὖ φέρειν χρὴ συμφορὰς τὸν εὐγενῆ. EUR.

But it befits the nobly-born nobly to bear misfortunes.

(1) Licet nemini contra patriam ducere exercitum. CIC.

It is not lawful for any man to lead an army against his country.

(2) Me ipsum ames oportet, non mea. CIC. *You ought to love me, not my possessions.*

Obs.—With these, ὥστε with Infinitive, or ὅπως with Future Indicative (Negative μή), may also be used. (Note οὐ δεῖ σε φυγεῖν, *you must not fly*; not, δεῖ μή.)

3. *It concerns, it is a care, it repents, etc.*

380 **Interest** and **refert** take an Infinitive, *ut* or *ne* with Subjunctive, or an Interrogative Clause in the Subjunctive:

Quid meâ refert cui serviam?
PHÆDR. *What does it matter to me whom I serve?* (§ 253.)

Attinet and **pertinet** take *ad* with Accusative and an Infinitive.

381 **Miseret, piget, pudet, poenitet, taedet** take an Infinitive, or *quod* with Subjunctive:

Poenitet vos quod salvum exercitum traduxerim? CAES.

Are you sorry I have brought over the army in safety? (See also § 252.)

* These Verbs take either an Accusative or a Dative with the Infinitive: *e.g.*, “It is fitting for me to do it,” or “It is fitting that I should do it”. The rest, unless otherwise stated, take an Accusative. (See Subj. and Pred. of the Infin., § 180.)

382 *Remark 1.*—The mere idea “the fact that” is usually expressed by one of two constructions:

Viz., either the Accusative and Infinitive, or *quod* with the Indicative: *e.g.*,

μέλει takes a Dative and Infinitive; διαφέρει* and προσήκει*, a Dative or Accusative with Infinitive. The first two are specially common used absolutely (οὐδὲν διαφέρει, *it does not matter*; οὐδὲν μοι μέλει, *I care not*), and are often used with *εἰ* and Indicative—an Indirect Question.

μεταμέλει takes a Dative and a Participle:

μεταμέλησέ οἱ τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον μαστιγώσαντι. HDT.

It repented him that he had scourged the Hellespont (lit., as having scourged). (See also § 251.)

Viz., either the Plain Infinitive, or the Infinitive with the Neuter Article prefixed: *e.g.*,

Hoc praestamus maxime feris
quod loquimur. CIC.

We excel beasts most in this respect,
that we speak.

ἡ τῶν παιδῶν ἀρχή, τὸ μὴ εἶν
ἐλευθέρους εἶναι. ΠΛΑΤ.

The government of children, our
not allowing them to be free.

383 *Remark 2.*—Certain words, besides taking their normal constructions, admit also of special usages :

Miror si with Indicative, *I wonder that*; **memini quum** with Subjunctive, *I remember (the time) when* (§ 415).

Gaudeo takes a Prolate Infinitive, “rejoice to,” or *quod* with Indicative, “I rejoice that”.

Haud scio an, nescio an, with Subjunctive, as Indirect Questions: *I do not know whether, I almost think that*. So **forsitan**, *perhaps*, in Prose takes the Subjunctive (lit., *fors est an, it is a chance whether*).

θαυμάζω εἰ with Indicative, *I wonder that* (Negative οὐ or μὴ); **μέμνημαι ὅτε** with Indicative, *I remember (the time) when* (§ 414).

χαίρω, ἡδομαι, ἄχθομαι take a Participle (§ 198), “I rejoice to,” etc.; Genitive Absolute, “I rejoice that”: **χαίρω ἐλθόν, I rejoice to have come**; **χαίρω σου ἐλθόντος, I rejoice that you have come**. (Never Infinitive.)

Note ὡς for ἴσθι ὡς :

ὡς Ἀττικὸν τὸ χωρίον. AR.

Know that the land is Attic.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

1. Final Clauses.

384 Final Sentences express the purpose, object, end (*finis*) of an action. They may be known in English by “may” or “might”.

They are expressed by **ut**, if Positive, by **ne**, if Negative, with the *Subjunctive*. (For Tense see § 344.)

Primary :

(1) Ut jugulent homines, surgunt de nocte latrones. JUV.

Robbers rise at night to cut men's throats.

They are expressed by **ἵνα** or **ὡς** with the *Subjunctive* or *Optative*, according to Sequence (§ 344), (Negative μὴ).

Primary :

(1) διανοεῖται τὴν γέφυραν λῦσαι, ὡς μὴ διαβῆτε. XEN.

He proposes to destroy the bridge, that you may not cross.

Historic :

(2) Scipio rus abiit ne ad causam dicendam adesset. *Cic. Scipio went away into the country that he might not be present to defend his case.*

(Pompeius, ne circumcluderetur, discedit. *CAES. P. retired, that he might not be shut in (Hist. Pres.)*.)

385 *Note 1.*—With Comparatives **quo** is used for *ut* :

Solon furere se simulavit, quo tutior esset vita ejus. *Cic.*

Solon pretended that he was mad, that his life might be safer.

386 *Note 2.*—The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are sometimes used in Final Clauses, as in English, with reference to an action which is already past :

Sic ne perdiderit, non cessat perdere lusor. *Ov.*

So, that he may not have lost, the gambler continues to lose.

(In Final Clauses *and not* is **neve** or **neu**.)

(A Final Clause is often marked by a Demonstrative Adverb : **Ideo, idcirco, propterea.**)

387

Obs.—Other ways of expressing Purpose :

E.g., “they sent ambassadors to announce” :

(1) *Qui and Subjunctive* : qui nuntiarent (§ 462).

(2) *Supine* : nuntiatum (§ 182).

Historic :

(2) ἄρνυσθ' ἵν' ἀθανάτοισι φῶς φέροι ἤδε βροτοῖσιν. *HOM.*

She rose that she might bring light to gods and men.

πλοῖα κατέκαυσεν ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος διαβῆ. *XEN. He burnt the boats, that Cyrus might not cross (Vivid).*

Note 1.—In poetry Final Clauses are sometimes expressed by ὡς or ὅπως (not ἵνα) with the Future Indicative.

(On ὡς ἄν with the Subjunctive see ἄν, § 219.)

Note 2.—An unfulfilled purpose in Past Time is expressed by ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως, with the Historic Tenses of the Indicative (Negative μὴ) :

τί μ' οὐ λαβὼν ἔκτεινας εὐθὺς ὡς εἶδειξα μήποτε; *SOPH.*

Why didst thou not take and slay me that I might never have shown (as I have done)?

(In Final Clauses *and not* is **μηδέ** or **καὶ μὴ**.)

διὰ τὸδε, τοῦτου ἔνεκα.)

(1) ὅστις *and Future Indicative* : οἵτινες ἀγγελοῦσιν (§ 462).

(2) *Future Participle* (§ 193) : ἀγγελοῦντας, or τοὺς or ὡς ἀγγ.

- (3) *Gerund*: nuntiandi causa, οἱ ad nuntiandum. (3) τοῦ with *Infinitive*: τοῦ ἀγγέλλειν (§ 186).
 (4) *Si with Subjunctive*: "if perchance" (§ 407). (4) εἰάν with *Subjunctive*, or εἰ with *Optative* (§ 407).

2. Consecutive Clauses.

388 Consecutive Clauses express the Result or Consequence which follows (*consequor*) the action of the Main Verb.

Ut, if Positive, **ut non**, if Negative, with *Subjunctive*. The Tense is usually the Present or Imperfect (§ 344):

Non sum ita hebes ut istud dicam. CIC. *I am not so stupid as to say that.*

Nemo adeo ferus est ut non mitescere possit. HOR. *No one is so savage that he cannot soften.*

(a) **Possible Result**: ὥστε with *Infinitive* (Negative μή). (A Negative Clause generally precedes or follows.)

τὰ παραδείγματα τῶν ἀμαρτημάτων ἴκανα τοῖς σώφροσιν ὥστε μηκέτι ἀμαρτάνειν. ANDOC.

Examples of errors are enough for sensible people to save them from further error.

389 Note 1.—The **Perfect Subjunctive** may be used of a result which is a fact, whatever the Sequence (§ 345).

Tormentis quum laceraretur, eo fuit habitu oris ut ridentis speciem praeberit. LIV.

In the agony of torture, the expression of his face was such that he looked as if he were laughing.

(b) **Actual Result**: ὥστε with *Indicative* (Negative οἶ). (A Positive Clause generally precedes.)

εἰς τοῦτ' ἀπληστίας ἦλθον, ὥστ' οὐκ ἐξήρκεσεν αὐτοῖς ἔχειν τὴν κατὰ γῆν ἀρχήν. ISOCR.

They reached such a pitch of greed, that it was not enough for them to possess the empire of the land.

390 Note 2.—Observe the following idiomatic use of *ita—ut*:

Cujus ego ingenium ita laudo ut non pertimescam. CIC.

While fully commending his genius, I am not paralysed by it. (I praise it in such a way that, etc.)


Note 1.—ἐφ' ὧτε with *Infinitive* (Negative μή) means on condition that:

ἀφίεμέν σε ἐφ' ὧτε μηκέτι φιλοσοφεῖν. PLAT.

We acquit you, on condition you no longer study philosophy.

391 The Consecutive Construction is frequent after Comparatives :

Isocrates *maiore ingenio est quam ut cum Lysia comparetur.* CIC. ἦσθοντο αὐτὸν ἐλάσσω ἔχοντα δύναμιν ἢ ὥστε τοὺς φίλους ὠφελεῖν. XEN. *They saw he had too little power to help his friends.*

392  Observe the Negative in Final and Consecutive Clauses: *e.g.,*

That not : Final, **ne** ; Consecutive, **ut non.** μείζον ἢ φέρειν κακόν. SOPH. *An evil too great to bear.*

That no one : Final, **ne quis** ; Consecutive, **ut nemo.** On the other hand ὥστε is sometimes added where we should expect a plain Infinitive :

That no : Final, **ne ullus** ; Consecutive, **ut nullus.** ὕδωρ ψυχρόν ὥστε λούσασθαι. XEN. *Water cold for bathing.*

393 *Obs.*—Consequence can also be expressed by

qui with the Subjunctive (§ 463), or, after a Negative, by *quin* (§ 512). οἷος or ὅσος with the *Infinitive* (§ 465), or ὅστις with the *Indicative* (§ 463).

394 *Remark.*—Final and Consecutive Clauses are sometimes used parenthetically,

especially Final Clauses: *e.g., ut ita dicam, so to speak, lit., that I may say so; ne longior sim, to be brief.* especially Consecutive Clauses: *e.g., ὡς εἰπεῖν, so to speak, lit., so as to speak; συνελόντι εἰπεῖν, to be brief.* (See *Infin.*, § 176.)

3. Conditional Clauses.

395 The “if” Clause is called the *Protasis*, because it usually precedes; the Main Clause is called the *Apodosis*, or “result”.

On *nisi, unless, si non, if not*, see below, § 408. The Negative in the “if” Clause is μή: see § 408.

(Plain Conditions.)

The Indicative.**A.** *Open*, as to fulfilment.

Any Tense of the Indicative may be used in either Clause which the sense requires :

Non si Opimium defendisti, idcirco te bonum civem putabunt. CIC.

Not, if you defended Opimius, will they therefore think you a good citizen.

396 *Note 1.*—Observe the Future and Future-Perfect in the following :

Si patriam prodere conabitur pater, silebitne filius? CIC.

If a father tries to betray his country, shall his son keep silence?

Si feceris id quod ostendis, magnam habebō gratiam. CIC.

If you do what you offer, I shall be very grateful.

397 *Note 2.*—The Apodosis may be a Command or Wish :

Moriar, si vera non loquor. CIC.

May I die, if I am not speaking the truth. (Sc., as I live I speak, etc.)

The Indicative.**A.** *Open*, as to fulfilment.

εἴ ποῦ τι ἐπραξα, τοιοῦτος φανοῦμαι. PLAT.

If I ever did anything, I shall appear to be such a man.

Note 1.—εἴ with Future Indicative is only emphatic :

εἰ μὴ καθέξεις γλῶσσαν, ἔσται σοι κακά. EUR.

If you WILL not control your tongue, you will suffer.

More often εἰάν with Subj. is used of Future time :

εἰάν μοι πείθησθε, φείσεσθε μου. PLAT. *If you take my advice, you will spare me.*

Note 2.—The Apodosis may be a Command or Wish :

κάκιστ' ἀπολοίμην, Ξανθίαν εἰ μὴ φιλῶ. AR. *May I die miserably, if I do not love Xanthias.*

398 (Potential “Would” or “Should”.)

The Subjunctive.**B.** *Improbable*, as to fulfilment: **Future** time.

Primary Tenses of Subjunctive in both Clauses :

ἄν in the Apodosis.**B.** *Improbable*, as to fulfilment: **Future** time.

Protasis, εἰ with Optative ; Apodosis, Optative with ἄν :

Sescenta memorem, si sit otium.
PLAUT.

I could mention hundreds of things, were I ever to have leisure (which is improbable).

εἷς φορητὸς οὐκ ἄν, εἰ πράσσοις
καλῶς. AESCH.

You would be unendurable, were you ever to be prosperous (which is improbable).

399 **C. Impossible** : Present and Past time.

Historic Tenses of Subjunctive in both Clauses.

(1) **Present** time: Imperfect Subjunctive both Clauses :

Si foret in terris, rideret Democritus. HOR.

Democritus would laugh, were he alive now.

(But he is not.)

C. Impossible : Present and Past time.

Historic Tenses of Indicative: ἄν in Apodosis.

(1) **Present** time: εἰ with Imperfect Indicative; Imperfect Indicative with ἄν :

καὶ τόδ', εἴπερ ἔσθονον, ἔδρων ἄν.
SOPH. *And I should now be doing this deed, had I the strength (but I have not).*

400 (2) **Past** time: Pluperfect Subjunctive both Clauses :

Si id scissem, nunquam huc tulissem pedem. TER.

I should never have come here, had I known that.

(But I did not.)

(2) **Past** time: εἰ with Aorist Indicative; Aorist Indicative with ἄν :

ἀπέθανον ἄν εἰ μὴ ἡ τῶν τριάκοντα ἀρχὴ κατελύθη. PLAT. *I should have died, if the rule of the Thirty had not been overthrown (but it was).*

401 Or C. (1) and C. (2) may be combined, the Protasis being in (2), the Apodosis in (1).

Ergo ego nisi peperissem, Roma non oppugnaretur. LIV.

And so, had I never borne a son, Rome would not now be attacked.

εἰ τότε ἐβοηθήσαμεν, οὐκ ἄν ἠνώχλει ὁ Φίλιππος. DEM.

If we had gone to the rescue then, Philip would not be troubling us now.

(The Imperfect sometimes refers to *Past* time; but the opposite is rare.)

402 With Verbs expressing *duty, possibility, likelihood*, the Apodosis in B. and C. is usually a plain Indicative :

Viz., **possum, debeo, oportet**, the Gerundive, Future Participle, etc. :

Antoni gladios potuit contemnere,
si sic

Omnia dixisset. JUV.

He could have despised the swords of Antony, if all his utterances had been in this strain.

Viz., **χρή, δεῖ**, verbals in -τεος, μέλλω, κινδυνεύω, etc. :

χρῆν δέ σε, εἴπερ ἦσθα χρηστός, τοῖς μέλλουσιν ἀδίκως ἀποθανεῖσθαι μηνυτῆν γενέσθαι. LYS.

You ought, were you honest, to have turned informer on behalf of those about to be unjustly put to death.

Indefinite or General Conditions.

403 These are expressed in the *Apodosis* by the Present or Imperfect Indicative or some iterative tense ;

In the *Protasis* by the Perfects Indicative—the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect expressing Present, Past, or Future time respectively, § 217 :

Si quis eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. CAES.

If ever any of them does not abide by the ordinance, they exclude him from the sacrifice.

Si a persequendo hostes deterrere nequiverant, disjectos a tergo circumveniebant. SALL.

If ever they could not deter the enemy from pursuit, they cut them off and enclosed them in the rear.

In the *Protasis* (1) by *εἰ* with Subjunctive, if Primary ; (2) by *εἰ* with Optative, if Historic. (The Optative here must be distinguished from the Optative in B., *sup.* § 398.)

(1) Primary :

ἦν ἐγγύς ἔλθῃ θάνατος, οὐδείς βούλεται θνήσκειν. EUR. *If ever death draws near, no man cares to die.*

(2) Historic :

ἀλλ' εἴ τι μὴ φέροιμεν, ὤτρυνεν φέρεν. EUR.

But if ever we did not bring anything, he urged us to bring it.

Subordinate Conditions.

404 (a) In **Oratio Obliqua** “would” is expressed by the Future Participle with *esse*, “would have” by the Future Participle with *fuisse* :

Si Allobrogibus satisfaciunt, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. CAES.

(a) In **Oratio Obliqua** *ἂν* of the *Apodosis* is retained with the Infinitive and Participle—the *Protasis* alone showing whether an Optative (B.) or an Indicative (C.) is represented :

εἰ σφίσι προσγένοιτο, νομίζοντες

If they gave satisfaction to the Allobroges, he would make peace with them.

Note.—With Passives “would” and “would have” are often expressed by *fore* (or *futurum esse*) *ut* and *futurum fuisse ut* respectively:

Quorum si aetas potuisset esse longinquior, futurum fuisse ut omni doctrina hominum vita erudiretur. CIC.

If their years could have been prolonged, human life would have been richer in all manner of learning.

405 (b) In Clauses, *e.g.*, after *quin* or *ut*, which would in any case be **Subjunctive**, “would” is expressed by the Perfect Subjunctive, whatever the sequence: *viz.*, if Active, by *fuert* with the Future Participle; if Passive, by *fuert* with the Gerundive, or *potuerit* with the Infinitive:

Nec dubium erat quin, si tam pauci simul obire omnia possent, terga daturi hostes fuerint. LIV.

There was no doubt that if so small a body could occupy every position, the enemy would turn to flight.

Adeo aequis viribus gesta res est, ut, si adfuissent Etrusci, accipienda clades fuerit. LIV. So evenly was the fight contested that, if the Etruscans had been present, a defeat would have been sustained.

ἅπασαν ἂν ἔχειν Πελοπόννησον. THUC. Thinking that if the place came over to them, they would be masters of the whole Peloponnese. (Oratio Recta: ἂν ἔχοιεν, B.)

εἰ ἀπήχθησθε ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς, εὖ ἴσμεν μὴ ἂν ἦσσαν ὑμᾶς λυπηροῖς γενομένους τοῖς συμμάχοις. THUC.

If you had incurred the same odium as ourselves, we feel sure that you would have seemed no less oppressive to your allies. (Oratio Recta: ἂν ἐγένεσθε, C. (2). On μή see § 501.)

(It follows, therefore, that after Historic Tenses the Vivid Sequence must be retained in the Protasis, otherwise conditions in B. and C. would be indistinguishable (§ 346).

After *δοι*, *that*, this remark applies also to the Apodosis. In all such cases the Indicative of C. must be retained, and not altered to the Optative.)

(b) *εἰ* with the Subjunctive may, after Historic Tenses, become *εἰ* with the Optative: *e.g.*,

ἐλογίζοντο ὡς, εἰ μὴ μάχοντο, ἀποστήσονται αἱ περιουκίδες πόλεις. XEN.

They argued that, if they did not fight, the neighbouring cities would revolt. (Oratio Recta: εἰ μὴ μαχώμεθα, ἀποστήσονται.)

This remark applies also to Indefinite Conditions.

Remarks on Conditional Sentences.

- 406 *Note 1.*—The real Apodosis of B. and C. is sometimes suppressed and a plain Indicative substituted for vividness, to show how near a thing is to happening :

Numeros memini, si verba tene-
rem. VIRG.

*I remember the music, (and I
should remember the whole song)
if I could recall the words.*

εἰ δὲ μὴ Φρυγῶν πύργους πεσόν-
τας ἤσμεν, φόβον παρέσχεν. EUR.

*Had we not known that the towers
of the Phrygians had fallen, it had
caused us fear.*

- 407 Sometimes, where the real Apodosis is thus suppressed, a Protasis in the Conjunctive practically expresses Purpose :

Circumfunduntur hostes, si adit-
um reperire possent. CAES.

*The enemy swarm round, to see if
they could find an entrance anywhere
(sc., they would attack, if).*

πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, εἰ ἐπιβοηθοῖεν,
ἐχώρουν. THUC.

*They marched
towards the city, to see if the enemy
would come out against them (in
which case they would join battle).*

- 408 *Note 2.*—The Protasis of a Conditional Sentence may be a Participle (§ 193), or a Relative Clause (§ 469), etc.

Note 3.—The Protasis of B. and C. sometimes stands alone as a Wish (§ 332), “if only this were so!” (I should be glad); the Apodosis, as a Potential Statement (§ 329), “one would say”.

Note 4.—Occasionally the Apodosis, if it comes second, is introduced with a Connective Particle, as though it were a Coordinate Clause :

Viz., by the Particle at
(chiefly in Livy).

Note 5.—Observe **sin minus**,
sin aliter, but if the opposite
be the case; if the first Clause
be Negative, but if so.

Note 6.—**Nisi**, unless, is used
only if the Apodosis is Nega-

Viz., by δέ: hence called
“apodotic δέ”.

Note 5.—Observe εἰ δὲ μὴ,
but if the opposite be the case.
(If the first clause is Nega-
tive, εἰ δὲ μὴ = but if so.)

Note 6.—The Negative in
the Protasis is regularly μὴ,

tive: otherwise **si—non**, if
—*not*, must be used.

If—*if, whether—or*, is **sive**
—**sive**.

but *οὐ* may be used to negative
particular words (§ 500).

If—*if, whether—or*, is **εἴτε—**
εἴτε, εἰάν τε—εἰάν τε.

4. Causal Clauses.

409 **Quod, quia**, because; **quo-**
niam, since:

(1) With *Indicative*, if the
cause is given as a fact:

Possunt, quia posse videntur.
VIRG.

*They have the power because they
think they have.*

(On *quum*, since, with Sub-
junctive, Causal, see § 415.)

410 (2) With *Subjunctive* in
virtual *Oratio Obliqua* (§ 476):

Themistocles noctu ambulabat,
quod somnum capere non posset.
CIC.

*Themistocles used to walk about at
night, because, he said, he could not
sleep.*

411 *Note*.—So **non quia**, **non**
quod, **quam quia**, take the
Subjunctive when they refer
to what is not a fact:

Pugiles ingemiscunt, non quod
doleant, sed quia venit plaga vehe-
mentior. CIC.

*Boxers groan, not because they are
in pain, but because their blow comes
with the more force thereby.*

ὄτι, διότι, because; **ὥς**, *as*.
(The Negative is *οὐ*):

(1) With *Indicative*, if the
cause is given as a fact:

τὸ ὄσιον, ὄτι ὄσιόν ἐστι, φιλεῖται
ὑπὸ τῶν θεῶν. PLAT.

*Holiness is loved by the gods
because it is holiness.*

(On *ἐπεί, ἐπειδή*, since, with
Indicative, Causal, see § 415.)

(2) With *Optative* in virtual
Oratio Obliqua (§ 476):

τὸν Περικλέα ἐκάκισον, ὄτι στρα-
τηγὸς ὦν οὐκ ὑπεξάγοι. THUC. *They
began to revile P. because, though
general, he did not lead them out.*

Obs.—*ὄτι* and *ὥς* may perhaps
here mean (saying) “that”.

Note 1.—In Poetry *οὐνεκα*,
ὀθοίνεκα, are also used in the
sense of “because”.

Note 2.—With *ἐπεί, ἐπειδή*,
ὥς, the Main Clause usually
follows; with *ὄτι, διότι*, it al-
most always precedes.

(*ἐπεί* sometimes means “for”:
ἐπεὶ δίδαξον. SOPH. *For tell me.*)

412 *Obs.*—A cause may also be expressed by

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) The Participle, often with <i>ut</i> or <i>tanquam</i> (§ 193). | (1) The Participle, often with <i>ὡς</i> or <i>ἄτε</i> (§ 193): |
| (2) The Relative, <i>qui, quippe qui</i> , with Subjunctive (§ 468). | (2) The Relative, <i>ὅς, ὅστις, ὅς γε, ὅστις γε</i> , with Indic. (§ 468). |
| (3) <i>Siquidem</i> , with Indicative (also <i>miror si</i> , § 383). | (3) <i>εἰ γε</i> , with Indicative. (Also <i>θαυμάζω εἰ</i> , see § 383.) |
| (4) Gerund or Gerundive in Ablative (§ 184). | (4) <i>τῷ</i> or <i>διὰ τό</i> , with Infinitive (§ 184). |

5. Temporal Clauses.

413 Temporal Particles admit of two constructions, according as they express—

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Merely <i>time</i> , when they take the Indicative; | (1) <i>Definite</i> time, when they take the Indicative; |
| (2) Also <i>purpose</i> , when they take the Subjunctive, like Final Clauses (§ 384). | (2) <i>Indefinite</i> time, when they take <i>ἄν</i> with Subjunctive if Primary, the plain Optative if Historic (§ 403). |

(*Quum* is exceptional, taking the Subjunctive if it expresses *cause or concession*. *Dum* with Subjunctive may also mean “provided that”.)

Future time is almost necessarily Indefinite; *viz.*, they correspond throughout to Conditional Clauses, § 396.

1. *When*.

414 **Ubi, quando, ut**, *Indicative*, as expressing mere time:

Pompeius, ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit. CAES.

When Pompey saw the rout of his cavalry, he left the field.

(On the Tense of *vidit* see § 205.)

(a) **ὄτε, ὡς**, *Indicative*, *Definite* time:

ὄτε με οἱ ἄρχοντες ἔταπτον, τότε οὐ ἐκείνοι ἔταπτον ἔμενον. PLAT.

When the rulers were assigning me a post, then I remained where they appointed me.

415 **Quum**.

Quum takes the **Subjunctive** if it means

Note.—*ἐπεὶ, ἐπειδή*, with the Indicative, have other meanings not purely temporal:

(1) *When*, Historic time (half-Causal):

Cum triginta tyranni oppressas tenerent Athenas, Thrasybulus his bellum indixit. NEP.

When the thirty tyrants were oppressing Athens, Thrasybulus declared war against them.

Cum Pausanias de templo elatus esset, festim animam efflavit. NEP.

When Pausanias was carried out of the temple, he immediately expired.

416 (2) *Since* (i.e., because), both Primary and Historic time:

Quae cum ita sint. CIC.
Since this is so.

417 (3) *Although*, both Primary and Historic time:

Patrem meum, cum proscriptus non esset, jugulastis. CIC.
You murdered my father, though he was not proscribed.

418 *Quum* takes the **Indicative** when it means

(1) *When*, Primary time. Observe the Futures in

De his rebus, otiosi cum erimus, loquemur. CIC.
We will talk of these things when we are at leisure.

Eum cum videro, Arpinum pergam. CIC.
When I have seen him, I shall go on to Arpinum.

(1) *When*, half-Causal, chiefly Historic time:

ἐπεὶ ἠσθέειν Δαρείος, ἐβούλετο οἱ τῷ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω παρῆναι. XEN.

When Darius was ill, he wished both his sons to appear before him.

ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὀλιγαρχία ἐγένετο, οἱ τριάκοντα μετεπέμψαντό με. PLAT.
When an oligarchy had been established, the Thirty Tyrants sent for me.

(On the Tense of ἐγένετο see § 205.)

(2) *Since* (i.e., because), any time (see § 409):

ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα οὕτως ἔχει. DEM.
And since this is so.

(3) *Although*: chiefly Indicative with ἄν:

ἐπεὶ καὶ ταῦτ' ἂν ἴσως οὐκ ἀηδῶς σου ἤκουον. PLAT.
Though I should have been glad perhaps to hear this also from you.

(b) ὅταν, ἐπειδὴν with the Subjunctive, a vague Future; the Aorist Subjunctive is here equivalent to a Future Perfect (Negative μή):

οὐκοῦν, ὅταν δὴ μὴ σθένω, πεπαύσομαι. SOPH. *So, when I have no power, I will cease.*

ἐπειδὴν δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἃ δέομαι, ἤξω. XEN.
When I have accomplished my purpose, I shall return.

419 (2) *Whenever*, with the Perfect, Future-Perfect, or Pluperfect of Present, Future, or Past time respectively :

Cum ad villam veni, hoc ipsum nihil agere me delectat. CIC.

Whenever I come to my country-house, the mere idleness of the life delights me.

Cum rosam viderat, tum ver incipere arbitrabatur. CIC.

Whenever he saw a rose, he thought spring was beginning.

420 (3) *And then* (this is called "inverse cum" because the Clauses are inverted, the *quum* clause really containing the Principal Statement):

Jam ver appetebat cum Hannibal ex hibernis movit. LIV.

Spring was already approaching, when Hannibal moved out of his winter-quarters (viz., "when Spring was approaching, Hannibal, etc.)."

421 *Remark.*—*Quum, when*, even in Historic time, may take the Indicative if mere time is expressed—especially if *tum* is added :

Lituo Romulus regiones direxit tum cum Romam condidit. CIC.

Romulus marked out the districts with a staff at the time he founded the city.

(c) **Indefinite time**, *whenever* : ὅταν, ἐπειδάν with Subjunctive, Primary; ὅτε, ἐπεὶ with Optative, Historic (Neg. μή) :

μαινόμεθα πάντες, ὁπότεν ὀργιζώμεθα. PHILEMON.

We are all mad, when we are angry.

ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀνοιχθείη, εἰσῆγμεν παρὰ τὸν Σωκράτη. PLAT.

Every morning when the prison opened we used to go in and see Socrates.

Note 1.—"When" in the inverse sense of "and then" may be expressed by ὅτε, but more commonly the idea is expressed by καί and a Coordinate Clause.

E.g. :

ἦν δὲ ἡμῶν δεύτερον κἀγὼ κατηγόμην. SOPH.

It was now the second day, when I put in to shore.

Note 2.—ἐπεὶ, ἐπειδὴ, ἐπειδάν have usually a causal force or express some other relation between the two clauses beside that of time.

ὅτε is, as a rule, merely temporal, ὅταν always so—ὅτε being usually attended by an antecedent, *e.g.*, τότε (*supra*, § 414).

So *since, that*, of mere time—duration :


Multi anni sunt cum Fabius in aere meo est. CIC.

It is many years that Fabius has been in my debt.

(But *ἐπεὶ, since, that*, expresses little more than time :

δέκατον μὲν ἔτος τόδ' ἐπεὶ ἤρην. AESCH.

It is now ten years since they started.)

422  If the English admits of being transposed into the Participle in “-ing,” use the Subjunctive with *quum*; if not, the Indicative: *e.g.*, “Pausanias *having* been carried out,” “these things *being* so,” *supra*.

When thus defined, *ὄτε* may be used with the Future Indicative :

νύξ ἔσται ὄτε με στυγερὸς γάμος ἀντιβολήσει. HOM.

The night will come when loathed wedlock will come upon me.

Note 1.—As soon as

423 is expressed by the same Particles and under the same rules as “when,” with the addition of an Adverb implying “firstly,” *viz.*, *primum, e.g., quum primum.* *τάχιστα, e.g., ἔπει τάχιστα.* But Also by *simul*, or *simul ac*, *simul atque* (and sometimes *simulac*, etc.). *ὄτε τάχιστα* is not used; *ὡς* and *τάχιστα* in this sense (§ 73) are usually separated.

Note 2.—Whenever

may be expressed also by **quotiens, quotiescunque**, usually with the Perfect, Future-Perfect or Pluperfect (§ 217).

may be expressed also by *ὀπί-ταν*, Subjunctive; *ὀπότε*, Optative, according to § 344. These words are only Indefinite.

2. *While, until.*

Dum.

Dum, donec, quoad : (1) *while*, (2) *until*.

424 (1) In the sense of “while” these Particles take the *Indica-*

ἕως.

ἕως, μέχρι, ἕστε : (1) *while*, (2) *until*.

(1) In the sense of “while” these Particles take the same

tive, like *ubi* (*sup.*). But *dum*, “while,” usually takes the Present Indicative, even in Past time and in *Oratio Obliqua*, if it denote a longer period than the main verb :

Dum Romani consultant, jam Saguntum oppugnabatur. LIV.

While the Romans were deliberating, Saguntum was already undergoing siege.

425 (2) In the sense of “until” they take

(a) The *Indicative*, of mere time :

Milo in senatu fuit eo die, quoad senatus dimissus est. CIC.

Milo was in the Senate that day until it was dismissed.

426 (b) The *Subjunctive*, if they express purpose :

Rusticus expectat dum defluat amnis. HOR.

The rustic waits for the river to flow by (Primary).

Observavit dum dormitaret canis. PLAUT.

He waited for the dog to fall asleep (Historic).

427 *Note.*—*Dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, *provided that*, take the *Subjunctive* (Negative *ne*) :

Oderint, dum metuant. SUET.

Let them hate me, provided that they fear me. (For *nedum* see § 445.)

construction as *ὄτε*, *ἐπεί*, *viz.*, (a) the *Indicative* of Definite time ; (b) *ἄν* with *Subjunctive* of a vague Future ; (c) *ἄν* with *Subjunctive* or pure *Optative*, *Indefinite* time.

Note.—Of Present time *ἔτι* is usually added to *ἕως* :

ἕως ἔτ' ἔμφρων εἰμι, κηρύσσω φίλοις. AESCH. *While yet I have wit, I announce to my friends.*

(2) In the sense of “until” they take

(a) The *Indicative*, of past time :

παίουσι τὸν Σωτηρίδην, ἕστε ἠγάγκασαν πορεύεσθαι. XEN.

They beat Soterides till they compelled him to move on.

(b) *ἄν* with *Subjunctive*, or pure *Optative*, of Future time (= purpose) :

ἐπίσχευς ἔστ' ἄν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ προσμάθης. AESCH. *Wait till thou further learn what yet remains.*

περιεμένομεν ἑκάστοτε, ἕως ἀν-οιχθείη τὸ δεσμωτήριον. PLAT.

We used to wait about each day for the prison to be opened.

Note.—*μέχρι* is often used, even in *Prose*, with a plain *Subjunctive* :

μέχρι πλοῦς γένηται. THUC.

Until the voyage take place. (See on *ἄν*, § 217.)

3. *Before.***Priusquam.****πρίν.**

- 428 Priusquam, antequam. (sometimes as two words, prius—quam, ante—quam) follow the constructions of dum, *until*; but the Indicative is usually past, and usually follows a Negative.
- 429 (1) With the *Indicative*, purely Temporal; sometimes after a Present and a Positive: Ante rorat quam pluit. VARRO. *It drizzles before it rains.*
- 430 More often a Negative precedes, and the Perfect Indicative is used (the Imperfect rarely, the Pluperfect never): “until”.
Nec prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum pervenerunt. CAES.
And they did not cease flying, till they came to the river Rhine.
- 431 (2) With the *Subjunctive*, if Purpose is implied: Graeci tragoedi cotidie, antequam pronuntient, vocem cubantes excitant. CIC.
A Greek tragic actor, before delivering his part, works up his voice in a recumbent position every day.
- 432 (Sometimes the Subjunctive expresses result prevented—
- πρίν, πρίν ἤ, πρότερον ἤ. πρίν, after Negatives, follows the constructions of ἕως, *until*; after Positives it takes a fresh construction—the Infinitive. (πρίν is often preceded by a redundant πρότερον.)
- (a) After **Positives**, the *Infinitive*:
πρίν γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς ἦν ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχῇ. PLAT. *Before we were born, our soul was in existence.*
- (b) After **Negatives** (translate “until”):
1. The *Indicative*, Past time: Definite:
οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι οὐ πρότερον ἐπαύσαντο πρίν Μεσσηνίου ἐξέβαλον ἐκ τῆς χώρας. ISAEUS.
The Spartans did not cease till they had expelled the Messenians from the land.
2. ἄν with *Subjunctive*, Primary: *Optative*, Historic; of Future time:
οὐκ ἀποκρινοῦμαι πρότερον πρίν ἄν πύθωμαι. PLAT.
I will not answer till I hear.
ἀπηγόρευε μηδένα βάλλειν πρίν Κῦρος ἐμπλησθεῖη θηρῶν. XEN.
He forbade any one to shoot till Cyrus had had his surfeit of the chase.

the idea of Purpose existing only in the writer's mind :

Ante discessit quam illum venisse audissem. Cic. *He left before I had heard of his arrival.*

Observe that *πρίν* with the Conjunctive practically implies Purpose.

(On *πρίν*, *μέχρι*, *ἕως* with a plain Subjunctive, see § 98.)

4. After.

433 **Postquam**: with the Indicative only, mere time :

Postquam cenavimus, Atticus advenit. Cic. *After we had dined Atticus came.*

(Note the use of the Perfect for the Pluperfect here, § 205.)

ὕστερον ἤ: only with the Past Indicative, Definite :

τεσσαρακοστῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὕστερον ἤ Ποτιδαία ἀπέστη. THUC. *Forty days after Potidaea had revolted.*

(Note the use of the Aorist for the Pluperfect here, § 205.)

434 Time "after" may also be expressed by any of the Particles given above for time "when".

Observe the phrase *postridie quam, the day after*, with the Indicative :

Post diem tertium res gesta est quam dixerat. Cic. *The deed was done three days after he had spoken.*

Observe the phrase *τῇ ὑστεραία ἡ, the day after*, usually with *ἦ* (*sc. ἡμέρα*):

τῇ ὑστεραία ἡ ἦ ἔθυσεν. PLAT. *Three days after he was sacrificing.*

Observe also the following Particles expressive of time :

Ex quo, since ; quoad (sup., § 425), **until ; quamdiu, as long as.**

ἐξ οὗ, since ; ἐς ὃ, until ; ἐν ᾧ, while (often picked up by *ἐν τούτῳ*) ; **ὅσον χρόνον, as long as.**

435 *Obs.*—Time may also be expressed by

(1) The Participle : *scribens, while writing ; progressus, when he had come ; moriturus, before he died* (§ 193).

(1) The Participle : *μεταξὺ γράφων, while he was writing ; ἀπελθών, when he had gone, etc.* (§ 193).

(2) A preposition and Participial or Gerundival phrase: post urbem conditam, *after the city had been built*; ante Caesarem occisum, *before Caesar was slain*; inter loquendum, *while he was talking* (§ 184).

(2) A Preposition with the Article and Infinitive: πρὸ τοῦ θανεῖν, *before he died*; μετὰ τὰ ταῦτα γενέσθαι, *after this had happened*.

Note also φθάνω and ὑστερέω with the Participle (§ 198).

436

6. Local Clauses,

where, whither, whence,

follow the construction of Relative Clauses (§ 458).

1. *Indicative*: of mere place:
Quâ te ducit via, dirige gressum.

VIRG.

Where the way leads thee, direct thy steps.

1. *Indicative*: of Definite place:

αὐτοῦ μὲν, οὔπερ κάφάνης.

SOPH. *Remain here where thou didst first appear.*

437 *Note*.—The Perfects may be used of Indefinite place (§ 217):

Quocunque aspexisti, tuae tibi occurrunt injuriae. CIC.

Wherever you look your offences meet you.

2. ἄν with Subjunctive, or pure Optative, Indefinite:

μολών τε χώρον ἐνθ' ἂν ἀστιβῆ κίχῳ. SOPH. *Going where'er I find a place untrod.* (Primary.)

438 2. *Subjunctive*: of consequence or purpose:

Recumbe, ubi stare non possis.

Lie down, where you cannot stand (in places such that: Consequence).

Vias relaxat, veniat qua succus in herbas. VIRG. *It opens the pores, whereby the moisture may reach the herbs.* (Purpose.)

ἐκέλευε λίθους καταβάλλειν ὅπου βούλοιτο. XEN. *He ordered him to throw down the stones wherever he liked.* (Historic.)

3. *Future Indicative*: of purpose (Negative μή):

κρῦψόν νιν ἔνθα μή τις ὄψεται θεῶν. SOPH.

Hide it where none of the gods may see it.

(Such phrases as “I have nowhere to go,” with Conjunctive, are probably Indirect Deliberative Questions: “I do not know where,” etc. (§ 363).)

439

7. Concessive Clauses:

even if, although.

A Concessive Clause is so called because it "concedes" or grants an objection to the Main Clause.

1. **Etsi, etiamsi**, follow the rules of *Conditionals* (§ 395):

Etiamsi tacent, satis dicunt.

Cic. (A.)

Even if they are silent, they say enough.

Caesar, *etiamsi in nos non esset qui est, tamen ornandus videretur.*

Cic. (C. 1.)

Caesar, even if he were not to us what he is, would still seem worthy of honour.

(*Si maxime* is sometimes used, the *maxime* qualifying some special word.)

440 2. (a) **Quanquam**, with *Indicative*, of a fact:

Quanquam festinas, non est mora longa. HOR.

Though thou art in haste, the delay is not long.

441 (b) **Quamvis, licet**, with *Subjunctive*, of a thing treated as a supposition, whether it be a fact or not:

Quod turpe est, id, quamvis occultetur, tamen honestum fieri nullo modo potest. Cic.

What is disgraceful cannot, let it be concealed as much as you like, by any means become right.

1. **κεῖ** (= καὶ εἶ), **κἄν** (= καὶ εἴαν), (Neg. **μή**). (*Conditionals*, § 395.)

κεῖ μὴ πέποιθα, τοῦργον ἔστ' ἐργαστέον. AESCH. (A.)

Even if I do not believe them, the deed must be done.

ὡς εὐμαθὲς σου, κἄν ἄποπτος ἦς ὄμως, φώνημι' ἀκούω. SOPH. (Indefinite, or vague Future.)

How clearly do I hear thy voice, even though thyself may be unseen.

(With **εἰ καί**, the **καί** affects a special word: *εἰ καὶ μὴ βλέπεις*, SOPH., *though thou SEEST not*.)

2. **καίπερ**, with the Participle (Negative **οὐ**), (§ 193):

πείθου γυναίξι, καίπερ οὐ στέργων, ὄμως. AESCH. *Give way to women, though thou love them not.*

(*ὄμως*, belonging strictly to the Main Sentence, "nevertheless," is often, as here and in the last instance, absorbed into the Concessive Clause.)

Note 1.—**περ**, alone, is often used in Poetry, with the Participle:

γυνή περ οὔσα, τῷδε μηχανήσομαι. AESCH. *Though but a woman, I will contrive it for him.*

442 *Note 1.*—*Quamvis* may also be used with an *Adjective* or *Participle*. (*περ* was originally *περί*, *very*, intensive. *Cf.* *ὅσπερ*, *who indeed*.)

Note 2.—*Et* with the *Participle* may also mean “although,” the Negative form being *ne—quidem*. (*καί*, alone, with the *Participle* may also be used, the Negative form being *οὐδέ*: *καί* *εἰδώς*, *though he knew*.)

(*Quamvis* with *Indicative* is common in *Poetry*: *Quamquam* is rarely found with the *Subjunctive*.) (*Occasionally* *καίπερ* is found with an *Adjective*. Sometimes *καί* and *περ* are separated in *Poetry*.)

443 *Obs.*—Other ways of expressing *Concession* are:

(1) *Quum* with *Subjunctive*: *although* (see § 417). (1) *ἐπεὶ* with *Historic Indicative* and *ἄν* (see § 417).

(2) *Ut* with *Subjunctive*: *although* (Negative *ne*). (2) *ὡς*: *e.g.*, *ὡς Λακεδαιμόνιος*, *although a Spartan*.

(3) *Qui* with *Subjunctive* (§ 469). (3) *ὅστις* with *Indicative* (§ 469).

444 *Note.*—The following **Limitative Clauses** should also be observed:

Tantum abest ut—ut, with *Subjunctive*, *so far from*: οὐχ ὅπως—ἀλλά, *so far from*:

Tantum abest ut nostra miremur ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes. *CIC.* *So far am I from admiring my own works that not even Demosthenes satisfies me.* οὐχ ὅπως τῶν αὐτοῦ τι ἀπέδωκεν, ἀλλὰ τῶν ἡμετέρων πολλὰ ὑφῆρηται. *LYS.*

So far from giving us anything of his own, he has surreptitiously possessed himself of much of ours.

445 **Nedum**, *let alone, much less*, with *Subjunctive*: μὴ ὅπως, μὴ ὅτι, *not to say*: *viz.*, *after a Negative, much less*; *after a Positive, much more*:

Mortalia facta peribunt: οὐδὲ ἀναπνεῖν, μὴ ὅτι λέγειν δύνησόμεθα. *XEN.* *We shall not be able to recover breath, much less speak.*

Nedum sermonum stet honos et gratia vivax. *HOR.* *Mortal deeds shall pass away; much less may the grace and glory of men's words remain alive.* *χρηστοὶ γιναιξί, μὴ ὅτι ἀνδράσων.* *PLAT.*

(In *tantum abest ut* — *ut* Useful to women, but much more
both Clauses are Consecutive: so to men.
the clause with *nedum* is half- Sc., οὐ (λέγω) ὅπως, μὴ (λέγε)
final. On *dum*, *dummodo*, see ὅπως. Such Clauses are there-
§ 427.) fore really Substantival.

8. Comparative Clauses :

As, as if, than, than if.

446 By a Comparative Clause, as the name shows, one statement is compared with another.

Such Clauses fall under two heads, according as they express (a) a *fact*, “as,” “than”; (b) a *supposition*, “as if,” “than if”. In the latter case they are really Protases in B. and C., with the Apodosis suppressed (see Conditionals, § 398).

1. *As if* (a supposition).

447 **Quasi** (= *quamsi*), **tanquam** ὡς εἰ, ὥσπερ εἰ, with Optative
si, ut si, with Subjunctive : (B.) or Historic Indicative (C.):
Assimulabo quasi nunc exeam. λαοὶ ἔπονθ', ὡς εἴ τε μετὰ κτίλον
TEB. ἔσπετο μῆλα. HOM. *The host fol-
I will pretend to be just going out lowed, like sheep following after a ram*
(viz., I will look as [I should look] (viz., as they would have followed
if I were to go out: B). if they had been sheep, etc.: C.).

448 *Note.*—So **tanquam, velut, ceu**, with *si* omitted : *Note.* — ὥσπεραεἰ. Some-
times the *ἄν* of the suppressed
Apodosis is retained, imbedded
in the ὥσπερ—*ει* :

Tanquam regum arcanis interes-
set, omnia scit. LIV.

*He knows everything just as [he
would] if he were privy to the secrets
of kings.* (C. 1.)

ὥσπεραεἰ εἶποι. PLAT.
Just as if he were to say (viz.,
ὥσπερ ἄν ποιούη, εἰ εἶποι).

(These words, without the “if,” are often used with Participle :

Tanquam furatus. TAC.
As if he had stolen.)

ὥσπερ εἰδότες. PLAT.
As if they knew.)

2. *As* (a fact).

- 449 **Ut** (often with *ita*), **sicut** (= sic ut), with *Indicative* : ὡς, ὥσπερ, ὅπως, with *Indicative* (often with οὕτως) :

Ut sementem feceris, ita metes.
CIC. *As you sow, so shall you reap.*
(Observe the tenses, § 210.)

ἔστιν γὰρ οὕτως, ὥσπερ οὗτος ἐννέπει. SOPH.
For it is so, even as he says.

- 450 *Note.*—The Indefinite Conjunctions, **utcumque**, however, **prout**, according as (often with *quisque*), also take the *Indicative* : *Note.*—**Indefinites**, ἄν with *Subjunctive*, or *pure Optative* (§ 403) :

Id, prout cujusque ingenium erat, interpretabantur. LIV. *They interpreted the matter according to their respective characters.*

μαντεύομαι γὰρ ὡς ἂν ἤγηται θεός. AESCH.
For I prophesy, however god directs (Prim.).
οὕτως ὅπως τύχοιεν. THUC.
Whatever their condition (Hist.).

- 451 Observe the frequent introduction of similes, as in English, by the phrase “as when” :

Sicut ubi, with *Indicative* (as is the case when).

ὡς ὅτε, with *Indicative* (as is the case when).

- 452 Observe the idiom in Protestations, and its translation :

Ita me dii ament, ut ego nunc laetor. PLAUT.
May heaven confound me if I'm not pleased.

οὕτως ὀναίμην τούτων, ὡς ἀληθῆ πρὸς σὲ ἐρῶ. LUC.
May I lose all profit from the thing if I do not tell you true.

- 453 *Note 1.*—Expressions denoting agreement, identity, difference, show the same distinction of fact and supposition.

Idem ac, perinde ac, aliter ac, aliter quam, etc.

Longe alia nobis ac tu scripseras narrantur. CIC.
A far different version is given me to what you had sent.

If **si** is added, they take the *Subjunctive* as in § 447.

ὁμοίως καί, ὁ αὐτὸς καί, ἴσως καί, ἄλλος ἢ, etc. :

ἐνθυμέεται γὰρ οὐδεὶς ὁμοίᾳ τῇ πίστει καὶ ἔργῳ ἐπεξέρχεται. THUC.
For no one conceives a design with only the same confidence as he carries it out.

If **εἰ** is added, the Clause

Obs.—Any of these words may take either *quam* or *ac*; but *aeque quam* is rare, *similiter quam* is not used; *idem*, *perinde* take also *ut*.

Obs.—Words of difference all take ἢ; words of similarity and identity take καί, as above, or ὅσπερ.

454 (With *nihil aliud quam* the Main Verb is often omitted: (With οὐδέν ἄλλο ἢ, etc., the Main Verb is often omitted:

Venter nihil aliud quam datis voluptatibus fruitur. LIV.

The belly does nothing else but enjoy the pleasures ministered to it.)

τί ἄλλο ἢ ἱπποκένταυρος γίγνομαι; XEN.

What am I doing but becoming a centaur?

Note 2.—Comparison of Quantity.

(a) Superlatives.

455 These necessarily deal only with facts. Contrast the position of the Superlative in English.

Quam, as, Indicative:

Jugurtha quam maximas potest armat copias. SALL.

Jugurtha arms as large a force as he can.

ὥς, sometimes ὅπως, as, with Indicative:

πληροῦν ναῦς ὥς δύνανται πλείοτας. THUC. *To equip as many vessels as they can.*

(The Verb “to be able” is often omitted: hence the common Superlative phrases, “as big as possible” (§ 73).)

Note also the phrase “quam qui maxime,” *as much as a man can*, lit. “as much as a man who can most do it”.

Note.—The Indefinite ἄν with Subjunctive or pure Optative may also be used with ὥς (§ 450).

The same idiom occurs with phrases which are Superlative in sense, though not in form:

Tenuit locum tam diu quam ferre potuit laborem. CIC.

He held the position, as long as he could bear the strain.

ὥς εἶχον τάχους ἐβοήθουν. THUC. *They came to the rescue with all speed* (lit., as they had of speed: Genitive after ὥς, § 245).

(b) Comparatives.

456 These differ, as before, according as they represent fact or supposition.

Viz., **quam**, *than*, Indicative; *Viz.*, ἢ, *than*, ἢ εἰ, *than if*,
quam si, *than if*, Subjunctive. like ὡς and ὡς εἰ, *supra*.

Obs.—**Quam ut**, *than as*, *Obs.*—ἢ ὡς, *than as*, takes
 takes the Indicative, like *ut* the Indicative, like ὡς (§ 449);
 (§ 449). **Quam ut**, *than to*, ἢ ὡς, or ἢ ὥστε, *than to*, the
 takes the Subjunctive—Con- Consecutive Infinitive (§ 388):
 sequence (§ 388):

Isocrates majore ingenio est quam
 ut cum Lysiâ comparetur. CIC.

*Isocrates is too great a genius to be
 compared with Lysias (lit., greater
 than so as to be).*

ἤσθοντο αὐτὸν ἐλάσσω ἔχοντα
 δύναμιν ἢ ὥστε τοὺς φίλους ὠφε-
 λεῖν. XEN.

*They saw that he had too little
 power to help his friends (lit., less
 power than so as to).*

Quam qui is used with the
 Subjunctive in the same sense :

Malum gravius est quam quod
 ferri possit.

The evil is too great to bear.

(*Potius quam* takes the Sub-
 junctive like *quam quod*, § 411.)

In Poetry the ὥστε is often
 omitted :

τὸ γὰρ νόσημα μείζον ἢ φέρεν.
 SOPH.

The evil is too great to bear.

(See on Consecutive Clauses
 § 391.)

457 When two Comparatives are compared, *the more—the more*,
 the above Particles are not used, but

eo—quo, tanto—quanto, Ab-
 latives of Degree (§ 267):

Tanto brevis omne, quanto fe-
 licius tempus. PLINY.

*Time passes more quickly, the
 happier it is.*

τούτῳ—ᾧ, τοσοῦτῳ—ᾧ, Datives
 of Degree (§ 267):

ᾧσῳ μᾶλλον πιστεῖω, τοσοῦτῳ
 μᾶλλον ἀπορῶ. PLAT.

*The more I believe, the more at a
 loss am I.*

ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES.

Viz. Relative Clauses.

458 Relative Clauses differ according as they express

(1) A *fact*, when they are in the Indicative ; or

(2) A *purpose, consequence, cause*, or some idea other than mere fact, when they take the Subjunctive, like Final and Consecutive Clauses.

459 1. **Qui** with **Indicative** : of a fact :

Quis fuit horrendos primus qui protulit enses? OV.

Who was the man who first invented terrible swords?

460 *Note.*—So with the Indefinite quisquis, quicumque :

Sequimur te, sancte deorum, quisquis es. VIRG.

We follow thee, thou holy one of god, whoever thou art.

461 But here, as in Temporal Clauses, the Perfect, Pluperfect or Future-Perfect Indicative are often used of Indefinite frequency (§ 217) :

Imitamur quoscunque visum est. CIC.

We imitate whomever we like.

462 2. **Qui** with **Subjunctive** : Final, Consecutive, etc. :

Relative Clauses differ according as they are

(1) *Definite*, when they take the Indicative.

(2) *Indefinite*, when they take *ἄν* with Subjunctive, or Optative (§ 403).

(οἶος, ὅσος, Consecutive may take the Infinitive, like ὥστε.)

1. **Definite** : ὅς with Indicative (Negative οὐ) :

ἔστιν δίκης ὀφθαλμός, ὃς τὰ πᾶνθ' ὄρα. MENANDER.

There is an eye of justice which sees everything.

2. **Indefinite** : ἄν with Subjunctive, or Plain Optative (Negative μή), (§ 403) :

ἄπας δὲ τραχὺς ὅστις ἄν νέος κρατῇ. AESCH. (Prim.) *Every ruler is severe who is new to his power.*

ἐπιβαλόντες ὃν φέροιεν ἀπήεσαν. THUC. (Hist.) *They threw on whatever they were carrying, and so departed.*

Obs.—The Indicative may be half-Indefinite, with Neg. μή :

ἂ μή οἶδα, οὐδὲ οἶμαι εἰδῆναι. PLAT. *What I do not know, I do not think I know (cf. § 499, μή).*

Other uses of the Relative :

(a) *Final* : ὅς, ὅστις, with

(a) *Final*: qui with Subjunctive (cf. § 384):

Scribebat Aelius orationes quas alii dicerent. CIC.

Aelius used to compose speeches for other people to deliver.

(N.B.—In this Final use the Relative cannot refer to the Subject of the Main Verb, e.g., “messengers came to announce”.)

463 (b) *Consecutive*: qui with Subjunctive (cf. § 388):

Ea est Romana gens quae victa quiescere nesciat. CIC.

The Roman nation is one which cannot acquiesce in defeat (lit., is such that it cannot).

The following idioms are also Consecutive in character:

464 1. **Sunt qui**, quis est qui (nemo est quin, § 515): lit., “there are some people such that”:

Quis est cui non possit malum evenire? CIC. *Who is there to whom evil does not happen?*

(Where qui is definite the Indicative must be used:

Sunt qui non habeant, est qui non curat habere. HOR. *Some have it not, one [the writer] does not want it.*)

465 2. **Quam qui**, than to, is Consecutive; see § 456.

466 3. **Dignus**, indignus, aptus, idoneus, **qui** with Subjunctive:

Dignus est qui imperet. CIC.
He is worthy to rule.

Future Indicative (cf. § 385), Negative μή:

πέμψον τιν' ὅστις σημανεῖ.
EUR. *Send someone to proclaim.*

(Avoid using the Subjunctive here as in Latin.)

(b) *Consecutive*: two constructions are used, as with ὥστε (§ 388):

1. ὅς, or ὅστις, with the Indicative (Negative οὐ):

τίς ἐστὶν οὕτω μῶρος, ὃς θανεῖν ἐρᾷ; AESCH. *Who is so foolish as to wish to die?*

Observe also τίς ἐστὶν ὅστις, οὐδεὶς ἐστὶν ὅστις, εἶσιν οἷ, with the Indicative (Negative οὐ).

(Often ἐστὶν remains Singular, even with a Plural Relative: cf. il y a des arbres:

ἐστὶν οἱ καὶ ἐτύγγανον θωράκων.
XEN. *Some also hit the breastplates.*)

2. οἷος with the Infinitive (Negative μή):

ἐγὼ τοιοῦτος οἷος μηδενὶ ἄλλω πείθεσθαι ἢ τῷ λόγῳ. PLAT.

I am so constituted as to obey no other master but reason.

(Hence the phrase οἷος τ' εἰμί, with the Infinitive, *I am able*, lit., *I am (such an one) as to*; the τε being general, like the que in quicunque.)

- Note *Quod sciam, so far as I know.*
- 467 (c) *Causal*, "in that": qui with Subjunctive:
- Miseret tui me qui hunc facias inimicum tibi. TER. Cic.
I pity you for making this man your enemy.
- 468 This is especially common with **quippe qui**:
- Solis candor illustrior est quippe qui tam late coluceat. CIC. Cic.
The lustre of the sun is more glorious because he shines so far.
- 469 (So *qui* Concessive:
- Absolvite eum qui fateatur. CIC. Cic.
Acquit him though he confesses!
- And *qui* Limitative, especially *qui quidem*:
- Omnium quos quidem ego audiverim. CIC. Cic.
Of all the men I have ever heard of.)
- 470 (d) *Conditional*: qui = si quis:
- Qui videret equum Trojanum introductum, urbem captam diceret. CIC. Cic.
Anyone who saw the Trojan horse brought in would say the city was taken (C. 1.).
- Hæc qui videat, nonne cogatur confiteri deos esse? CIC. Cic.
If anyone were to see these things, would he not be forced to admit that there were gods? (B.)
- Note also ὅσον γ' ἔμ' εἰδέναι, so far as I know.
- (c) *Causal*, "in that": ὅς, ὅστις, with Indicative (Neg. οὐ):
- Θαυμαστόν ποιεῖς ὃς ἡμῖν οὐδὲν δίδως. XEN. Xen.
You are behaving curiously in giving us nothing.
- This is especially common with ὅς γε, ὅστις γε:
- πῶς φέρεῖς γάρ, ὅς γ' ὄχει; AR. Ar.
For how are you carrying, seeing you are being carried?
- Note the idiom with οἶος:
- τὴν μητέρα ἐμακάριζον, οἶων τέκνων ἐκύρησε. HDT. Hdt.
They congratulated the mother on having such children (ὅτι τοίων).
- (ὅς γε, οἶος γε, ὅσος γε, may all be Limitative: πάντων ὧν γ' ἐγὼ οἶδα, οἶόν γέ μοι φαίνεται, etc.)
- (d) *Conditional*: ὅς = εἴ τις (Negative μή):
- οὐκ ἂν ἀποδοίην οὐδ' ἂν ὀβολὸν οὐδεὶν, ὅστις καλέσειε κάρδοπον τὴν καρδόπην. AR. Ar.
I would not give, no, not an obol to a man who called a cardopé (kneading-trough) a cardopos.
- (ἀλλ', ὃν πόλις στήσειε, τοῦδε ἡρή κλύειν. SOPH. Soph.
But we should obey the man whom the city should set up (viz., δικαίως ἂν κλύοιμεν: § 402).)

- 471 A Relative Clause is often parenthetic. Cf. in English, "what with his faults," etc. :

Qua es prudentiâ, nihil te fugiet. οἷος ἐκείνου θυμὸς ὑπέρβιος, οὐκ
CIC. ἐθελήσει. HOM.
*Nothing will escape a man of your With his proud spirit he will not
perspicacity. care.*

- 472 A Relative Clause often embodies a fresh statement (§ 140). Cf. in English, "of whom be thou also aware" :

Quod etiam accidit. LIV. ὅπερ καὶ ἐγένετο. THUC.
And this also came to pass. And this also came to pass.

THE SUB-OBLIQUE CONJUNCTIVE.

The Subjunctive is used in sub-Oblique Clauses

- 473 (1) When subordinate to **another Subjunctive** :

In Hortensio memoria fuit tanta, ut quae secum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem red-deret. CIC.

So good was Hortensius's memory that, what he had thought out by himself, he could reproduce in the same words without a note.

(The Subjunctive, however, is rarely used in clauses subordinate to Direct Wishes: e.g., moriar, si vera non loquor, *supra*, § 397.)

- 474 (2) When Subordinate to the **Infinitive of Oratio Obliqua** :

Mos est Athenis laudari in catione eos qui sint in proeliis interfecti. NEP.

It is the custom at Athens for those

The Optative is used in sub-Oblique Clauses

- (1) For *ἄν* with **Subjunctive**, when subordinate to **another Optative** :

ἐπορεύοντο, ὅπως, ἐπειδὴ γέ-
νοιτο ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ, παρὰ τὸν
ποταμὸν ἴοιεν. THUC.

They marched on, in order that, when they reached the river, they might proceed along its banks (ὅταν γένωνται, ἴασιν).

So still more with the Optative of Direct Wishes :

ὡς ἀπόλοιτο καὶ ἄλλος, ὃ τις
τοιαῦτα γε ῥέζοι. HOM. *So perish
all who dare such deeds as he.*

- (2) For the **Indicative**, or *ἄν* with **Subjunctive**, when Subordinate to **Historic Oratio Obliqua**, Indirect Speech, Command, or Question. Thus for the Indicative :

who are slain in battle to be praised in the assembly.

- 475 *Obs.*—The Future-Perfect Indicative becomes, after a Historic Tense, the Pluperfect Subjunctive :

Ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset. CAES. *The Helvetii would be where Caesar settled them (erunt ubi constituerit).*

εἶπεν ὅτι ἄνδρα ἄγοι ὃν εἶρξαι δεῖ. XEN. *He said that he was bringing a man whom they ought to imprison (ἄνδρα ἄγοι ὃν εἶρξαι δεῖ).*

For ἄν with Subjunctive :

ἤλπιζον ἐπὶ τῶν παίδων, ἐπειδὴ τελευτήσειαν τὸν βίον, ταφήσονται. LYS. *They hoped to be buried by their children, when they died (ἐπειδὴν τελευτήσωσι ταφήσονται).*

- 476 So in Clauses “**Virtually Oblique**,” especially Causal Clauses (§ 410), but also others :

Eis qui primi murum ascendissent praemium proposuit. CAES. *He offered rewards to those who should scale the walls first (sc. se daturum).*

ᾤκτειρον εἰ ἀλώσονται. XEN. *They pitied them (thinking what they would suffer) if they were captured.*

- 477 In all these cases the Indicative is generally retained in definite statements of fact, in stereotyped phrases (“as it seems,” “as they say”), and in purely descriptive or parenthetic remarks of the author.


E.g., Apud Hypanim fluvium, qui ab Europae parte in Pontum influit, Aristoteles ait bestiolas quasdam nasci, quae unum diem vivant. CIC.

Aristotle says that on the Hypanis (this river flows into the Euxine on the European side) certain little animals come into existence only to live a single day.

Obs.—On the retention of the Present Indicative with dum, while, see § 424.

- 478 *Remark.*—The Tense of the Subjunctive in sub-Oblique

Obs.—In both (1) and (2) the Vivid Sequence always may be retained (§ 346).

 In sub-Clauses of Indirect Speech, Command or Question, the *Historic Tenses of the Indicative must be retained* (§ 347) :

ἐκέλευσέ με τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δοῦναι ἣν ἔγραψα οἰκάδε. XEN. *He ordered me to give up the letter which I had written home (not ἣν γράψαιμι).*

Remark.—In the sub-Clauses, as in the Main Clauses

Clauses, as in ordinary sub- (§ 354), of *Or. Obl.*, the Tense
 Clauses, follows the law of of the Speaker must be retained,
 Sequence (§ 344). whichever Sequence be used.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

479 The rules for *short* sentences in *Oratio Obliqua* have been given already under Substantival Clauses, *viz.*, (1) Indirect Statement (§ 348); (2) Indirect Command (§ 355); (3) Indirect Question (§ 360); and on Sub-Clauses, see the last Article (§ 474).

See also § 216 on the Tenses of the Infinitive; § 344 on Sequence of the Conjunctive; § 351 on the Pronouns.

480 The same rules apply also In Greek the original Verb cannot, as in Latin, be carried on in sense to a subsequent Indirect Command or Indirect Question; but either
 (1) Indirect Command and Indirect Question must in some way be twisted into the form of an Indirect Statement; or
 (2) A new Verb expressing Command or Question must be inserted before each Clause.
 (3) There is even sometimes a sudden return to *Or. Rect.*

But ~~as~~ there the Main Verb is not repeated before each separate Clause; and, consequently, Statement, Command and Question are distinguished only by the internal structure of these Clauses themselves, and are subject to a few peculiarities, while, owing to the length of the period, the difference of the Pronouns assumes a fresh importance.

481 *Note.*—An *Oratio Obliqua* often starts suddenly without any introductory Verb of Speaking whatsoever:
Note.—An *Oratio Obliqua* often commences without an actual introductory Verb of Speaking:

Sese omnes fientes Caesari ad pedes projecerunt: non se id contendere, etc. CAES.

Ἄγισ τοὺς πρόσβεις ἐς Λακεδαίμονα ἐκέλευσεν ἵνα· οὐ γὰρ εἶναι κύριος αὐτός. XEN.

They all cast themselves weeping at Caesar's feet : they did not want (they said), etc.

Agis told the ambassadors to go to Sparta, for he was not himself competent (he said), etc.

482 *Obs.*—Unless otherwise stated, *Oratio Obliqua* is always understood to be after *dixit*—a Third Person and a Past Tense.

Obs.—A long continuous *Oratio Obliqua* is usually Infinitival in form; but sometimes the Optative after *ῥη* is used.

☞ In turning from *Oratio Recta* into *Oratio Obliqua* and *vice versa*, it is always advisable to first alter into the required English. *E.g.*, *O. R.*, *hoc feci* ("I have done this"), becomes *O. O.*, "he had done that"—*se illud fecisse*.

☞ In dealing with long *Oratio Obliqua*, the remark made on shorter sentences should be remembered: whatever the Sequence and whether the Clause be Main or Subordinate, the Tense used by the speaker in *Oratio Recta* must always be retained.

The constructions peculiar to continuous *Oratio Obliqua*, as distinguished from shorter Indirect Statement, etc., are marked with an asterisk (*).

The following rules and examples illustrate long *Oratio Obliqua* on the two systems mentioned above.

483 After *dixit* (Historic Sequence):—

After *ῥη* (generally *Vivid Sequence*):—

1. **Statement**: *Accusative and Infinitive*.

1. **Statement**: generally *Accusative and Infinitive*; but if the speaker be the Subject, the *Nominative and Infinitive* (§ 351).

(* As the Verb of Speaking is not repeated, a negative statement is not rendered by *nego*, but by *non*.)

(The Negative is *οὐ*.)

484 2. (a) **Command**: Second or Third Person, *Imperfect Subjunctive* (Negative *ne*).

2. **Commands and Exhortations**:

* But *ut* is omitted with a Positive Command.

(1) *δεῖν*, *χρῆναι*, or a Verbal Adjective in *-τέον* with *εἶναι*: *e.g.*,

(This does not of course refer to a command dependent on a verb *inside* the *Oratio Obliqua*: e.g., *Seillis imperasse ut abirent, he had told them to depart.*)

(b) **Exhortations** in the First Person are best rendered by *debere*, or the Gerund with *esse*.

485 3. **Questions** (a) *real* questions: *Subjunctive*.

(b) * *Rhetorical* questions, expecting no answer, usually in First or Third Person, are often, though not necessarily, *Infinitive*.

(In both cases the Pronouns and Particles follow the rules of Indirect Questions, § 360.)

486 **Subordinate Clauses** of all kinds: *Historic Subjunctive*.

Note.—* *Relative Sentences* containing a fresh statement of fact are expressed by the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*:

E.g.,

Ex quo consequi. CIC.

And from this it follows.

487 **Pronouns**: none but Third Persons occur:

First Person: ego, nos, meus, noster, *become* se, suos.

Second Person: tu, vos, tuus, vester, *become* ille, illi, illius,

Λάμαχος ἔφη χρῆναι πλεῖν ἐπὶ Συρακούσας. THUC.

Lamachus said: "Let us sail against Syracuse".

(2) A fresh Verb, e.g., ἐκέλευσε δέ, with *Infinitive*; or

(3) A return to the *Oratio Recta*.

3. **Questions**: e.g., "who does not know?"

(1) *Infinitive*: e.g., ἀπορεῖν αὐτὸς ὅστις οὐκ οἶδε; or simply οὐδένα οὐκ εἰδέναι.

(2) Or a fresh Verb: e.g., ἐπήρετο δὲ ὅστις οὐκ οἶδεν.

(3) Or a return to *Oratio Recta*: τίς δέ, ἔφη, οὐκ οἶδεν;

(On the Pronouns, see § 360.)

Subordinate Clauses: usually *Vivid Sequence* (§ 477).

Note.—*Relative Clauses*, whether expressing a new fact or not, are often drawn into the *Infinitive*:

ἐπειδὴ οὐ ἐκβῆναι τὴν ψυχὴν, πορεύεσθαι. PLAT. *And when his soul departed, it went.*

Pronouns: *First Persons* become αὐτός, αὐτοί, σφᾶς, σφῶν, σφίσι.

Second and *Third Persons* become ἐκείνος, ἐκείνοι, αὐτόν, αὐτούς.

illorum, *or is*, ii, ejus, eorum.

Third Person: hic, iste, *become* ille, is. (So hic, nunc, hodie, *usually become* ibi, tunc, illo die.)

(Vocatives either disappear or are altered into some convenient case.)

Obs. 1.—*Ille* is stronger than *is*.

Obs. 2.—*Se* may refer also to the Subject of the last Verb.

Obs. 3.—*Se, ille, is, ipse.* The Pronouns must be kept clear; if *is* is used for Second Person, *ille* must be used for the Third, etc.

(Sometimes for clearness a Noun must be substituted, or the Pronoun may sometimes be omitted.)

488 These rules are illustrated in their order in the following piece :

(Statement.)

O. R.—"The enemy *are watching* an opportunity for battle: they *have surrounded* the camp, and *will soon make their attack*: indeed, but for an unforeseen chance, they *would even now be upon us.*"

O. O.—Imperator dixit hostes facultatem pugnandi opperiri, castra circumvenisse, mox impetum facturos esse: immo, nisi res quaedam improvisa intervenisset, futurum fuisse ut etiam tunc adessent.

(*ἑαυτόν, ἑαυτοῦς, σφᾶς αὐτοῦς* may refer emphatically to the speaker, or to the Subject of their own Clause. *σφέτερος* may refer, as Indirect Reflexive, to either.)

οὗτος, οὗτως, νῦν, are generally left unchanged.

Obs. 1.—*ἐκείνον* is stronger than *αὐτόν*.

Obs. 2.—*αὐτοί* and *αὐτοῦς* must be carefully distinguished in long *Oratio Obliqua*:

τοῦ δ' ἄλλοῦ λιμένος αὐτοὶ κρατήσων, καὶ συμφερομένους αὐτοῖς ταραξέσθαι. ΤΗΥΣ.

We shall be masters of the rest of the harbour, while the enemy will be crowded together and thrown into confusion.

ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς ἔφη τοὺς πολέμιους καιρὸν τε τοῦ μάχεσθαι ἐπιτηρεῖν καὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον κύκλῳ περιεστάναι καὶ προσβολὴν οὐ διὰ μακροῦ ποιήσεσθαι· εἰ μὲν οὖν μὴ ἀπροσδόκητόν τι αὐτοῖς ἐμποδῶν ἐγένετο, ἤδη ἂν σφίσι ἐμπίπτειν.

(Command.)

O. R.—“Get ready your arms and think not of surrender. Let us either conquer or die.”

O. O.—Ergo expedirent arma, ὥστε ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς τὰ ὄπλα
 neve deditionem cogitarent: aut ὡς ἐπὶ μάχῃ παρασκευάζεσθαι, μη-
 enim vincendum esse aut morien- δὲ τὰ περὶ τοῦ ἐνδοῦναι φροεῖν·
 dum. χρῆναι γὰρ ἢ νικῆσαι ἢ καὶ ἀπο-
θανεῖν.

(Question.)

O. R.—“Why do you hesitate? Does God forget the righteous? What ground have we for fear?”

O. O.—Quid tandem cunctarentur? τί δ' οὖν πότ', ἔφη, οὕτως, ὦ
 Num deos justorum hominum ἄνδρες, ἀποκνεῖτε; μὴν γὰρ ἐπε-
 oblivisci? Quam se causam timoris λήσθησαν οἱ θεοὶ τῶν δικαίων;
 habere? ἢ τίς αἰτία ὑπεστῆν ἡμῖν τοῦ
κατέχεσθαι τῷ φόβῳ;

(Subordinate Clauses.)

O. R.—“The man who has espoused the cause of justice need never tremble at death; but whatever shall prove the issue of the day, he will at least not die ingloriously, and will deserve well of his country; who, while the fates allow, cherishes the memory of her bravest citizens to the end of time.”

O. O.—Qui enim justitiam sibi ὄψω γὰρ ἂν συμπαραστῆ ἡ δίκη,
 sociam adscivisset, illum debere nun- τοῦτον οὐ δεῖν ὀρρωδεῖν τὸν θάνατον,
 quam mortem pertimescere, sed, quo- ἀλλ', ὅπως ἂν ἐκβῆ τὰ πράγματα,
 quo modo proelium evenisset, tum οὐκ ἄνευ γε τιμῆς αὐτὸν ἀποθα-
 non sine gloria saltem perituum νεῖσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀξία πράξειν τῆς
 esse, tum bene merituum de patria; πόλεως· ἦνπερ, ὅσον γε ἕξεστι
 quam quidem, dum fata sinunt, for- χρόνον, τοσοῦτον τῶν ἀνδρειοτά-
 tissimi cujusque civium semper των πολιτῶν ἀείμνηστον τὴν δόξαν
 memoriam fovere. ἀεὶ σώζειν.

(Pronouns.)

O. R.—“I then will do my part; you, my men, will not fail in yours and desert me at this great crisis; and, as for our allies, they will assuredly prove themselves worthy of the great trust which I have ever placed in them. But, most of all, you, Hipparchus, must be ready to follow me with your cavalry at the given signal.”

O. O.—Itaque et se suas partes acturum, et illos proprias ipsorum suffecturos esse, neque ipsum illo in discrimine deserturos; quod vero ad socios attineret, eos etiam fiducia illa, quam de se semper habuisset, sine dubio tum se dignos praestituros; praecipue autem Hipparchum debere signo dato cum equitibus suis ad sequendum ducem paratum esse.

αὐτὸς μὲν οὖν ἔφη ἐκτελεῖν τὰ ἑαυτοῦ, ἐκείνους δὲ τὰ τε σφῶν αὐτῶν ὑποστήσει οὐδ' ἑαυτὸν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ προδώσειν, τοὺς δ' αὖ συμμάχους τὴν πίστιν ἣν αἰεὶ περὶ αὐτῶν ἔχει, ταύτην δὴ νῦν οὐδ' ὀπωσοῖν σφαλῆναι. μάλιστα δὲ ἀπάντων δεῖν τὸν Ἴππαρχον τοὺς ἱππέας ἔχοντα παρεσκευασμένον εἶναι ὡς ἑαυτῷ ἐψόμενον.

THE NEGATIVE.

489 Non denies facts; ne denies wishes.

Ne is used:

490 (a) In **Main Sentences**:
Commands, Wishes, Exhortations.

491 (b) In **Subordinate Clauses**:
Final Clauses: including Clauses after Verbs of commanding, fearing, taking care, preventing. Note also dum, modo, dummodo, ne, *provided that not*, and nedum, *much less*, all final.

492 **Haud** is used only to qualify Adjectives and Adverbs, and in Haud scio an, *I do not know if*. (Observe also male, minus, parum, in the sense of "not".)

Otherwise non is used (and non may be used even in the above, (a) and (b), to qualify particular words, and in antitheses).

οὐ denies facts; μή denies conceptions.

μή is used:

(a) In **Main Sentences**:
Commands, Wishes, Exhortations.

(b) In **Subordinate Clauses**:
(1) *Final Clauses*: including Final Relatives, and Clauses after φοβοῦμαι and φυλάσσομαι.

(2) *Hypothetic Clauses*: including Participles used hypothetically, Indefinite Relatives (ὅστις = εἶ τις), and Indefinite Substantives or Substantival Phrases implying a hypothesis.

(3) The *Infinitive* (except in *Oratio Obliqua*).

Otherwise οὐ is used (and οὐ is used, even in the above, where the Negative coalesces with a particular word, and in antitheses).

493 Note 1.—In Questions *nonne* expects “yes,” *num* “no”; “or not” is *annon*, Direct, *necne*, Indirect.

494 Note 2.—Where *ne* is used, *neve* must be used for “and not”; *ne unquam* for *nunquam*, etc.

495 Instances are given in the Syntax of the Sentence; note also the following contrasts:

Main Sentences:

Non dicat, *he would not say* (statement).

Ne dicat, *let him not say* (command).

Subordinate Clauses:

Sic castra munivit ut ea hostes expugnare non possent. *He fortified the camp so strongly that the enemy could not take it.* (Consequence.)

Sic castra munivit ne ea hostes expugnare possent. *He fortified the camp in this way that the enemy might not take it.* (Purpose.)

496 Observe *ne* with **dum, modo, dummodo**, *provided that*:

Dum ne tibi videar, non laboro. Cic.

Provided I do not seem so to you, I do not trouble myself.

497 Note.—In all clauses, Main or Subordinate, where *ne* is used, *neve*, *ne quid*, *ne unquam*, etc., must also be used; not *neque*, *nihil*, *nunquam*, etc.:

Note 1.—In Questions οὐ = *nonne*, μή = *num*. μή is also used in Deliberative Questions.

Note 2.—The rules which apply to οὐ and μή apply also to their compounds, οὐδέ, μηδέ, οὐπω, μήπω, etc.

The Participle:

οὐκ εὐτυχούσαι δόξετ' οὐχὶ δυστυχεῖν. EUR.

You shall seem to be not unfortunate, though you are not fortunate (fact). (Hence οὐ with καίτερ.)

οὐκ ἂν δύναιο, μὴ καμών, εὐδαιμονεῖν. EUR. *You could not be happy if you did not toil* (hypothesis).

The Infinitive:

ἔλεγον οὐκ εἶναι αὐτόνομοι. THUC. *They said they were not independent* (Oratio Obliqua).

ἔλεγον αὐτοῖς μὴ ἀδικεῖν. THUC. *They told them not to do wrong* (Indirect Command).

(τὸ μὴ γενέσθαι τῷ θανεῖν ἴσον λέγω. EUR. *I account not-to-be-born the same as to be dead.* μή, regular Negative with Infinitive.)

The chief difficulty occurs with **Substantival and Adjectival Phrases** (with μή an “if” may always be traced):

Ne unquam peccaveris, *never do wrong.*

Curavit, ne quid detrimenti respublica caperet.

He took care that the state should suffer no harm.

498 **Haud**: in the phrase *Haud scio an*, *I almost think*; otherwise only with Adjectives and Adverbs:

Haud ignota loquor. VIRG.
I say what is not unknown.

499 **Male, parum, minus**, as a mild Negative, chiefly with Adjectives and Adverbs—*minus* also with Verbs: *male sanus*, *not in his senses*; *parum concinne*, *not neatly*; *minus sapiens*, *not wise*:

Nonnunquam ea, quae praedicta sunt, minus eveniunt. CIC.
Predictions sometimes do not quite come true.

So often, *Sin minus*, as a sentence, *but if it is not so*.

500 *Obs.* 1.—“**Non**” for “**ne**” (1) **coalescing**, (2) **in antithesis**:

(1) *Et sit humus cineri non onerosa tuo.* OV. *And may the earth lie lightly on thy ashes!*

(2) *Aut non tentaris aut perforce.* OV. *Either do not try, or succeed.*

So *neque* for *neve* in antithesis after a Positive:

γράφας τὴν τῶν γεφυρῶν οὐ διάλυσιν. THUC.

Mentioning the fact of the non-destruction of the bridge (fact).

δεινὸν δ' ἔστιν ἢ μὴ ἐμπειρία. ARIST. *Want of skill is a terrible thing (if anyone wants).*

αἱ οὐκ ὀρθαὶ πολιτεῖαι αὐται. PLAT. *These incorrect forms of government (a definite lot).*

οἱ μὴ καθαρὸι τὰς χεῖρας. ANTIPH. *Those who are not clean-handed (if any are not).*

So with **Relatives**, etc.:

ἃ μὴ οἶδα οὐδὲ οἶσμαι εἰδέναι. PLAT. *What I don't know, I do not think I know (if I don't know).*

οὐκ ἔστι τοῖς μὴ δρῶσι σύμμαχος τύχη. *Fortune does not help those who do not help themselves (if they don't, etc.).*

(*ἃ οὐκ οἶδα, τοῖς οὐ δρῶσι*, would refer to definite things and definite people.)

In all these *μή* has an Indefinite, Generic force.

Obs. 1.—*οὐ* for *μή* (1) **coalescing**, (2) **in antithesis**:

(1) *εἰ ἀποστῆναι Ἀθηναίων οὐκ ἠθελήσαμεν, οὐκ ἠδικούμεν.* THUC.

If we were unwilling to revolt from Athens, we were not doing wrong.

(*μή* is usual in “if” clauses.)

(2) *κελεύει οὐκ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ θεάτρῳ τὴν ἀνάρρησιν*

Transque caput jace nec respex-
eris. VIRG.

*Cast it over thy head nor look be-
hind thee.*

- 501 *Obs.* 2.—*Ne* is not used for *non* except in the phrase *ne*—*quidem*, *not even*, and in compounds, *nescio*, *nequeo*, *necopinatus*, etc.

(Instances of the use of *ne* for *ut non* are only apparent. Thus :

*Id ne fieri posset, oppidi circum-
munitione fiebat.* CAES.

*This was being rendered impos-
sible by the circumvallation of the
town.*

Ne shows that the result was also Caesar's object.)

- 502 In Poetry there is some licence in the use of *non* for *ne* in Direct Commands and Wishes :

Non Teucros agat in Rutulos.
VIRG. *Let him not lead the Rutulians
against the Teucrians.*

- 503 So, still more often, in the use of *neque* for *neve* :

*Nemo me dacrumis decoret neque
funera fletu faxit.* ENNIUS.

*Let no one honour me, with tears,
nor celebrate my funeral with weep-
ing.* (Faxit = faciat.)

In Prose *nemo* also would be *ne, quis*. (On the redundant Negative in *neque* see § 508.)

γίγνεσθαι. AESCHIN. *He ordered
the proclamation to be made not in the
public assembly, but in the theatre.*

(*μή* is usual with Infinitive.)

- Obs.* 2.—*μή* is sometimes used where we should expect *οὐ* :

(1) In *Oratio Obliqua*, regularly with Future Infinitive after *ἐπιζῶ*; sometimes also with Verbs of Perception, e.g., *οἶδα*. In all these not only a fact, but the mere idea of it is denied.

(2) Often in *Indirect Questions* after *εἰ*, including the alternative *ἢ μή*, or *not*. This is from false analogy with *εἰ*, hypothetical.

(Apparent exceptions can usually be explained: e.g.,

δίδασκέ μ' ὡς μὴ εἰδῶτα (SOPH.),
(Imperative affects it).

χρῆν οὐ σ' ἀμαρτάνειν (EUR.),
(from the usual *οὐ χρῆ*, § 505).

Note.—*οὐδεῖς*, *μηδεῖς*, *οὐδέν*, *μηδέν*, are peculiar. *οὐδεῖς* often "a nobody," *μηδεῖς* of "the dead"; *οὐδέν* what is really nothing, *μηδέν* what is practically nothing. Thus, *τὸ μηδέν εἰς οὐδὲν ῥέπει* (EUR.). On the whole *μηδέν* is preferred; but rhythm, metre, etc., often decide alone.

Position of the Negative.

504 The Negative is often thrown back on the Main Verb, where in English it is attached to the Subordinate Verb :

E.g., nego, *I say not* (§ 348),
not dico non.

E.g., οὐ φημί, *I say not* ; οὐκ οἶμαι, *I think not*.

505 The Negative impress is usually stamped on a sentence as soon as possible, *e.g.*, with the copula : neque, *and—not* ; nec quisquam, *and no one*. But with possum the non is often reserved :

The Negative thus sometimes becomes οὐ, where, if left to the Infinitive, it would have been μή : *e.g.*, οὐκ ἀξιῶ, *I beg not* ; οὐ χρή, *we ought not* ; οὐκ ἐῶ, *I forbid*. But with ὄφελον in Wishes (§ 333) it remains μή :

Pompeius munitiones Caesaris prohibere non poterat. CAES.

Pompey could not stop Caesar's circumvallation.

μή ποτ' ὄφελον λιπεῖν τὴν Σκύρον. SOPH.

Would I had never left Scyros !

Repetition of the Negative.

506 (1) **As a rule, both Negatives count, as in English :** Nemo non, *every one* ; non nemo, *some one* ; nihil non, *everything* ; nonnihil, *something* ; nonnulli, *some (non ulli, none)* ; non possum non, *I cannot help—* ; (non modo sometimes = non modo non, *not only not*).

(1) **If a simple Negative comes second, both count :** οὐδείς οὐκ ἔπασχε (XEN.), *every-one suffered* ; lit., (there was) no one (who) did not suffer.

οὐδείς οὐκ and οὐ μόνον οὐ are almost the only instances ; for the latter οὐ μόνον is sometimes used.

507 (2) **But redundancy occurs if a Negative is followed by (a) Ne—quidem or non modo :**

Quid praeterea sit bonum, negat Epicurus se posse ne suspicari quidem. CIC.

Epicurus says he cannot even guess what further good there is.

(2) **If a compound Negative comes second, it is redundant :**

ἀκούει δ' οὐδὲν οὐδείς οὐδενός. EUR. *And no one obeys any one in anything.*

μηπότ' ἀσεβῆς μηδὲν μήτε ποιήσῃτε μήτε βουλευσῃτε. XEN.

Never do or think anything unholy.

- 508 (b) **Neque—neque**, or even one **neque** :

Nemo unquam neque poeta neque orator fuit. CIC.

There was never either a poet or an orator.

(So, neque faxit, § 503.)

- 509 *Obs.* 1.—*Nemo non, non possum non*, should be compared with *nemo est quin, facere non possum quin* (§ 514).

Obs. 2.—Observe *ne non* after Verbs of Fearing :

Timeo ne non venerit.

I fear he has not come.

(See *supra*, § 371.)

Quominus.

- 510 Quominus is used with the Subjunctive after Verbs of *hindering* and *abstaining*: e.g.,

Non recusabo quominus omnes mea legant. CIC.

I shall not object to every one reading what I write.

Observe the idiom, *per aliquem stat quominus* :

Per Afranium stetit quominus dimicaretur. CAES.

It was through Afranius that no battle was fought.

- 511 *Note.*—These Verbs may also take *ne* and Subjunctive, or the Infinitive; *prohibeo* prefers the Infinitive. (With *quominus* a Negative need not precede.)

(A redundant Negative sometimes follows οὐ μᾶλλον ἢ :

ἦκει γὰρ ὁ Πέρσης οὐδὲν τι μᾶλλον ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἢ οὐ καὶ ἐφ' ὑμᾶς.

HDT. *The Persian has come no more against us than you.* Cf. Plus vite que tu ne penses.)

Note. — If the Negatives differ in kind, both count: e.g.,

οὐ δύναμαι μὴ γελάω. XEN.

I cannot help laughing.

φοβοῦμαι μὴ οὐκ ἀληθὲς ᾖ.

I fear lest this may not be true.

(The uses of μὴ and μὴ οὐ which follow are exceptional.)

Redundant μὴ.

μὴ may precede the Infinitive after verbs with a negative idea:

(a) Verbs of *preventing* and *abstaining*: e.g.,

θνητούς γ' ἔπαυσα μὴ προδέρκεσθαι μόρον. AESCH. *I stopped mortals from foreseeing their destiny.*

(b) Verbs of *denying*, *doubting*, *distrusting*, *forbidding* :

ὁ Πρηξάσπης ἔξαρνος ἦν μὴ ἀποκτεῖναι Σμέρδιν. HDT.

Prexaspes denied that he had killed Smerdis.

Note.—Verbs of Preventing may take (1) Infinitive; (2) μὴ and Infinitive; (3) τοῦ with Infinitive; (4) τοῦ μὴ with Infinitive.

Quin.

512 Quin with **Subjunctive** is used only after a Negative or quasi-Negative (e.g., such words as *vis, aegre*, "hardly," or questions expecting the answer "no"):

(1) (a) With Verbs of *preventing* and *abstaining* (cf. § 510):

Aegre sunt retenti quin oppidum irrumperent. CAES.

They were hardly prevented from breaking into the town.

(b) Verbs of *doubting* and *denying*:

Quis dubitat quin in virtute divitiarum positae sint? CIC.

Who doubts that true wealth lies in virtue?

So non dubium est, nihil dubii est, quin, *there is no doubt that.* (Distinguish dubito with Infinitive, *I hesitate to do a thing*: like timeo with Infin.)

513 (2) Any phrase, when Negated, may be followed by a Consecutive *quin*, as an alternative for *ut non*, "that not":

Nunquam tam male est Siculis quin aliquid facere dicant. CAES.

The Sicilians are never in such a bad way that they cannot say something witty.

514 *Note.*—Observe the phrases, *facere non possum quin, I*

μή οὐ.

Any Verb which, for *any* reason, when Positive takes *μή* with **Infinitive** may when Negated take *μή οὐ*.

(1) Verbs which take redundant *μή* with Infinitive, § 510.

(a) With Verbs of *preventing* and *abstaining*:

οὐ δυνατόν αὐτὸν ἴσχειν εἶσιν Ἀργεῖοι μὴ οὐκ ἐξίέναι. HDT.

The Argives cannot prevent him from going out.

(b) Verbs of *denying*, *doubting*, *distrusting*, *forbidding*:

τίνα οἶε ἀπαρνήσεσθαι μὴ οὐχὶ ἐπίστασθαι τὰ δίκαια; PLAT.

Who do you think will deny that he knows what is right?

So with phrases like *τί ἐμποδῶν μὴ οὐ;* *What is to prevent, etc.?*

(The Questions in these last two are quasi-Negative.)

(2) Any Verb, with *μή* and Infinitive, where *μή* means "not": e.g.,

οὗτος μὲν ἂν πείσειε μὴ ἐλθεῖν.
He would persuade me NOT to come. Becomes, when Negated:

οὐδεὶς μὲν ἂν πείσειε μὴ οὐκ ἐλθεῖν. ARISTOPH.
No one would persuade me NOT to come.

In this sense *μή οὐ* occurs with a hypohetic **Participle**:

cannot but; fieri non potest quin, it cannot but be that; nihil abest quin, it is almost the case that:

Facere non possum quin cotidie literas ad te mittam. CIC.

I cannot but send you a letter every day.

Nihil abest quin sim miserrimus. CIC.

Nothing is wanting to complete my misery.

(This is the Negative of tantum abest ut, so far from, § 444.)

515 (3) Observe the phrase, nemo est quin, there is no one who—not:

In castello nemo fuit militum quin vulneraretur. CAES.

There was not a man in the fort who was not wounded.

516 *Obs.* 1.—Quin after Verbal phrases, as in (1) and (2), is an Adverb, qui-ne, how not; quin after nemo est, as in (3), is a Relative, qui-ne, who not. In this use it is mainly Nomina-tive, qui-ne, quae-ne, quod-ne: for the Accusative, quem non or quin eum is preferred.

Obs. 2.—Contrast the Eng-lish of non dubito quin, "I do not doubt that," and nemo est quin, "there is no one that

δυσάλγητος γὰρ ἂν εἶην μὴ οὐ κατοικτείρων. SOPH.

I should be hard-hearted if I did not pity (δυσάλγητος, quasi-Negative).

(3) From these uses must be distinguished μὴ and μὴ οὐ with **Subjunctive**, after a Verb of Fearing understood (§ 371):

μὴ ἀγροικότερον ἢ τὸ ἀληθὲς εἰπεῖν. PLAT. (I am afraid lest) it may be rather blunt to speak the truth.

ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐ τοῦτ' ἢ χαλεπὸν, θάνατον ἐκφυγεῖν. PLAT. (I am afraid lest) it may not be difficult to escape death.

Obs.—Three uses of μὴ οὐ must therefore be distinguished:

(1) (a) and (b), prevent, deny, with Infinitive; both οὐ and μὴ redundant.

(2) Any Verb, with Infinitive or Participle: οὐ alone redun-dant. (Allied to (1).)

(3) μὴ οὐ with Subjunctive: neither Negative redundant.

οὐ μὴ

(1) With the **Aorist Subjunctive** (less often First or Third Person of Future Indica-tive) expresses a *strong denial*:

οὐ μὴ παύσῃμαι φιλοσοφῶν. PLAT. I will assuredly not cease the pursuit of philosophy.

not". In both quin may be translated "but".

517 Beside its use with the Subjunctive, quin has other uses :

(1) Quin, *why not* : Interrogative: usually Present **Indicative** :

Quin potius pacem aeternam exercemus? VIRG.

Why do we not rather engage in eternal peace? (For Tense, see § 201.)

518 (2) Quin, *nay rather* : with **Imperative** :

Quin morere. VIRG.

Nay, rather die.

519 So with Statements, especially in the phrase **quinetiam**, *moreover* :

Ausus quin etiam voces jactare per umbram. VIRG.

Daring moreover to shout aloud through the gloom.

(ἀλλ' εἴσθ'· οὐ σοι μὴ μεθέξομαι ποτε. SOPH. *But enter: I will never follow thee.*)

(2) With the **Second Person Future Indicative**, Interrogative, expresses a *strong prohibition* (οὐ may be continued to a second Clause) :

οὐ μὴ προσοίσεις χεῖρα, μῆδ' ἄψει πέπλων; EUR.

Do not lay hand on me or touch my robes (sc. οὐ μὴ ἄψει).

(Here οὐ μὴ is the Negative form of οὐ: e.g., οὐ πράξεις; will you not do it? i.e., *do it!* οὐ μὴ πράξεις; will you not not-do it? i.e., *do not do it!*)

Obs.—The Subjunctive use may be employed in Prose; the Future Indicative, in both senses, is poetic. (See *Excursus*, § 600.)

PART IV.

APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

FIGURES OF SPEECH.

1. Alliteration.

520 The repetition of the same consonantal sound: *e.g.*, “The wisdom of many and the wit of one”:

O Tite tute Tati tibi tanta ty-	Σῶσος μὲν σωθεῖς, Σωσῶ δ' ὅτι
ranne, tulisti? ENNIUS.	Σῶσος ἐσώθη. SIMONIDES.
<i>O Titus Tattius, hast thou taken so</i>	<i>Sosos being saved; Soso, because</i>
<i>much on thee, thou tyrant?</i>	<i>Sosos was saved.</i>

Distinguish “Assonance”—the repetition of the same vowel sounds (see *inf.*, § 542, “Paronomasia”).

521

2. Analogy.

“Comparison”: *e.g.*, an Intransitive Verb often takes an Accusative, on the “analogy” of another Verb, which is Transitive:

Ardebat Alexin. VIRG.	κίνδυνον ὑπεξέστη. THUC.
<i>He loved Alexin (sc., amabat).</i>	<i>He avoided danger (sc., ὑπέφυγεν).</i>
So Ardet abire fugâ (VIRG.),	(So ἔχω λέγειν, sc., δύναμαι
<i>he burns to fly (sc., cupit).</i>	<i>λέγειν.)</i>

522

3. Anakoluthon

(*An*, “not”; *akoloutheo*, “follow”).

“Non-sequence” of construction. This is especially common with the *Nominativus Pendens*—Nominative without a Verb:

Galea alta Chimaeram sustinet,	λόγοι δ' ἐν ἀλλήλοισιν ἐρρόθουν
efflantem ignes, tam magis illa fre-	κακοί
mens. VIRG. <i>His lofty helmet bears</i>	φύλαξ ἐλέγχων φύλακα. SOPH.
<i>the Chimaera, breathing flames, but</i>	<i>Hard words were bandied among</i>
<i>now raging yet the more.</i>	<i>them, guard blaming guard.</i>

523

4. Antiptosis

Or Attic Construction (*anti*, "before"; *ptosis*, "falling").

The "anticipation," as Object in the Main Clause, of a Noun which is Subject in the Subordinate Clause:

Nosti Marcellum, quam tardus ἀνῆρετ' ἄρτι Χαιρεφῶντα Σωκρά-
sit. Cic. τῆς

You know Marcellus, how slow ψύλλαν, ὅπόσους ἄλλοιτο τοὺς
he is. (Cf. in English: "I know αὐτῆς πόδας. ARISTOPH.
thee who thou art").

(This construction is not so Socrates asked Chaerephon the
common in Latin as in Greek.) other day about a flea, how many of
its own feet it jumped.

524

5. Antithesis

(*Anti*, "against"; *tithēmi*, "I set").

The contrast of "opposites," whether in two clauses or in one. In clauses

Latin usually omits the Con- Greek generally points the
junctive Particle: antithesis with μέν and δέ:

Solitudinem faciunt, pacem ap- λόγῳ μὲν δημοκρατία, ἔργῳ δὲ
pellant. Tac. ἀρχή. THUC.

They make a solitude and call it *In theory a democracy, in reality*
peace. *a despotism.*

525

6. Aposiopesis

(*Aposiopao*, "I am silent").

The sudden cessation of a Sentence before its conclusion: *e.g.*, "Bertrand is—what I dare not name" (SCOTT).

Quos ego—sed motos praestat εὐδαιμονοίης, Τηλέφῳ δ' ἀγῶ
componere fluctus. VIRG. φρονῶ. ARISTOPH.

I'll soon—but now I must allay *To you all happiness! to Telephus*
the troubled flood. *—I won't say what I think.*

526

7. Asyndeton

(*A*, "not"; *syndeo*, "bind together").

The omission of the Conjunctive Particle: *cf.*, "Ah, miserable, false, unkind, untrue!" (TENNYSON); see further § 325:

Abit, excessit, evasit, erupit. εὐδομες εὖ μάλα μακρὸν ἀτέρ-
 Cic. μονα νήγρετον ὕπνον. MOSCH.
 He departed, he went out, he We sleep well that long, unending,
 hastened out, he dashed out. unawaking sleep.

527

8. Attraction.

The "drawing" of one word into the construction of another :
 see under Attraction, §§ 551-558 : also Optative, § 345.

528

9. Brachylogy

(*Brachys*, "short").

The suppression of part of a phrase—especially common in
 comparisons (*Comparatio Compendiaria*):

Aetas parentum peior avis. HOR. κομαὶ Χαρίτεσσιν ὁμοῖαι. HOM.
 The age of our fathers worse than Hair like unto (that of) the
 (that of) our grandfathers. Graces.

529

10. Chiasmus

(Greek letter chi : X).

The cross-wise arrangement of contrasted terms, so that the
 means and extremes correspond respectively together :

Ratio consentit, repugnat oratio. ἡδονὴ βραχεῖα μακρὰν τίκει
 Cic. Reason consents, but rhythm λύπην. PLAT.
 is opposed. Brief pleasure breeds long pain.

530

11. Constructio ad sensum

(Sense-construction : see *infra*, § 559).

531

12. Ellipse

(*Elleipsis*, "omission").

The omission of a word: *e.g.*, "St. Paul's" (Cathedral); "out
 with thee!" *sc.*, "go out":

Ad Vestae, to *Vesta's* (temple); εἰς Αἴδου, to (the house of)
 calda, *sc.*, aqua, warm water. Hades; οὐκ ἐκτός (*sc.*, εἶ); away!

So entire clauses may be omitted, *e.g.*, in Wishes: "If only
 this were true!" (*sc.*, I should be glad). But explanation of
 construction by ellipse should be regarded with caution.

532

13. Epithets

(Special uses of).

Passive for Active: cf. Milton, "The sleepy drench of that forgetful lake," of the effect produced:

Rugosum piper. PERS.	χλωρὸν δέος. HOM.
<i>Wrinkled pepper.</i>	<i>Pale fear.</i>

Active for Passive: cf. Shakespeare, "Upon the sightless couriers of the air" (*viz.*, unseen):

Merentes poenas. VIRG.	ναυσὶν ἐμπείροις. THUC.
<i>Deserving punishments.</i>	<i>Vessels proved by use.</i>

Compound Adjectives are specially variable in this way:

Velivolae naves. OV.	ἄγελαι βούνομοι. SOPH.
<i>Sail-flying ships.</i>	<i>Herds of grazing kine.</i>
Velivolium mare. VIRG.	βούνομον ἄκτάν. SOPH.
<i>The sail-flown sea.</i>	<i>A shore grazed on by kine.</i>

Attributive Epithet: *viz.*, Adjective for Possessive Genitive: cf. "Above the flight of Pegasean wing" (MILTON):

Hectoreum ad tumulum. VIRG.	Τελαμώνιος Αἴας. HOM.
<i>At Hector's tomb.</i>	<i>Ajax, son of Telamon.</i>

Literary Epithet: giving the place most famous for a thing: *Perpetual Epithet*: e.g., γῆ πολυβότειρα (HOM.), the fertile earth (used even of level land selected for a chariot-race).

Hyblaeis apibus. VIRG.	
<i>Bees of Hybla.</i>	

On "Transferred Epithet" see Hypallage, § 534; on the Proleptic use of Adjectives see Prolepsis, § 545.

533

14. Hendiadys

(*Hen*, "one"; *dia duoin*, "through two").

The expression of a Noun and Attribute by two Nouns and a Copulative Conjunction:

Pateris libamus et auro. VIRG.	βότα καὶ λείαν. SOPH.
<i>We pour from golden cups.</i>	<i>Plundered kine.</i>

534

15. Hypallage

(Hypo, allasso, "change").

The transference of an Epithet from one word to another; or the interchange of construction between two words:

Nemeaeus hiatus leonis. LUCR.	ὄγκον ὀνόματος μητρῶν. SOPH.
<i>(I.e., Hiatus Nemeaei leonis.)</i>	<i>Motherly boast of a name (i.e.,</i>
Sese tulit obvia mater. VIRG.	ὄγκον ὀνόματος μητρῶν, the boast
<i>(I.e., Sese tulit obviam.)</i>	<i>of a mother's name.)</i>
Dare classibus austros. VIRG.	γραῖαι ὄσσων πηγαί, aged foun-
<i>(I.e., Dare classes austris.)</i>	<i>tains of eyes.</i>

Cf., "With the innumerable sound of hymns and sacred songs" (MILTON). (This use is also called *Metathesis*.)

535

16. Hyperbaton

(Hyper, "over"; baino, "go").

The trespassing of a word from its own phrase or clause into another:

Ajax cum immeritos occidit desipit agnos. HOR.	ὥσπερ με τὸν Ἀθάμανθ' ὅπως μὴ θύσετε. ARISTOPH.
<i>Ajax is mad while he slays the harmless lambs.</i>	<i>Mind you do not sacrifice me like Athamas.</i>

Hyperbaton is specially common of the Personal Pronoun in adjurations:

Per te deos oro. HOR.	πρὸς νῦν σε πατὸς ἰκνούμαι. SOPH.
<i>I entreat thee by the gods.</i>	<i>I pray thee by thy father.</i>

536

17. Hysteron Proteron

("Last first").

The placing first of an idea which is last in point of time: *cf.* "I die, I faint, I fail" (SHELLEY), (also called *Prothusteron*):

Moriamur et in media arma ruamus. VIRG.	τὰς μὲν ἄρα θρέψασα τεκοῦσα τε. HOM.
<i>Let us die and rush into the midst of the battle.</i>	<i>Having nourished them and borne them.</i>

537

18. Litotes

(*Leios*, "smooth").

Rhetorical understatement. Frequent in colloquial English :
"just a little," *i.e.*, very much.

Illaudatus Busiris. VIRG. οὐχ ἤκιστα, *i.e.*, μάλιστα, very
Unpraised Busiris (*viz.*, accursed). much.

538

19. Metaphor

("Transference" : *Translatio verborum* (CIC.)).

The transference of a term from its literal meaning to one derived—especially from a physical to a mental sense :

Mens exaestuat irā. VIRG. πόλις σαλεύει. SOPH. The city
The mind surges with wrath. is tossed upon a sea of troubles.

(A metaphor is, in its first use, a compressed similé ; thus "The moon sails across the sky" means literally, "As a ship sails across the sea, so the moon passes across the sky". But when such a phrase has been long absorbed into a language, it almost ceases to be metaphorical ; thus "sail" has almost passed into a commonplace for "move".)

A word on the border-land of Metaphor is often qualified by some saving phrase :

E.g., Quasi, tanquam, qui- *Viz.*, ὡς, ἅτε, ὥσπερανεί, τις,
dam, ut ita dicam : ὡς εἰπεῖν :

Philosophia artium quasi parens. *E.g.*, Σκύλλα τις. A very Scylla.
CIC. (Such qualification is not so
Philosophy, the parent of all arts. common in Greek as in Latin.)

539

20. Onomatopoeia

(*Onoma*, "a name" or "word" ; *ποιουμαι*, "represent").

The representation of sense by sound ; *e.g.*, "Myriads of rivulets hurrying through the lawn" (TENNYSON) :

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu
quatit ungula campum. VIRG. πολλά δ' ἄναντα, κάταντα, πά-
paws the soil to dust (of a horse). ραντά τε, δόχμια τ' ἤλθον. HOM.
 Oft up and down, sideways, aslant,
 they went (of jolting carts).

540

21. Oxymoron

(Oxus, "sharp"; moros, "dull").

The combination of conflicting words; e.g., "And faith unfaithful kept him falsely true" (TENNYSON):

Impietas pia. Ov.
Pious impiety.

γάμος ἄγαμος. SOPH.
A marriage that is no marriage.

541

22. Paraprosdokian

(Para, etc., "contrary to expectation").

An unexpected turn to a sentence, especially in the form of a sudden bathos at the end (also called *παρ' ὑπόνοιαν*):

Nullis aconita propinquis miscuit
—Troica non scripsit. JUV.

He never mixed poison for his
relatives, he never wrote a poem like
the Troica.

Frequent in Aristophanes:

ἄνθρωπος ἀμείνων περὶ σε καὶ τὴν
γαστέρα. AR. (Sc., τὴν πόλιν.)
A man who does better for you and
your constitution.

This use is common in Elizabethan Poetry:

"Where thou, great Anna, whom three realms obey,
Dost sometimes counsel take and sometimes—tea".

542

23. Paronomasia

(Para, "alongside"; onoma, "word").

The juxtaposition of words of similar sound, especially frequent in proverbs and epigrams (cf. Assonance, § 1):

Urbem fecisti quod prius orbis
erat. PROP. Thou hast made into
a city what was a world before.

παθήματα μαθήματα. HDT. I.e.,
"one learns by experience" (cf.
Eng. "might is right").

543

24. Periphrasis

I.e. Circumlocution (N.B. circuitus verborum (CIC.) means
a period in Prose).

With Substantives this is especially common of a Noun and
Genitive: cf. "The might of Gabriel fought" (MILTON):

Venit et Crispi jucunda senectus.	τοῦ δ' ἤκουσ' ἱερῆ ἴς Τελεμάχου.
JUV.	ΗΟΜ.
<i>There comes, too, the genial old age</i>	<i>And the mighty prince Telemachus</i>
<i>of Crispinus (viz., the old man C.).</i>	<i>heard him (lit., "great might of").</i>

(The "Periphrastic Tenses" (§ 211) are so called as being a circumlocution for the simple tenses.)

544

25. Pleonasm

(*Pleon*, "more," *i.e.*, than is required).

Redundancy of expression—the use of superfluous words; *e.g.*, "we have seen with our eyes":

Insonuere cavæ gemitumque	πανύστατον δὴ κόῦπος' ἀδῆις
dedere cavernæ. VIRG.	ἕσπερον. SOPH.
<i>Its cavernous hollows echoed and</i>	<i>For the last time and never more</i>
<i>moaned again.</i>	<i>again.</i>

545

26. Prolepsis

I.e., Anticipation (*pro*, "before"; *lambano*, "take").

The use of an Adjective, Participle, or Preposition, before its sense is due: *cf.* "So those two brothers and their murdered man Rode past fair Arno" (KEATS). A Proleptic Adjective often expresses the effect of a Verbal Action:

Montes umbrantur opaci. VIRG.	τῶν σῶν ἀδέρκτων ὀμμάτων
<i>The hills are veiled in darkness.</i>	τηρώμενος. SOPH.
Virgil is specially fond of this	<i>Reft of thine eyes that ne'er shall</i>
use.	<i>see again.</i>

546

27. Syllepsis

(*Syllambano*, "take together").

The use of a word with two others, to both of which it applies properly but in a different sense (contrast Zeugma): *cf.* Pope, "This general is a great taker of snuff as well as of towns":

Regnator, coelum et terras qui
numine torquet. VIRG.

*The monarch, who rules the (re-
volving) sky and the land with his
divine will. (Coelum torquet, "re-
volves the sky".)*

ἔλεν δ' Οἰνομάου βίαν παρθένου
τε σύνευνον. PIND.

*He o'ercame the might of Oeno-
maus, and (won) the virgin for his
bride.*

(Frequent in Aristophanes.)

547

28. Tmesis

The breaking of a word into two parts (Greek, *temno*, *I cut*).

This is rare in Latin, but
instances occur :

Saxo cere comminuit brum. ENN.
He broke his head with a stone
(cerebrum comminuit).

Occurs chiefly with the Pre-
positions of Compound Verbs :

ἂν δ' Ὀδυσσεὺς πολύμητις ἀνί-
στατο. HOM.

And up the wary Odysseus rose.

548

29. Zeugma

("A yoking together").

The use of a word with two others, to one of which alone it
applies properly (contrast "Syllepsis"): cf. Pope, "See Pan
with flocks, with fruits Pomona crowned" (*i.e.*, surrounded
with flocks):

Audis quo strepitu janua remugiat
Et positas ut glaciēt nives Jup-
piter? HOR.

*Dost thou hear how loudly the
door creaks, and (see) how the god of
heaven turns the fallen snow to ice?*

Ἄνδροφάγοι ἐσθήτα φορέουσι τῆ
Σκυθικῆ ὁμοίην, γλῶσσαν δὲ ἰδίην.
HDT.

*The Androphagi wear raiment like
the Scythian, but (speak) a language
of their own.*

549

30. Certain Metrical and Other Terms.

A **Spondaic Hexameter** is one which has a Spondee instead
of a Dactyl in the Fifth Foot :

Armatusque auro circumpicit
Oriona. VIRG.

*He looks round and sees Orion
armed with gold.*

ἑσταότες παρ' ὄχσεσφιν, ἐύθρονον
ἦώ μίμων. HOM.

*Standing beside the chariots, they
awaited the golden dawn.*

A short syllable is sometimes made long **in arsi**, *viz.*, if the accent of the foot falls on it (*arsis*, a “raising,” *i.e.*, of the voice):

Dona dehinc auro graviâ sectoque ἠέλι', ἦτο: μὲν σὺ μετ' ἀθανάτοισι
elephantō. VIRG. φάεινε.

A long syllable is sometimes made short **in thesi**, *viz.*, where the accent does not fall (*thesis*, a “lowering,” *i.e.*, of the voice):

Obstipui, stetēruntque comae: ἀλλ' ἴομεν, κεινοὺς δὲ κ.τ.λ.
vox faucibus haesit. VIRG. HOM. (*sc. ἴωμεν*, let us go).

Sometimes a line, so to speak, overflows. This is called **Hypermeter** (“over-measure”). The extra syllable always ends in an open vowel, which elides before an open vowel at the beginning of the next line:

Quos super atra silex jamjam lapsura cadentique Imminet adsimilis. VIRG. (Of the rock of Tantalus.)	In Greek this is almost confined to δ' in Tragedy, the two lines being treated as one: Synaphea, “a bind- ing-together”.
--	---

550 **Crasis**, the “mixing,” or coalition, of two words in one, usually with a modification of them both:

Rare in Latin, except viden' *E.g.*, κἀγώ = καὶ ἐγώ, τάνδρι
= videsne, audin' = audisne. = τῷ ἀνδρί, θάτερον = τὸ ἕτερον.

Synizesis, the “settling together” of two syllables in the same word into one; especially found with a “y” sound: *e.g.*,
Abiete, as a dactyl, ābyētē. πόλεως, as an iambus, πὸλυῶς.

551

Excursus I.

ATTRACTION.

The Syntax of the Concords is considerably affected by Attraction:

(1) The Concord of the Verb.

A Copulative Verb is sometimes attracted to the Number of the Predicate: *cf.* “the wages of sin is death”:

Amantium irae amoris integratio est. TER. *The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love.* αἱ Θῆβαι Αἴγυπτος ἐκαλεῖτο. HDT. *Thebes used to be called Egypt.*

552 (2) The Concord of the Relative.

(a) Attraction of the Relative to the Gender and Number of the Predicate, with Copulative and Factitive Verbs :

Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est. LIV. *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia (§ 51).* ὁ φόβος, ἣν αἶδω εἶπομεν. PLAT. *The fear which we called shame.*

553 (b) Attraction of the Relative to the Case of its Antecedent :

Chiefly with the Ablative Absolute :

Quibus quisque poterat elatis. LIV. *Every man carrying out what he could.* ἄμαθέστατοι ἔστε ὧν ἐγὼ οἶδα Ἑλλήνων. THUC. *You are the most ignorant of all the Greeks I know.*

Obs.—Quivis, quilibet, whoever : the Relative is attracted to the Case of its Antecedent : in quivis, from the Accusative, is quem vis ; in quilibet, from the Nominative, is qui libet.

Obs.—With οἶος this occurs even from the Nominative :

χαριζόμενος οἶψ σοὶ ἀνδρί. XEN. *Doing a favour to a man like you (τοιούτῳ ἀνδρὶ, οἶος σὺ εἶ).*

554 (c) Attraction of the Antecedent to the Case of the Relative : "Inverse Attraction" :

Urbem, quam statuo, vestra est. VIRG. *The city which I am founding is yours.* τὴν οὐσίαν, ἣν κατέλιπεν, οὐ πλείονος ἀξία ἐστίν. LYS. *The inheritance, which he last left, is not worth more.*

555 (d) The bodily Attraction of the Antecedent into the Relative Clause (see § 138).

556 (3) The Concord of the Adjective and Substantive (Vocative Attraction).

The Predicate of a Copulative Verb is sometimes attracted into the Vocative of the Person addressed :

- Macte nova virtute, puer. VIRG. ὄλβιε, κῶρε, γένοιο.
Go on in thy youthful valour, O THEOCR.
my son (sc., mactus esto). *O boy, mayst thou be happy.*
- 557 (Many cases, however, of "Vocative Attraction" are doubtful:
cf. "Or hearst thou rather, pure ethereal stream" (MILTON):
- Matutine pater, seu Janes libentius audis. HOR. *O Father of the* ἀντὶ γὰρ ἐκλήθης Ἴμβρασε Παρθενίου. CALLIM.
morning, or, O Janus, if thou wouldst *For thou wert addressed "O Imbrasus," instead of "Parthenius".*
be rather so addressed.)
- 558 (Note the common **attraction to the Dative** in names: **Adverbial form** in
 Volitans, cui nomen asilo. VIRG. θαυμασίως ὡς ἄθλιος. PLAT.
An insect, whose name is asilus.) *Wonderfully wretched (viz., θαυμάσιόν ἐστιν ὡς, it is wonderful how.)*
 (Chiefly with Relative Clauses.)

559

Excursus II.

SENSE CONSTRUCTION.

The Syntax of the Concord is also much affected by considerations of sense:

(1) The Concord of the Verb.

A Noun of Multitude may take a Plural Verb (see § 49).

(2) The Concord of the Adjective.

- Capita conjurationis securibus percussi sunt. LIV. φίλε τέκνον. HOM. *Dear child.*
The ringleaders of the plot were Common with Diminutives:
beheaded. κολλικοφάγε Βοιωτίδιον. AR.
Little roll-eating Boeotian.
- 560 An Adjective sometimes agrees with a Noun, especially a Pronoun, contained in another word:
- Respublica meâ unius operâ salva erat. CIC. τὰμὰ δυστήνου κακά. SOPH.
The state was saved by *The woes of me wretched.*
the help of me alone. (Sc. ἐμοῦ δυστήνου.)

(3) The Concord of the Substantive (Apposition).

561 A Substantive sometimes stands in Apposition to a Substantive contained in another word :

<p>Tuum, hominis simplicis, pectus vidimus. CIC.</p> <p><i>We have seen the heart of you, a simple man.</i></p>	<p>Ἴθθαλαῖος ὢν, πόλεως τῆς μεγίσ- της. PLAT.</p> <p><i>Being a citizen of Athens, the greatest city.</i></p>
---	---

562 Apposition is often loose in kind—sometimes referring in *sense* to the sentence rather than to a given Noun :

<p>Sed puer est, aetas mollis et apta regi. OV.</p> <p><i>But he (Cupid) is a boy—an age malleable and easy to control.</i></p>	<p>εὐδαιμονοίης, μισθὸν ἡδίστων λόγων. EUR. <i>May you be happy, as a reward for your good news.</i></p>
---	--

Ingenti subiere feretro, triste ministerium. VIRG.

*They shouldered the huge bier, a
melancholy service.*

(In such instances as the last a Neuter Noun is generally used, and the case is probably a Nominative, not an "Accusative in Apposition to the Sentence," as it is sometimes called: the Nominative being exclamatory (§ 238).

But, owing to the gender, it is hard to decide the case.)

(This is usually called "the Accusative in Apposition to the Sentence": strictly speaking it is half Adverbial or Cognate. More commonly there is some

Noun to which the word may in *grammar*, however loosely, be referred; and the word differs in case accordingly: *e.g.*,

<p>Ἑλένην κτάνωμεν, Μενέλεω λύ- πην πικράν. EUR. <i>Let us slay Helen, a bitter grief to Menelaus.</i></p>	<p>τῆς Σικελίας ἀπάσης, μεγάλου ἔργου, ἐφίεσθαι. THUC.</p>
--	--

*To have designs on all Sicily, an
ambitious plan.)*

563 (4) The Concord of the Relative.

<p>Ubi est scelus qui me perdidit? TER.</p> <p><i>Where is the villain who has ruined me?</i></p>	<p>φίλον θάλος, ὃν τέκον αὐτή. HOM.</p> <p><i>Dear scion, whom I myself did bear.</i></p>
---	---

564

(5) The Composite Subject.

Quibus ipse meique vescor. HOR. <i>Whereon I myself feed, with my family.</i> (Sc. ipse cum meis.)	ἐπίθετο τὸν Στρομβιχίδην καὶ τὰς ναῦς ἀπεληλυθότα. THUC. <i>He heard that Strombichides had departed with his ships.</i>
Bocchus cum peditibus aciem invadunt. SALL. <i>Bocchus and his infantry attack the line.</i> (Sc. Bocchus et pedites.)	Δημοσθένης μετὰ τῶν ξυστρατηγῶν σπεύδονται. THUC. <i>Demosthenes and his colleagues make all speed.</i>

Excursus III.

THE CASES.

565

The Nominative.

Audi tu, populus Albanus. LIV. <i>Hearken thou, people of Alba</i> (Nominative for Vocative).	ὦ παῖ Πηλέως, πατήρ δ' ἐμός. <i>O son of Peleus, father mine</i> (Nominative for Vocative).
---	---

(See also Nominativus Pendens, § 522; Nominative Attraction, § 351; Nominative and Infinitive, § 179.)

The Vocative

(See Attraction, § 556).

The Accusative.

566 For the Direct Accusative **after Intransitive Verbs** used Transitivity, see § 147. Note also :

Egressis urbem Albanis. LIV. <i>When the Albans had left the city.</i>	σπάντες δ' ὄθ' αὐτοὺς οἱ τεταγμένοι βραβῆς κλήρους ἔπηλαν. SOPH. <i>And standing where the appointed umpires had allotted them their place (κλήρους ἔπηλαν = ἔταξαν).</i>
Atilium suâ manu spargentem semen convenerunt. CIC. <i>They found Atilius sowing seed with his own hand.</i>	

567 The Direct Accusative which follows the Active is sometimes retained **after the Passive** :

Nascuntur flores inscripti nomina
regum. VIRG.

*Flowers are born inscribed with
names of kings.*

οἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἐπιτετραμμένοι
τὴν φυλακὴν. THUC.

*Those of the Athenians who had
been entrusted with the watch.*

(Note that the Passive Participle here conceals what would
be a Dative of the Indirect Object in the Active phrase.)

568 The Direct Accusative sometimes follows **Verbal Nouns** and
Adjectives :

Vitabundus classem hostium.
SALL. *Wishing to avoid the fleet of
the enemy.*

Quid tibi hanc tactio est? PLAUT.
*What do you mean by touching
her?*

(See also Gerund, § 184 ;
Anticipatory Accusative, § 523.)

πόλεμος ἄπορα πόριμος. AESCH.
*War making possible the impos-
sible.*

Σωκράτης τὰ μετέωρα φροντισ-
τῆς. PLAT. *Socrates, a student of
the things of heaven.*

(See also Verbals, § 189 ;
Anticipatory Accusative, § 523.)

569 The **Cognate Accusative** may express the sphere or the effect
of an action, suggest resemblance, or show the character of
an action in other ways :

Equus vicit Olympia. ENN.
The horse won in the Olympia.

Nec vox hominem sonat. VIRG.
Nor doth thy voice sound human.

Cyclops moveri. HOR.
To dance like a Cyclops.

Resonant acalanthida dumi.
VIRG.
*The thickets are loud with gold-
finches.*

Rumpere vocem. VIRG.
To break into utterance.

Ὀλύμπια νικᾶν. THUC.
To win the Olympia.

δίκην ὀφλεῖν. DEM.
To lose in a law-suit.

ψήφισμα νικᾶν. AESCHIN.
To carry a decree.

βλέπειν νᾶπυ. AR.
To look mustard.

ἔαρ θ' ὀροῶσα Νυχεῖα. THEOC.
Nycheia with her April eyes (A. Lang).

ῥῆξαι φωνήν. AR.
To break into utterance.

570 The **Adverbial Accusative** is sometimes Neuter Plural :

Stabat acerba fremens. VIRG.
*He stood there in the bitterness of
his rage.*

δεινὰ δ' ὑπόδρα ἰδών. HOM.
With dreadful looks askance.
(So the Superl. Adv. ῥᾶστα, etc.)

The Genitive.

The Genitive.

571 The Objective Genitive generally represents the Direct Accusative after a Verb ; sometimes it is more loosely used :

<p><i>Ira inritata deorum.</i> VIRG. <i>Incensed with anger against the gods.</i></p>	<p><i>τὸ τῶν Μεγαρέων ψήφισμα.</i> THUC. <i>The decree about the Megarians.</i></p>
---	---

572 Many instances are **Greek**. Note also the following :

<p><i>Da noctis mediae.</i> HOR. <i>Pour a libation in honour of midnight</i> (Objective, Greek : Cause).</p>	<p><i>σπέισον ἀγαθοῦ δαίμονος.</i> AR. <i>Pour libation in honour of the good genius</i> (Cause, § 256).</p>
---	--

<p><i>Iustitiaene prius mirer belline laborum?</i> VIRG. <i>Am I to admire him most for his goodness, or his toils in war?</i> (Cause: Greek.)</p>	<p><i>ὦ δυσθέατον ὄμμα καὶ τόλμησ πικρᾶς.</i> SOPH. <i>O sight cruel and of fatal rashness</i> (Quality, § 247).</p>
--	--

<p><i>Qua Daunus agrestium regnavit populorum.</i> HOR. <i>Where Daunus reigned over rural peoples</i> (Objective, Greek).</p>	<p><i>μέγα χρῆμα σῦός.</i> HDT. <i>A monster of a boar</i> (Definition).</p>
--	--

<p><i>Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium.</i> HOR. <i>You shall become (one) of noble fountains</i> (Partitive, Greek).</p>	<p><i>βέβασιν ἄρτι δωμάτων ὑπόστεγοι.</i> SOPH. <i>They have just passed within the shelter of the house</i> (Genitive after Substantive contained in ὑπόστεγοι).</p>
--	---

<p><i>Desine mollium tandem querelorum.</i> HOR. <i>Cease at length from unmanly plaint</i> (Ablative, Greek).</p>	<p><i>ἀλλ' ἔστι τοῦ λέγοντος, ἦν φόβος λέγῃ.</i> SOPH. <i>But is swayed by the speaker, if he counsel fear</i> (Possessive, § 289).</p>
--	---

573 The Possessive Genitive is sometimes emphasised by Adjectives, "peculiar to," "common to," "sacred to" :

<p><i>Viz., proprius, communis, sacer</i> (sacer, also Dative) :</p>	<p><i>Viz., οἰκεῖος, ἴδιος, κοινός, ἱερός</i> (all these also, Dative) :</p>
--	--

<p><i>Terra sacra deorum omnium est.</i> CIC. <i>The earth is sacred to all the gods.</i></p>	<p><i>γῆ ἱερὰ πάντων θεῶν.</i> PLAT. <i>The earth is sacred to all the gods.</i></p>
---	--

574 The Ablative.

Assiduo ruptae lectore columnae.
JUV. *Columns broken by perpetual reciters* (Agent, without *ab*, or Ablative of Cause, § 270: "perpetual recitation").

C. Fleginatem Placentia. CAES.
C. Fleginas of Placentia (Origin, § 261, with Substantives).

Neve putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum. HOR.

And do not consider any one else than the wise and good to be happy (in Prose *alius ac*, Separative Ablative).

Note the Gen. of Ablation in:
κείσαι σᾶς ἀλόχου σφαγείας
Αἰγίσθου τε. EUR.

Thou liest slain by thy wife and Aegisthus (Agent without ὑπο; but many instances are half Comparative, e.g., after ἡσσάομαι).

Occasionally the Genitive Absolute is expressed by two Nouns (*cf.* Latin Abl. Abs.):

ὄρνις ὧν ὑφηγητῶν ἐγὼ
κτενεῖν ἔμελλον πατέρα τὸν ἐμόν.
SOPH.

The birds by whose augury I was to slay my father.

575 The Dative.

Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti. HOR. *Any one who preserves another against his will, does the same as if he killed him* (Indirect Dative).

576 It clamor coelo. VIRG.
A cry goes up to heaven (Dative of Motion to: Poetic).

Carmina quae scribuntur aquae potoribus. HOR. *Poems written by water-drinkers* (Dat. of Agent, § 287).

577 Quibus volentibus bellum erat. TAC. *Who wished for war?* (lit., "to whom, not wishing it," Greek).

Note.—Scribo ad te is more common than scribo tibi.

578 Note.—The "**Dative of the Thing**" is used with (*a*) the Verb *to be* (§ 288); (*b*) Verbs of *imputing*, e.g., Vitio vertere

The Dative.

τὸν αὐτὸν χώρον ἐκλιπὼν ἐμοί.
AESCH.

Leaving the same place as I.

(On the analogy of ὁμοιος: usually ὁ αὐτὸς κάλ.)

πολλὰς δ' ἰφθίμου ψυχὰς Ἄϊδι
προΐαψεν. HOM.

And many a brave spirit did he hurl to Hell (Dative of Motion to: half recipience, Hades being also a person: but *cf.* ποῖ, whither (?)).

τῷ πλήθει τῶν Πλαταιῶν οὐ
βουλομένῳ ἦν τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἀφίστασθαι. THUC. *The populace of Plataea did not wish to revolt from the Athenians* (Dative of Interest).

Note.—The **Dative of Interest** is not infrequently used with Participles, as above: lit., "to revolt was not to them wish-

alicui, to impute as a fault to any one; (c) Verbs of going, sending, giving, with auxilio, praesidio, subsidio. Sometimes with Substantives, e.g.,

Signum receptui. Cic.

The signal for retreat.

On its use with Gerunds and Gerundives, see § 600.

ing it," viz., not in accordance with their wishes. It is also used absolutely: e.g.,

ὡς γ' ἐμοὶ κριτῆ.

In my judgment.

συνελόντι εἰπεῖν. Xen.

To speak briefly (Absolute Infinitive, § 176: also συνελόντι alone, without the Infinitive).

Place where, whither, whence.

579 Note 1.—The Plain **Ablative of Place** Where is used (a) with the words parte, regione, loco, dextra, laeva, medio, terra marique; (b) in the sense of "on" or "over," with an epithet, especially medius and totus. Other instances are probably Instrumental (§ 266), e.g., manu tenens, holding in (viz., with) the hand, or of the Road by which, e.g., Missa Pado (VIRG.), sped down the Po.

(In Poetry there is some licence, but not in the sense of "in".)

Note 2.—Domus, when qualified, may have a Preposition: e.g.,

In domum veterem e novâ. Cic.
From a new house to an old one.

Notice the combination:

Milites Albae constiterunt, in urbe opportunâ. Cic. The troops halted at Alba, a convenient city.

Note.—A **Genitive of Place** Where sometimes occurs in Poetry. The Genitive must be here considered as expressing an antecedent condition from which the notion of the Verb originates (cf. the Genitive with πρὸς and with ἀκοίω): e.g.,

ἑσχάτης ὀρῶ

πυρῶς νεωρῆ βόστρυχον τετμημένον. SOPH. On the edge of the pyre I behold a lock of new-cut hair.

So of Place "over which":

ἡμερεύοντας ξένους μακρῶς κελεύθου. AESCH. Strangers spending the day on a long journey.

(The following Prose instances are either Partitive, Possessive, or of Respect:

ἐπετάχονον τῆς ὁδοῦ. THUC. They hurried them on their way. (Part.)

Οἰνὴ τῆς Ἀττικῆς. THUC.

Oenoe (of) in Attica. (Possess.)

προκόπτειν τῆς ἀρχῆς (THUC.), "in respect of," or after πρὸς.)

580 In Poetry the **Preposition** is sometimes **omitted**, where we should expect one, of Place Where, Whither, Whence :

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) <i>Italiam venit.</i> VIRG.
<i>He came to Italy.</i> | (1) <i>πύργους ἔπλευσε.</i> EUR.
<i>She sailed to the towers.</i> |
| (2) <i>Carceribus missos currus.</i>
VIRG. <i>Cars sped from the barriers.</i> | (2) <i>νεὼς ἄγοντα.</i> SOPH.
<i>Bringing from the ship.</i> |
| (3) <i>Pagasaeis collibus.</i> OV.
<i>On Pagasaeon hills.</i> | (3) <i>μέγας οὐρανῷ Ζεὺς.</i> SOPH.
<i>Zeus is great in heaven.</i> |

Excursus IV. THE MOODS.

Indicative, Imperative, Conjunctive.

- 581 *Pollio amat nostram, quamvis est rustica, Musam.* VIRG.
Pollio loves my Muse, though she is but a country-maid.
(*Quamvis* with Indicative; frequent in Poetry, § 441.)
- 582 *Tityre, dum redeo, brevis est via, pasce capellas.* VIRG.
Feed my she-goats till I return.
Dum fugeret, hydrum non vidit.
VIRG. *While flying from thee she saw not the serpent.*
(*Dum redeo* perhaps "while I am on my way back," viz., *dum absum*, purely temporal (§ 424); *dum fugeret* perhaps really purpose—in her hurry to escape (§ 426).)
- 583 *Rediit paullo post quod se oblitum nescio quid diceret.* CIC.
He returned shortly after, because he said he had forgotten something.
(Subjunctive of Virtual Or.
- ἀνωλόλυξε πρὶν γ' ὄρᾱ.* EUR.
She cried out before she saw.
(After a Positive *πρὶν* usually takes a vague Infinitive, § 429: the Indicative here marks an actual fact.)
- ἦδέως ἂν Καλλικλεῖ διελεγόμην, ἕως ἀπέδωκα.* PLAT.
I would gladly have conversed with Callicles till I had repaid it.
(*ἕως*, Indefinite, with the Indicative. The Optative would be usual (§ 426).)
- The **Relative with Subjunctive of Purpose** (cf. Latin):
- πρέσβεις ἄγουσα οἵπερ φράσωσιν.* THUC.
Conveying ambassadors who were to announce (§ 462).
- ὅπως with Future Indicative of Purpose**: poetic (§ 385):

Obl. (§ 476) transferred to Verb of speaking itself (§ 410.).

584 **Ut ne** is used sometimes for *ne* in Final Clauses :

Ad me velim scribas, ut prorsus ne quid ignorem. CIC.

I should like you to write to me that I may not be utterly ignorant of anything.

585 **Quemcunque** *lictor* *prehendisset*, *tribunus mitti jubebat.* LIV.

Whoever the lictor seized the tribune would order to be set free.

(*Prehendisset*, **Frequentative Conjunctive** : Greek.

Latin generally uses the **Perfects Indicative** (§ 217).)

586 **Conditionals** :

Quid, si hostes ad urbem veniant, facturi estis? LIV.

What would you do if the enemy were to come to the city? (*Facturi estis*, periphrasis for *faciatis*, § 402.)

Si fractus illabatur orbis, impavidum ferient ruinae. HOR.

If the earth should crack and crumble away, the blow of ruin will leave him undismayed (*vidid* *Future Indicative*, § 406).

Solus eram, si non saevus adesset amor. OV.

I was alone, had not cruel love been with me (*Vivid Indicative*, § 406).

Et faceret, si non aera repulsa sonent. TIB.

ἔλγει ὄπως Ἴθάκης ἐπιλήσεται.
HOM. *She charms him so that he shall forget Ithaca.*

The **Future Indicative** used like the **Present** and **Aorist Indicative** (§ 372) of a fear that amounts to a belief or opinion :

φοβοῦμαι μὴ εὕρησομεν. PLAT.
I am afraid that we shall find.

On the **omission of ἄν with Subjunctive** after *ἕως*, *πρίν*, *μέχρι*, see § 217. Note also the poetic usages with *ὄς* :

γέροντα δ' ὄρθοῦν φλαῦρον, ὄς νέος πέσῃ. SOPH.

'Tis an idle thing to uplift in old age a man who falls in youth.

Conditionals :

ἡ πόλις ἐκινδύνευσε πᾶσα διαφθαρήναι, εἰ ἄνεμος ἐπεγένετο. THUC. *The city was in danger of being destroyed, had a wind sprung up* (*ἐκινδ.* *διαφ.*, periphrasis for *διεφθάρη ἄν*, § 402).

δυστάλαινα τᾶρ' ἐγὼ, εἴ σου στερηθῶ. SOPH. *Unhappy then am I, if I am to be deprived of thee* (probably deliberative, suggesting the question, ἄρά σου στερηθῶ ; *Am I to be deprived?* (§ 396)).

εἰ θέλομεν σκοπεῖν τὰς φύσεις τὰς τῶν ἀνθρώπων, εὕρησομεν. ISOCR. *If we cared to consider the natures of men we shall find* (*Irregular combination of Protasis in B with Apodosis in A*, § 398).

And would do so, did not the clashing cymbals sound. (Tibullus often uses this irregular combination of primary and historic.)

Delitui dum vela darent, si forte dedissent. VIRG.

I lay hid till they should sail, in case they should do so (= in Oratio Recta, si forte dederint, effugiam).

587 Commands :

At tu dictis, Albane, maneres. VIRG.

You should have abided by your words, O man of Alba.

Quid facere debuisti? Frumentum ne emisses, sumpsisses id nummorum. CIC.

What ought you to have done? You ought not to have bought the corn, you ought to have taken that amount of money.

(Maneres, emisses, sumpsisses are Past Jussive.)

588 Observe, moreover, the following **ways of expressing a Direct Command**, beside those given § 330 :

(a) *Present Subjunctive* (you = anyone, vague) : audias ; ne audias.

(b) *Future Indicative* (strong command, "thou shalt") : audies ; non audies.

(c) *Imperative in -to* (legal) : audito ; ne audito.

(On cura, cave, see § 370.)

εἰ γὰρ οἱτοὶ ὀρθῶς ἀπέστησαν, ἡμεῖς ἂν οὐ χρεῶν ἄρχοιτε. THUC.

If these had a right to secede, it follows that your empire would be unjust (= συμβαίνει ὥστε, εἰ χρεῶν πρᾶττοιτε, οὐκ ἂν ἄρχοιτε).

N.B.—πῶς ἂν θάνομι ; would I could die : a Wish.

Commands :

φέρ', ὦ τέκνον, μάθης. SOPH.
Come, my son, learn.

μὴ φεῦσον ἐλπίδος. ARIST.
Balk me not of my hope.

μὴδ' ἢ βία σε νικησάτω. SOPH.
Let not force o'ercome thee.

(The Subjunctive is rare of a Positive Command, the Aorist Imperative of a Negative Command (§ 330), though less so in the Third Person.)

(a) *Optative with ἄν* (polite) : λέγοις ἄν, kindly speak (Neg. οὐ).

(b) *Future Indicative statement* (thou shalt) : ποιήσεις, οὐ ποιήσεις.

(c) *Future Indicative question* with οὐ and οὐ μὴ (§ 516).

(On ὅπως with Fut. Ind. see § 370.)

589 Remark.—The **Primary and Historic Sequence** are sometimes found combined, especially

in long *Oratio Obliqua*, either for variety or for the sake of vividness. This is very common in Caesar, even after a Historic Tense: *e.g.*, *B. G.*, i., 14: Caesar *respondit* . . . quod *teneret* . . . quominus *accidissent*. *Cum sint* . . . quas intulerint . . . si *satisfaciant*.

in *Oratio Obliqua*, sometimes for variety, sometimes with a difference in sense—the Indicative expressing the more certain or more important fact:

οἱτοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος μὲν τέθνηκεν, Ἀριαῖος δὲ πεφευγὼς ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ εἶη. XEN. *They said that Cyrus was dead and that Ariaeus had fled and was in the camp.*

590 So in Final Clauses, sometimes for variety, sometimes to distinguish the nearer consequence from the more remote:

Mago nuntios Carthaginem ad senatum mittit, qui hortentur ut auxilia mitterent. LIV.

Mago sent messengers to the senate at Carthage to exhort them to send further help.

παρανίσχον δὲ φρυκτοὺς, ὅπως ἀσαφῆ τὰ σημεῖα τοῖς πολεμίοις ἦ καὶ μὴ βοηθοῖεν. THUC. *They displayed beacons that the enemy might be confused as to the signals, and so might not come to the rescue.*

Excursus V.

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLE.

The Infinitive.

591 **The Infinitive as a Noun:**

Hoc ridere meum nullā tibi vendo Iliade. PERS. *This laugh of mine I will not sell you for an Iliad.*

Inter optime valere et gravissime aegrotare nihil prorsus dicunt interesse. CIC. *They say there is no difference whatever between the best of health and serious illness.*

(Not usually qualified by an Attribute, hoc, meum; with Prepositions the Gerund is usual.)

The Infinitive as a Noun:

αὐτό μὲν γὰρ τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν οὐδεὶς φοβεῖται. PLAT.

For of mere dying no one is afraid.

ἀντὶ μὲν δούλων ἐποίησας ἐλευθέρους Πέρσας εἶναι, ἀντὶ δὲ ἄρχεσθαι ὑπ' ἄλλων, ἄρχειν ἀπάντων. HDT. *You made the Persians to rule all instead of being ruled by others.*

(No other word but αὐτό can qualify an Infinitive; after Prepositions the Article τό is usually prefixed.)

592 **Poetic Infinitives, where Prose would use ut and Subjunctive:**

Stabant orantes primi transmittere cursum. VIRG. *They stood there praying to be the first to cross.*

Impulerat ferro Argolicas foedare latebras. VIRG. *He had driven us to probe the hiding-place of the Argives with our swords.*

593 Legati veniunt speculari. LIV. *Ambassadors come to reconnoitre.*

Proteus pecus egit altos visere montes. HOR. *Proteus drove his flock to visit the high mountains.*

(Here *transmittere* and *foedare* are less noticeable, owing to the ordinary Prolative Infinitive after *cupio* and *cogo* (§§ 357, 366); *speculari* and *visere* are the more irregular as expressing separate purpose (§ 384).)

594 **With Substantives and Adjectives:** see § 177.

Notice also *Amor cognoscere* (VIRG.), *desire to know*; *Prose, cognoscendi*. *Cantari dignus* (VIRG.), *worthy to be sung*; *Prose, qui cantetur* (§ 465).

595 And the Greek Infinitives: *Blandus ducere* (HOR.), *cunning at leading*; *Niveus videri* (HOR.), *snowy to look upon* (Epexegetic). Horace is specially fond of these.

The Infinitive with Verbs of Command, etc., is sometimes preceded by *ὥστε* (§ 355):

οὐ γὰρ ἐπειθε τοὺς Χίους ὥστε ἔωυτῷ δοῦναι νέας. HDT.

For he did not persuade the Chians to give him ships.

So the Prolative Infinitive has sometimes the **Article**:

τὸ δρᾶν οὐκ ἠθέλησαν. SOPH. *They did not wish to do it.*

So the Absolute Infinitive (§ 176):

τὸ ἐπὶ σφᾶς εἶναι. THUC. *So far as they were concerned.*

The Infinitive sometimes expresses **purpose**:

μανθάνειν γὰρ ἤκομεν. SOPH. *For we are come to learn.*

The Subject of the **Absolute Infinitive of Command** is generally Accusative, as the Object of, e.g., *κελεύω* (§ 176); sometimes it is Vocative or Nominative, *ἔθελε* being understood:

ὦ ξείν', ἀγγέλλειν Λακεδαιμονίους. SIMON.

Stranger, go tell the Spartans.

The **Epexegetic Infinitive** sometimes explains Substantives (§ 183):

χρυσήλατον γὰρ ἄνδρα τευχησ-
τὴν ἰδεῖν. AESCH. *A warrior to look upon, in golden armour clad.*

The Participle.

- 596 The **Neuter Participle** is sometimes used practically as a **Substantive** :

Notumque furens quid femina possit. VIRG.

And the knowledge of what a frenzied woman can do.

So also Ante expectatum (VIRG.), *before it could be expected* (sc. antequam expectari posset).

- 597 **Ablative Absolute without a Noun** :

Excepto quod non simul esses, caetera laetus. HOR.

Except for the fact that you were not with me, happy in all else.

(So also in the phrases, Explorato, *after exploring*; augurato, *the auguries being taken*; necopinato, *contrary to expectation*, etc.: these are frequent in Livy.)

- 598 *Note.*—The **Supplementary Participle** occurs commonly in Latin with certain Verbs, e.g., video, audio, nuntio, invenio, see § 198; in Poetry its use goes further. With both the Participle and the Infinitive the **Nominative Attraction** is found in Poetry, in imitation of the Greek :

καὶ αὐτῷ ἔτι ῥώμην καὶ ἡ νῆσος ἐμπρηθεῖσα παρέσχε. THUC.

The conflagration of the islan also helped him further.

(Sc. τὸ τὴν νῆσον ἐμπρηθῆναι, cf. Latin, Caesar occisus. So μετὰ Σολῶνα οἰχώμενον (HDT.), *after Solon's departure*; ἐς ἥλιον καταδύντα, *to sunset*.)

Note the **Neuters in Thucydides**: τὸ θαρσοῦν, *the confident party*; τὸ δεδιὸς αὐτοῦ, *the fact that he was afraid*.

Note, beside δέον, etc., the **Accusative Absolute**, εἰρημένον, γεγραμμένον, δυνατὸν ὄν. (The Accusative Absolute never has a Substantive: e.g., φόνον λύντας, ὡς τόδ' αἷμα χεῖμαζον πόλιν (SOPH.), *atoning for the murder, as it is this deed of blood that troubles the city*; αἷμα is in Apposition to φόνον.)

Note.—Verbs that commonly take the Participle are sometimes found with the **Infinitive**, and *vice versa* (§§ 348, 350), when either class approaches the other in sense:

ἀλλ' ἴσθι τοι τὰ σκληρ' ἄγαν φρονήματα πίπτειν μάλιστα. SOPH.

But know that too proud spirits most often fall.

Sensit medios delapsus in hostes.
VIRG.

He felt him fallen into the midst of foes.

Phaselus ille ait fuisse navium celerrimus. CATUL.

That pinnace avows that he was once the swiftest of ships.

(Note also Gaudent perfusi sanguine fratrum (VIRG.), *they rejoice to be bedewed in a brother's blood*; ne falleret incedens (LIV.), *lest he should march undiscovered*; fallit sorte beator (HOR.), *sc. λανθάνει ὀλβιωτέρα οὔσα τῇ τύχῃ*, lit., *escapes his notice being happier in its lot*: all of which are imitations of the Supplementary Participle in Greek.

The Tenses of the Infinitive and Participle (§ 216).

599 The want of a **Present Participle Passive** and **Past Participle Active** led to some irregularities:

Præ se actam prædam ostentantes. LIV. *Showing the booty they were driving before them.*

Eum prius incertis implicantes responsis. LIV. *Having first involved him in ambiguous answers.*

(The first—the use of the Past Participle Passive as a Present—is common; the other rarer.)

πότερόν σε φῶμεν σπουδάζοντα ἢ παίζοντα; PLAT.

Are we to conceive of you as being in earnest or jesting?

(Cf. English, "I saw him run"—I saw him running.)

Sometimes the **Accusative** is used **of the Subject of the Main Verb**: Κροῖσος ἐνόμισε ἔωντὸν εἶναι ὀλβιώτατον (HDT.).

Note the omission of the Participle in εἰδὼς εἰτρεπέως ἡμᾶς (DEM., 45); νῦν δ' ἀγροῖσι τυγχάνει (SOPH., *El.*, 313).

Note ἄν with Participle:

χωρὶς τῆς περιστάσης ἄν ἡμᾶς αἰσχύνῃς, εἰ καθυφείμεθά τι τῶν πραγμάτων. DEM. *Apart from the disgrace which would attach to us, if we were to let go any of our interests.*

The want of a **separate Participle and Infinitive for the Imperfect** led to some irregularities:

τίνας ποτ' εὐχὰς ὑπολαμβάνει εὔχεσθαι τὸν Φίλιππον, ὅτ' ἔσπενδεν; DEM.

What prayers do you think Philip was offering when he was pouring libation?

οἱ συμπρεσβεύοντες καὶ παρόντες καταμαρτυρήσουσιν. DEM.

Those who were his colleagues, and who were present at the time, will witness against him.

With **memini** the Present Infinitive is often Imperfect:

Ego Metellum memini puer bonis esse viribus. CIC.

I remember as a boy that Metellus was hale and strong.

With **μémνημαι** and **οἶδα** this last is frequent:

μémνημαι δὲ ἔγωγε καὶ παῖς ὢν Κριτία τῷδε ξυνόντα σε. ΠΛΑΤ.

I remember as a boy your consorting with Critias here.

600

Excursus VI.

Gerund and Gerundive

(§ 184).

Poenarum solvendi tempus. LUCR. *Time for payment of penalty.*

(Gerund as pure Substantive, solutionis; used partly to avoid the double -arum.)

Germanicus Aegyptum proficiscitur cognoscendae antiquitatis. TAC.

Germanicus set out for Egypt with the object of studying its antiquities (Greek Genitive of Purpose: τοῦ γιγνώσκειν, § 186).

Observe **the Gerund and Gerundive expressing the Dative of the Thing** (§ 288):

Solvendo non erat Magius. CIC. *Magius was insolvent* (lit., was not for paying).

Xviri agris dandis dividundis.

A commission of ten men for the assignment and distribution of land.

Dedit huic aetas vires onerique ferendo est. OV.

Age has given him strength and he is (fit) for bearing burdens.

(The phrase solvendo esse is common; so too is the Gerund-

οὐ μή (§ 517).

Other instances of οὐ μή expressing *prohibition* are:

οὐ σιγᾷ ἀνέξει, μηδὲ δειλίαν ἀρεῖ; SOPH.

Keep silent, and do not be a coward (sc. οὐ μή ἀρεῖ).

οὐ μὴ λαλήσεις, ἀλλ' ἀκολουθήσεις ἐμοί; AR.

Prate not, but follow me (sc., οὐκ ἀκολουθήσεις).

οὐ μή, of denial, may be represented in **Oratio Obliqua** by the Future Infinitive or Optative:

σαφῶς γὰρ εἶπε Τειρεσίας οὐ μὴ ποτε

σοῦ τήνδε γῆν οἰκοῦντος εἶ πράξει πόλιν. EUR.

Teiresias clearly said that while you inhabited this land the state could never prosper.

τὰ δ' ἄλλα πάντ' ἐθέσπισεν καὶ τὰπὶ Τροίας πέργαμ' ὡς οὐ μὴ ποτε

πέρσοιεν, εἰ μὴ τόνδ' ἄγοινο.

SOPH.

He prophesied all else, and that

dive in official phrases after Substantives, *Xviri*, etc.; the Gerundive with *esse*, as in the last instance, is rare.)

The Gerundive is sometimes used as a **Present Participle Middle**: e.g., *Volvendis mensibus* (VIRG., *A.*, i., 269), *with revolving months* (cf. *volventibus annis*, in the same book, 234).

Transitive use of the Gerund of Obligation: Poetic, cf. Greek Verbals in *-τέον*, § 189:

Aeternas quoniam poenas in morte timendum est. LUCR. *Since we must fear eternal pains in death.*

Note 1.—Apparently Passive use of the Gerund: due to the detachment of the Gerund from the Subject of the Main Verb. Observe the stages:

(1) *Caesar oppidum ad diripiendum militibus concessit.* CAES.

Caesar handed the town over to his soldiers to pillage.

(2) *Audendo atque agendo res Romana crevit.* LIV. *The power of Rome grew through courage and energy* (Gerund as Abstract Noun).

(3) *Ulcus enim vivescit et inveterascit alendo.* LUCR.

For a wound quickens and grows old by being nurtured (really, "by one's nurturing it"; "by nurture," *alimento*.)

they would never sack the towers of Troy, unless they brought this man.

Note. — MSS. have been arbitrarily altered to suit the distinction of *denial* and *prohibition*, but both constructions are found with either force and probably admit of one explanation.

Three explanations are possible:

(1) *That there is an ellipse of δέος ἐστὶ between οὐ and μή.*

This explains denial, and is supported by, e.g., *οὐ φόβος μή σε ἀγάγω* (XEN., *Mem.*, ii., 1. 25).

But explanations by ellipse are suspicious; it is inadequate for Prohibitions with *οὐ μή*, and does not touch those with *οὐ* alone.

(2) *That οὐ μή is one strong Negative and the phrase a Statement.*

This explains denial and fuller prohibitions, e.g., *οὐ μή προσοίσεις.*

But there is no evidence of the redundancy of *different* Negatives *οὐ* and *μή*; and this,

Note 2. — The Gerundive grew out of the Gerund from several reasons combined :

(a) The frequent detachment of the Gerund from the Subject, obscuring the Active character of the Gerund.

(b) The frequent importance of the Object of the Gerund, as contrasted with the Gerund itself: *e.g.*, instead of, *legatos miserunt pacem petendi causâ*, we might say, with little loss to the sense, *pacis causâ*.

(c) The awkwardness of having two words, a Main Verb and a Verbal Noun, in the same sentence, both governing an Accusative.

(d) The half Adjectival termination of the Gerund, resembling a Participle in -ens, -entis, or an Adj. in -undus.

As a result, the construction was thrown on to the Object of the Gerund; and the Gerund itself, a Substantive and Active, was drawn into agreement as an Adjective and Passive: *viz.*, became a Gerundive. This process is called "Gerundival Attraction".

Note 3.—The Gerund and Gerundive as expressing Obligation.—Just as *Opus est*

like the first, does not touch *οὐκ ἀνέξει*.

Both these explanations, in fact, require a different explanation for the separate Negatives *οὐ σίγ' ἀνέξει* and *μηδὲ ἀρεί*: *e.g.*, as two separate questions in which *οὐ* = *nonne* and *μή* = *num*.

(3) **That οὐ μή was in its origin interrogative.**

This starts with the advantage of recognising the parallelism between *οὐ ποιήσεις*, a Command, and *οὐ μή ποιήσεις*, a Prohibition; and covers *Prohibitions* generally. It covers *Denials* also, if we suppose an original connexion between the Aorist Subjunctive as a mild Future and the Future Indicative—a supposition necessary also to explanation (2): though in (3) it is not even necessary, for the Subjunctive may, as a Question, be Deliberative. Thus *οὐ μή μεθέξωμαι*; "shall I not decline to follow?"; *οὐ μή παύσωμαι*; "shall I not decline" or "am I not to decline to cease?"; *viz.*, "I will not follow," "I will not cease". With regard to *Denials in Oratio Obliqua*, we must suppose that the phrase

mihi, *there is a work for me*, came to mean "there is a work for me to be done"; so, *e.g.*, operandum est mihi, "there is some working for me," came to have a sense of Obligation. And once this sense attached to the Gerund, it soon attached to the Gerundive, which had grown out of the Gerund.

Observe that this account explains also the use of **the Dative of the Agent** commonly used with the Gerund and Gerundive of Obligation: *viz.*, it is a Dative of Interest.

And the Dative, thus used for agency with the Gerund and Gerundive, was afterwards so used with the Passive Participles, as being most akin to the Gerundive; and, finally, its original character being forgotten, came also to be used even with Finite Verbs (§ 576).

(See Roby, Vol. II., p. lxi sqq.: from which the above is mainly drawn.)

had become stereotyped and its Interrogative character obscured.

One point remains. If the two idioms were the same in *origin*, how was it they came to differ, as they do as a rule, in *meaning*? Probably this is due to the inherent differences of Mood and Person, the Future Indicative being stronger than the Aorist Subjunctive, and the Second Person being naturally the Person of Command; *viz.*, the two differ like the English "shall" and "will": "shall I not stop fighting?" = "I will not fight," Denial; "will you not stop fighting?" = "do not fight," Prohibition. And just as for the last we might sometimes say "shall you not stop fighting?" so the Aorist Subjunctive might sometimes, though rarely, be used for Prohibition:

οὐ μὴ σκώψῃς ἀλλ' εὐφῆμει.
AR. *Do not scoff, but keep quiet!*

I. ENGLISH INDEX.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- Ablative, 259-276.
- „ A. *Ablation* :
1. Motion from, 259.
 2. Privation, 260.
 3. Origin, 261 (574).
 4. Agent, 262, 148 (574).
 5. Comparison, 263, 62.
 6. Absolute, 264, 195, 199, 272 (597); dignus, opus, 265.
- „ B. *Instrumental* :
1. Means, 266, 149, 308.
 2. Measure of Difference, 267, 310.
 3. Price, 268.
 4. Material, 269; frunor, etc.
 5. Cause, 270.
 6. Connexion, 271.
 7. Manner, 272.
 8. Quality, 273.
- „ C. *Locative* :
1. Place, 274, 307 (579).
 2. Time, 275, 301.
 3. Respect, 276.
- „ With Prepositions, 290-291.
- „ List of Verbs with Ablative, 312.
- Absolute—
- „ Ablative, *Latin*, 264, 195.
- „ Genitive, *Greek*, 264, 195.
- „ Accusative, *Greek*, 196 (597).
- „ Infinitive, 176 (594).
- „ Participle, 195, 264.
- Abstract Nouns, 16, 54.
- „ „ Article with, 87 (596).
- Accompaniment, 272.
- Accusative, 225-238.
- „ A. *Goal of Action* :
1. Motion to, 225, 307 (580).
 2. Direct Object, 226-227 (566-567), 151; Accusative and Infinitive, 228, 178, 181, 348.
- „ B. *Extent of Action* :
1. Space, 229, 309.
 2. Time, 230, 300.
- Accusative : B. *Extent of Action (cont.)*—
3. Respect, 231.
 4. Cognate, 232 (569).
 5. Adverbial, 233 (Pl., 570).
- „ *Two Accusatives* :
- „ Compound Verbs, 234.
- „ Factive Verbs, 235.
- „ “Ask,” etc., 236; Passive, 237.
- „ Accusative of Exclamation, 238.
- „ After Prepositions, 289-291.
- „ Accusative Absolute, *Greek*, 196 (597).
- „ (In Apposition to Sentence, 562.)
- „ (Anticipative, 523.)
- Active Voice, 144.
- „ „ Transitive and Intransitive 145.
- „ Adjective for Passive (532).
- „ Infin. for Pass., *Gk.*, 183.
- „ Verbs, with Passive sense, 156.
- Adjectival Clauses, 11, 12, 33, 342, 458.
- „ „ Position of, 100.
- Adjective, 17.
- „ Concord of, 41 (559).
- „ for Substantive, 55.
- „ Two Adjectives, 56.
- „ as Epithet, 56 (532).
- „ as Predicate, 59 (Proleptic 545).
- „ as Adverb, 61.
- „ Verbal, 187 (with Acc., 568).
- „ with Genitive, 250.
- „ with Ablative, 260.
- „ Negative with, 497.
- (See also Comparative, Superlative, Numeral, Epithet, Predicate.)
- Adverb, 25, 327.
- „ Pronominal, 18, 135.
- „ with Partitive Genitive, 245.
- „ as Preposition, 292.
- „ (Attraction of, 558.)
- Adverbial Accusative, 233.
- „ Ablative and Dative, 272.
- „ Clauses, 13, 32, 341.

- Adversative Conjunction, 319.
 "After," 302, 433.
 Agent, Passives, 148, 154, 156.
 "Gerunds and Verbals, 188, 262.
 " (Ablative of, 574.)
 " (Genitive and Dative, *Greek*, 574, 576, 287.)
 Agreement, 36, 38, 40-49.
 " with Pronoun understood, 121.
 " (Irregular, 551-564.)
 " (See ConCORDS.)
 Alliteration (520).
 "Allow," 374.
 "Also," 313.
 "Although," 417, 439.
 Amount, Genitive of, 247.
 Analogy (521).
 "And," 313-316.
 Antecedent, 15, 33, 138.
 " omitted, 48, 124.
 " (Attraction of, 554.)
 Anticipative Accusative (523).
 Antipthesis (523).
 Antithesis (524).
 " Negative in, 500.
 Aorist *Indicative*, 200.
 " " Gnomic, Instantaneous, etc., 204.
 " " for Perfect and Pluperfect, 205, 433.
 " " Epistolary, 207.
 " " Sequence of, 344-347.
 " *Subjunctive*, 213; Prohibition, 330 (Command, 587).
 " " with *ὄν μή*, 516.
 " " with *ἔν* = Fut. Perf., 217, 418.
 " *Infinitive*, 213.
 " " Prolate, 214.
 " " *Oratio Obliqua*, 226.
 " *Imperative*, 213, 330.
 Aposiopesis (525).
 Apposition, 11, 42 (561).
 " (to Sentence, 562.)
 Article, 80-103.
 " = Demonstrative, 81.
 " = Relative, 82.
 " *Uses of* :
 Definite, 84.
 Possessive, 85, 122.
 with Names, 86, 103.
 Generic, with Abstracts, 87;
 Numerals, 77; *ποῖος*, 137.
- Article, *Effect of* :
 Noun-making, 88; Participle, 192; Infinitive, 173, 184.
 Attribute-making, 89.
 " *Position of* :
 with Subject and Predicate, 92.
 with Attribute and Predicate, 93.
 with Tertiary Predicate, 95.
 with Geographical Names, 96.
 with Genitives, 97-98.
 with Pronouns (1) Predicate Pos., 99; (2) Attrib. Pos., 100; (3) *αὐτός, πᾶς*, etc., 101.
 " Want of, in Latin, 80-91.
 "As," as if, 446.
 " = when, 414.
 " as soon as, 423.
 Assonance (520).
 Asyndeton, 325 (526).
 Attendant Circumstance, Abl., Dat., 272.
 " " Participle, 193.
 Attic Construction (523).
 Attraction (527).
 " Copulative Verb (551).
 " of Relative, 51 (552; Inverse, 554).
 " of Vocative, Dative, Adverb, 556-558.
 " of Optative, 473.
 " Accusative and Infinitive, 181.
 " Nom. and Infinitive, 179.
 " *Greek*, Optative, 345.
 Attribute, 11; see Adjective, and Epithet.
 Attributive Genitive, 246.
 " Epithet (532).
 " Position of Article, 93, 100.
 "Before," 428.
 "Beware," 369.
 "Both—and," 319.
 Brachylogy (528).
 "But," 319.
 Cardinals, 76-77.
 "Care," take, 369.
 Cases, usage, 221-312 (565-580).
 " with Prepositions, 289.
 " after Verbs, 312.
 Causal Clauses, 32, 409-412.
 " Relative, 467.
 " Sub-Oblique, 476.
 " Participle, 193.
 " Conjunctions, 322.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- Cause, Genitive of, 256.
 „ Ablative of, 270.
 „ Dative of, *Greek*, 270.
 “Cause,” to, 365.
 Clause, 2; Sub-Clauses, 31-34.
 Cognate Accusative, 232.
 Command, Direct, 330.
 „ Indirect, 355-359.
 „ Other forms of (587-588).
 „ Future in, 208.
 „ *οἷ, οὐ μή*, 517.
 „ *ἄν* with Optative, 218.
 Comparatio Compendiaria, 528.
 Comparatives: quam or Ablative, 62, 263.
 „ *ἢ* or Genitive, 62, 263.
 „ with Numerals, 64.
 „ two, compared, 65, 457.
 „ “rather,” 67.
 „ after quo Final, 385.
 „ quam ut, *ἢ ὅσπερ*, 391.
 Comparative Clauses, 32, 446.
 „ “as if,” 447.
 „ “as,” 449.
 „ “same as,” 453.
 „ with Superl., 455.
 „ after Comparative
 „ “than,” 456.
 „ two Comparatives,
 457.
 „ Participle in, 193.
 “Compel,” to, 365.
 Complements, 7.
 „ Substantival, 10.
 „ Adjectival, 11, 12.
 „ Adverbial, 13.
 „ Clauses, 14.
 Composite Subject, 44-46 (564).
 Compound Sentence, 2, 31-34, 339-342.
 Concession, 32; “even if,” 439; “al-
 though,” 440-443.
 „ Limitative, 444-445.
 „ Participle, 193.
 „ „
 Conclusive Conjunctions, 323.
 Concords, 40-43.
 „ (Attraction in, 551).
 „ (Sense-Construction, 559).
 Concrete Substantives, 16, 54.
 Conditions, 32; Plain, 395-397.
 „ Potential, 398-402.
 „ Indefinite, 403.
 „ Subordinate, 404-405
 „ Remarks on, 406-408.
 „ (Irregular, 586.)
 „ *cf.* Concession, “even if,”
 439.
 Conditions, Relative, 470.
 „ Participle, 193.
 „ On Condition that, 390.
 Conjunctions, 3, 27.
 „ (1) Copulative, 313.
 „ (2) Disjunctive, 317.
 „ (3) Adversative, 319.
 „ (4) Causal, 322.
 „ (5) Conclusive, 323.
 „ Position of, 324.
 „ “Conjunctive Mood,” 168.
 Connexion, Ablative of, 271.
 „ Dative of, *Greek*, 271.
 Consequence, 32; Sequence, 346.
 „ Possible, 388.
 „ Actual, 389.
 „ Limitative, 390.
 „ after Comparatives, 391.
 „ after “to cause,” etc., 365,
sqq.
 „ Parenthetic, 394.
 „ with Relative, 463.
 Construction, 35.
 „ Sense- (559).
 Coordinate Clauses, 3.
 „ Particles, 324.
 Copula, “and,” 3, 313.
 „ „ with Compound Num-
 erals, 75.
 „ „ omitted, 325 (526).
 „ “to be,” 5, omitted, 6, 47.
 Copulative Verbs, 22.
 „ „ with Nom., 223.
 „ „ (Attraction with, 551-
 552).
 Correlation, 142-143.
 Crisis, 326 (550).
 Dative: *Instrumental, Greek* :—
 1. Means, 266.
 2. Measure of Difference, 267.
 3. Price, Penalty, 268.
 4. Material, 269.
 5. Cause, 270.
 6. Connexion, 271.
 7. Manner, Accompaniment,
 272-273.
 „ *Locative, Greek* :—
 1. Place, 274, 307.
 2. Time, 275, 301.
 3. Respect, 276.
 „ *Proper, Greek and Latin* :—
 1. Indirect Object, Verbs,
 277-280; Adjective, 281
 (575).

 The Numbers refer to Sections.

- Dative : *Proper, Gk. and Lat. (cont.)*—
 2. Interest, Com. and Incom., 282.
 Person judging, 283 (578).
 Ethic, 284.
 Dative for Genitive, 285.
 Possessor, 286.
 Agent, 217, 188 (576, 600).
 (Motion to, 576).
 „ *Greek*: Dat. after Prep., 289-291.
 „ *Latin*: Dat. of Thing, 288 (578, 600).
 „ „ (Dative Attraction, 558).
 Dative Verbs, list of, 312.
 Definition, Genitive of, 248.
 Deictic Pronouns, 103.
 Deliberative Questions, Direct, 337.
 „ „ Indirect, 363 (*εἰ* with Subjunctive, 586).
 „ „ Present Indicative in, 201.
 Demonstrative Pronouns, 123-124.
 „ Correlation, 142.
 „ omitted, 143.
 „ expressed by Relative, 140.
 “Deny,” 374, 512.
 Dependents, 162.
 „ Passive of, 163.
 „ *Latin*, Participle of, 199.
 Description, Genitive of, 346.
 “Determine,” 368.
 Direct Statement, 30, 166, 329.
 „ Command, 30, 167, 330 (587-588).
 „ Question, 30, 166, 335.
 „ „ Deliberative, 337.
 Disjunctive Particles, 317.
 Distance, Accusative of, 229, 310.
 Distributive Numerals, 79.
 “Double Dative,” *Latin*, 288.
 “Doubt,” 374, 512.
 Dual, 47.
 Ellipse (531).
 Enclitic, 125, 324.
 Epexegetic Infinitive, 175; *Greek*, 182-183 (*Latin*, 595).
 Epistolary Past, 207.
 Epithet, 11, 56.
 „ (kinds of, 532; Proleptic, 545).
 „ Article with, *Greek*, 93.
 Ethic Dative, 284.
 “Even,” 313; “not even,” 316.
 “Even if,” 439.
 Exclamation, 30, 338.
 „ Infinitive of, 176.
 „ Accusative of, 238, 338.
 „ Causal Gen. of, *Gk.*, 256.
 Exhortation, Direct, 30, 331.
 „ Indirect, 355.
 „ in *Oratio Obliqua*, 484.
 Fact, “the fact that,” 382.
 Factitive Verbs, 21, 235.
 „ Passive of, 22, 150.
 “Fear,” 371.
 „ *Greek*, μή οὐ, 514.
 „ „ Future Indicative (584).
 Final Clauses, see Purpose.
 „ „ Parenthetic, 394.
 „ „ *cf.* Indirect Command, 355-356.
 “For,” 322.
 “Forbid,” 356, 374, 512.
 Frequentative :—
 „ (1) *Main Clauses* :
 Imperfect, 202.
Greek, Imperf., Aorist, *ἀν*, 218.
 „ (2) *Sub-Clauses* :
Latin, Perfect Indicative, 205, 217, 403, 419, 460 (Subj., 585).
Greek, Subjunctive with *ἀν*, or Optative, 217, 403, 419, 460.
 Fullness, Genitive of, 255.
 „ *Latin*, Ablative of, 269.
 „ *Greek*, Dative of, 269.
 Future Indicative, 200, 208.
 „ *Latin*, Command, 208 (588).
 „ „ Sub-Clauses, 210.
 „ „ Sequence, 344.
 „ *Greek*, of Command, 208; with οὐ Interrog., 218; οὐ μή, 517 (600); of Purpose, *ἔνθα*, 438; with *ὅπως*, Command, 356, Final, 335 (584), *πράσσω*, 366, *φυλάσσω*, *δράω*, 369, with *ὅστις*, 462 (*φοβοῦμαι* μή, 584).
 Future Infinitive, after “promise,” etc., 349.
 „ „ *Gk.*, after μέλλω, 368.
 „ „ *Lat.*, without esse, 350;
 Fut. Infin. Pass., 183; fore ut, 219, 404.
 Future-Perfect, 200, 209; Sequence, 344.
 „ „ *Sub-Clauses*, 210; Frequentative, 217; Plup. Subj. for, 475.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- General truths—
 „ „ *Greek*, Gnomie Aorist, 204.
 „ „ *Latin*, Perfect, 204.
- Generic Article, 87.
- Genitive *Proper*: *Greek and Latin*—
 1. Possessive, 239-242 (571-573).
 2. Partitive, 243 (572), 70.
 3. Descriptive, 246: Quality, Amount, 247 (572); Definition, 248 (572).
 4. Objective, Subs., 249; Adj., 250; Verbs, 251-254 (571).
 5. Fullness and Want, 255.
 6. Cause, 256.
 7. Value, 257.
 Locative. Place, Time, Respect, 257-258, 303, 307 (579).
- „ Purpose, *Lat.* (600); *Gk.*, 186.
 „ List of Verbs, 312.
- „ Ablation: *Greek*—
 1. Motion from, 259 (580).
 2. Privation, 260.
 3. Origin, 261.
 4. Agent, 262 (574).
 5. Comparative, 263, 62.
 6. Absolute, 264, 195 (574).
 ἀξιος, δεῖ, etc., 265.
- „ Prepositions with, 289-291.
 „ Position of Genitive, 97-98.
- Gerund and Gerundive—
 „ 1. Action, 184-186.
 „ 2. Obligation, 187.
 Agent with, 188.
 Curo, etc., 189.
 Possibility, 190.
- „ In Purpose, 387; Time, 435; Cause, 412. (See further, 600.)
 „ Easive of Gerundive, 163-164.
- Gnomie Aorist, 204; Sequence of, 345.
 Government, 37, 38.
- Greek constructions in Latin—
 „ Middle, Passive, with Acc., 160-161 (567).
 „ Anticipative Accusative (523).
 „ Genitive (572).
 „ Frequentative Subjunctive (585).
 „ Infinitives (591-594).
 „ Participle (598).
 „ Nominative Attraction (598).
 „ Gerundive, Purpose (600).
 „ Gerund of Obl. with Acc. (600).
- Hendiadys (533).
 „ Hinder,” 374, 510, 512.
- Historic Infinitive. *Latin*, 176.
 „ Present, 201; Sequence of, 345.
 „ Tenses, 344.
 „ Hope,” 349.
- Hypallage (534).
 Hyperbaton (535).
 Hypermeter (549).
 Hysteron Proteron (536).
- „ If,” 395; as if, 447; than if, 456; wonder if, 383.
- Imperative, 167, 330.
- Imperfect, 200; Sequence of, 344.
 „ of attempt, etc., 202.
 „ Epistolary, 207.
 „ of Present time in Conditions, *Lat.*, Imperf. Subj., *Gk.*, Imperf. with ἄν, 399.
 „ *Lat.* Subj., Past Jussive (587).
- Impersonal Construction in Passive, 152-155; in Ind. St., 352.
 Verbs, Constr. of, 375-381.
- „ In” (579).
- Indefinite Clauses: *Lat.*, Perfects Ind., *Gk.*, ἄν Subj. or Opt., 217.
 „ „ Conditional, 403.
 „ „ Temporal, 413.
 „ „ Local, 437.
 „ „ Comparative, 450.
 „ „ Relative, 460.
 „ „ *Gk.* Negative in, 491.
 „ „ *Lat.* Subj. in (585).
- Indefinite Pronouns, 125-135.
 Indeterminate Verbs, 20, 174.
- Indicative: General usage, 166.
 „ *Latin*—
 „ Indefinite Perfect, 217.
 „ Dum, 424.
 „ Sub-Clauses of *Or. Obl.*, 477.
 „ With Subjunctive in Conditions, 473, 397, 402 (586).
- „ *Greek*—
 „ Sequence of, 344-347.
 „ Vivid, 346; sub-Oblique, 477.
 „ Indirect Statement, 353.
 „ Indirect Question, 360.
 „ Past Wishes, 332.
 „ Past Final, 386.
 „ φοβῶμαι μή, 372.
 „ Fut. Ind. Purpose, 385; see Fut. Past, with ἄν, 218-219.
- Indirect Statement, 31, 348-354.
 „ Command, 31, 355-359.
 „ Question, 31, 360-363.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- Indirect Question, Deliberative, 363.
 " Sub-Clauses, 364, 473-478.
 " *Oratio Obliqua*, 479-488.
 " Sequence in, 344-346.
 Infinitive: a Noun, 23, 172-173.
 " 1. Prolicative 174, 20.
 " 2. Epexegetic, 175.
 " 3. Absolute, 176, 394.
 " with Subs. and Adj., 177 (594).
 " Subj. and Pred. of: Acc., 178;
 " Nom., 179; Dat., 180.
 " Tenses in, 213-216, 354 (599).
 " *Oratio Obliqua*, 348.
 " *Lat.*, for ut and Subj. (592-593).
 " *Gk.*, Epex., other uses, 182-183
 (594).
 " " with $\tau\acute{o}$, 184-186 (592).
 " " $\tau\omicron\upsilon$, Purpose, 186.
 " " $\acute{\omega}\sigma\tau\epsilon$, 388 (592).
 " " contrasted with Parti-
 " ciple, 199 (598).
 " " (Irregular uses, 591-
 595).
 Instantaneous Aorist, and Perf., 204.
 Instrument, 149, 266.
 Instrumental Case, 221; see Ablative
 and Dative.
 "Intend," 368.
 Intensive Particles, 321.
 " Pronouns, 108.
 Interest, Dative of, 282 (577, 600).
 Interjections, 28, 326.
 Interrogative Pronouns, 136-137.
 Intransitive Verbs, 19, 145.
 " " used Trans., 147 (521,
 566).
 " " Trans., when Com-
 " pound, 227.
 " " "Dative Verbs," 278.
 " " Passive of, 152.
 Inverse Attraction (554).
 " *cum*, 420.
 Limitative Cl., 427; Rel., 469.
 Literary Epithet (532).
 Litotes (537).
 Local Clauses, 436.
 " " Indefinite, 437.
 " " Purpose, 438.
 " " Locative, 258, 307.
 Main Sentence, 2, 30, 328.
 Manner, *Latin*, Abl.; *Greek*, Dat., 272.
 " Clause expressing, 32, 446.
 " Participle of, 193.
 Material, Genitive of, 246.
 " *Latin*, Abl.; *Greek*, Dat., 269.
 Means, *Latin*, Abl.; *Greek*, Dat., 266.
 " Participle, 193.
 " Ablative of Gerund, 184.
 Measure, 311.
 " of Difference, 267.
 Metaphor (538).
 Middle Voice, Reflexive (*cf.* 566).
 (1) Direct, 157.
 (2) Indirect, 158-161.
 " " Deponents, 162.
 " " Passive of, 163.
 Modal Adverbs, 25; Clauses, see Manner.
 Mood, 165 *sqq.*
 " Indicative, 166.
 " Imperative, 167.
 " Conjunctive, 168.
 " Infinitive, 172.
 " Participle, 191.
 Motion to, Acc., 225, 304 (580).
 " from, *Latin*, Abl.; *Greek*, Gen.,
 259, 305 (580).
 Multiplicatives, 79.
 Multitude, Noun of, 49, 16.
 Names, Proper, 16; Article with, 86.
 Negative, a Modal Adverb, 25.
 " with Copula, "and," 316.
 " gen. usage, 489.
 " Position of, 504.
 " Redundancy of, 506.
 " See non, ne, *oὐ*, *μή*.
 Neuter, of Thing, 50.
 " Adjective = Abstract, 55, 88.
 " = Adv., 233 (Pl., 570).
 " Pronoun, of Clause, 124.
 " with Genitive, 246.
 " Verbs, 153.
 " *Greek*, Article with, 88.
 " " Neuter Plural with Sing-
 " ular Verb, 47.
 Nominative, Subject, 222.
 " Pred. of Cop. Verb, 223.
 " in Exclamation, 238.
 " with Infin., 222, 179; *Greek*,
 " "Nom. Attraction," 351
 " (*Latin*, 598).
 " Nominativus Pendens (522).
 " for Vocative (561).
 Noun, defined, 29.
 " of Multitude, 16, 49.
 Numerals, "than" omitted, 64.
 " order of, 75.
 " Cardinal, 76-77.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- Numerals, Ordinal, 78.
 „ Distributives, etc., 79.
- Object, defined, 10.
 „ Direct, Acc., 226.
 „ Indirect, Dat., 277.
 „ of Fact. Verbs, Article, 92.
- Objective Genitive, 249 *sqq.*
 Onomatopoeia (539).
- Optative, general use, 168-171.
 „ with *ἄν*, 218-219.
 „ Sequence of, 344.
 „ „ *Main Clauses*: Wish, 332(586).
 „ with *ἄν*, 218, 329, 398.
 „ *Sub-Clauses*: Historic—
 „ (1) Final (Primary: Subjunctive), 384; Indirect Deliberative, 363.
 „ (2) Hypothetic (Primary: Subj. with *ἄν*).
 „ Conditions, 398.
 „ Indef. Hypoth., 403.
 „ *ἴστε*, 419; *πρὶν*, 431;
 „ *ἕως*, 426.
 „ Local, 437.
 „ Relative, 470.
 „ (3) Oblique (Primary: Indicative).
 „ Indirect Speech, 353.
 „ Indirect Question, 360.
 „ Cause, Virt. Obl., 410, 476.
 „ Sub-Oblique, for *ἄν* with Subj., 405, 473, 475; for Ind., 474, 476.
 „ by Attraction, 345.
- “Or,” 317.
- Oratio Obliqua, Infinitive, 174.
 „ „ tenses in, 216.
 „ „ Conditionals in, 404.
 „ „ Virtual, Cause, 410;
 „ „ Rel., 476.
 „ „ *Greek*: see also Optative and Participle.
 „ „ *Continuous*, 479; Statement, 483; Command, 484; Questions, 485; Sub-Clause, 486; Pronouns, 487; Example, 488 (Sequence in, 589).
- Order of Words—
 „ *Latin*, 92; Attributives, 93; Genitives, 93; Prepositional phrases, 94; Sum, 97; Order of Clauses, 98-103.
- Order of Words (*continued*)—
 „ *Greek*: Genitives, 97.
 Ordinals, 78.
 Origin, *Latin*, Abl.; *Greek*, Gen., 261.
 Oxymoron (540).
- Paraprosdokian (541).
 Parenthetic Clauses, Fin. and Consec., 394; “much less,” 445.
 „ Infinitive *Greek*, 176.
- Paronomasia (542).
 Part affected, Accusative, 231.
 „ „ *Latin*, Ablative, 276.
- Participle, as Adj. and Subs., 24.
 „ 1. *Adjectival*, 192.
 „ (as Neut. Subs., 596.)
 „ 2. *Adverbial*, Cause, etc., 193-194.
 „ Absolute, 195 (597).
 „ 3. *Supplementary*, after Vbs. of “seeing,” etc., 198, 350 (598).
 „ Tense in, 216 (599).
 „ *Greek*, Suppl. Partic. and Infin., 199 (598); Negative with Partic., 495; *μη οὐ*, 514.
 „ *Latin*, Past Partic. Act., and Pres. Partic. Pass., 199;
 „ Pass. Partic. of Deponents, 163; (Gerundive as Pres. Partic. Pass., 600); Caesar occisus, “the death of Caesar,” 198.
- Particles, defined, 29.
 „ List of, 313 *sqq.*
 „ Intensive, 321.
 „ Interrogative, 336.
- Partitive Genitive, 243-245.
- Parts of Speech, 16-29.
- Passive Voice, 144.
 „ Construction, 148.
 „ of Factitive Verbs, 150.
 „ of Verbs with two Accs., 151.
 „ (Accusative after, 567.)
 „ of Intrans. Verbs, 152-153.
 „ Impers. and Pers., 154-155.
 „ Quasi-Passive Verbs, 156.
 „ Middle, 157 *sqq.*
 „ of Deponents, 163.
 „ Tenses, 164.
 „ (Epithet for Active, 532.)
 Past, Epistolary, 207.
 „ Jussive, *Lat.* (587).
 Penalty, Gen. or Instrum., 256.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- Perfect (1) *Proper*, 200, 203.
Sequence of, 244.
,, (2) *Aoristic, Latin*, 204, 244.
Epistolary, 207.
in sub-Clauses, for Plup., 205.
Frequentative, 205, 217, 423.
,, *Subj., Latin*, Sequence of, 345 ;
in Prohibitions, 330 ; Wishes,
333 ; in Consec. Clauses, 389 ;
in sub-Conditionals, 219, 405.
,, Participle, see Participle.
,, Infinitive, *Latin*, 354 ; without
esse, 350, 198.
- Periphrasis (543).
Periphrastic Tenses, 211.
"Permit," 374.
Perpetual Epithet (532).
Persons, use of, 107.
Person Judging, Dat. of, 283.
Personal Pronouns, 104.
,, Order of, 106.
Personal use of Passive, 152-155, 352.
Place, 32 ; whither, 304 ; whence, 305 ;
where, 306 ; road by which, 308
(see also 579, 580).
Pleonasm (544).
Pluperfect, 200, 206 ; Sequence of, 344.
,, Epistolary, 207.
,, Frequentative in sub-Clauses,
217.
,, *Subj.*, for Fut. Perf. Ind.,
475 (586) (Past Jussive,
587).
- Plural, for Singular, etc., 53.
,, *Latin*, Pl. Nouns, Distributives
with, 79.
,, *Greek*, Neut. Plur. with Sing.
Verb, 47.
- Possessive Genitive, 239-242.
,, Dative, 286.
,, Pronouns, 120-122.
,, ,, *Greek*, Article with,
100.
- Potential, 218-219.
Predicate defined, 5.
,, Primary, Secondary, Tertiary,
11-12, 59-61 ; *Latin*, Position
of, 59, 87-91 ; *Greek*, Article
with, 92-95.
,, with Copulative Verbs, 223.
,, with Factitive Verbs, 235.
,, with Infinitives, 178-181.
Predicative Dative, *Latin*, 288 (600).
Prepositions, 26, 289-291.
,, Adverbs as, 292.
- Prepositions; idioms with, 293.
,, Proleptic, 294.
,, Position of, 295.
,, in Composition, 296-299.
,, Verbs Transitive with, 227-
234.
,, (Tmesis, 547).
Present Tense, 200 ; Sequence of, 344.
,, Historic, 201.
,, (*Infm.* and *Part.* for Past, 595 ;
Subj. Latin, Command, 588.)
Prevent, 374, 510, 512.
Price, Genitive of, 257.
,, *Latin*, Abl. ; *Greek*, Dat., 268.
Primary Tenses and Moods, 344.
Prohibition, see Command.
Prolative Infinitive, 20, 174.
,, Tenses of, 214-215.
Prolepsis, 545 ; in Prepositions, 294.
"Promise," 349.
Pronouns, 18 ; Agreement, 25.
,, (1) Personal, 104 ; Intensive,
108 ; Reflexive, 110 ;
Reciprocal, 118 ; Pos-
sessive, 120.
,, (2) Demonstrative, 123.
,, (3) Indefinite, 125.
,, (4) Interrogative, 136, 335.
,, (5) Relative, 138.
,, in *Oratio Obliqua*, 487.
- Proper Names, defined, 16.
,, Article with, 86.
Provided that, 427.
Purpose, 32 ; Sequence in, 344 (Prim.
and Hist. combined, 590).
,, *Latin*, ut, ne, Subj., 384 ; quo,
Subj., 385 (ut ne, 584) ; si,
Subj., 407 ; qui, Subj., 462 ;
Supine, 182 ; Gerund in, 387.
,, *Greek*, *iva*, Conj., 384 ; *ἵνα*, Past
Indic., 386 ; *ἕως*, Subj., 407 ;
ὅς, Fut. Ind., 462 ; Fut.
Partic., 193 ; *τοῦ*, *Infm.*,
182.
,, (Epex. Infinitive, 593.)
- Quality, Genitive of, 247, 273.
,, Ablative of, 273.
Quasi-Negative, defined, 126.
Quasi-Passive Verbs, 156.
,, *Infm.*, *Greek*, 183.
- Reciprocal Pronouns, 118.
,, Middle, *Greek*, 160.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- Reflexive Pronouns, 110.
 ,, Third Pers., 112-117.
 ,, Middle, Direct, 157; Indirect, 158.
 "Refuse," 374.
 Relative Pronouns, Concord of, 43, 51 (563).
 ,, ,, Attraction, 51 (552).
 ,, ,, and Antecedent, 138.
 ,, ,, for Demonstrative, 142.
 ,, ,, Correlation, 142.
 ,, ,, for Interrogative, 137.
 ,, ,, Position of, 100.
 Relative Clauses and Interrogative, 33.
 ,, ,, use of, 458-472.
 ,, ,, Definite fact, 459.
 ,, ,, Indefinite, 460-461.
 ,, ,, Purpose, 462, 387.
 ,, ,, Consequence, 463-466, 393.
 ,, ,, ,, with Compar., 456.
 ,, ,, Cause, 467-468.
 ,, ,, Concession, 469.
 ,, ,, Condition, 470.
 ,, ,, Parenthesis, 471.
 ,, ,, Fresh statement, 472.
 ,, ,, Sub-Oblique, 473; Infinitive, 486.
 ,, ,, *Latin*, Position of, 98.
 ,, ,, *Greek*, Negative in, 496.
 Respect, Acc. of, 231.
 ,, Gen. of, 258.
 ,, *Latin*, Abl.; *Greek*, Dat., 276.
 Road by which, 308; cf. 266.
 Secondary Predicate, 11, 59.
 Sense Construction—
 ,, (1) Verb, 49.
 ,, (2) Adjective (559).
 ,, (3) Apposition (561-562).
 ,, (4) Relative (563).
 ,, (5) Composite Subject (564).
 ,, Nominativus Pendens (522).
 Sentence defined, 2.
 ,, Principal, 30, 328.
 ,, Sub-clause, 31-34, 339-342.
 Separation, *Lat.* Abl., *Gk.* Gen., 260.
 Sequence, 343-347 (Primary and Historic combined, 589-590).
 Since, 434; see "When" and "Causal".
 Singular for Plural, 53.
 Space, Accusative of, 229, 309.
 ,, (*Greek*, Genitive of, 579.)
 Spoudaic Hexameter, 549.
 "Strive," 367.
 Subject defined, 4; Nominative, 222.
 ,, Composite, 44 (564).
 ,, of Infinitive, 178-179, 228, 222.
 Subjective Genitive, 249.
 Subjunctive, General use, 168-171.
 ,, Tenses in, 213.
 ,, *Latin*—
 ,, ,, *Main Clauses*:
 ,, (1) Jussive, 331.
 ,, (2) Potential, 329.
 ,, (3) Deliberative, 337.
 ,, ,, *Sub-Clauses*:
 ,, (1) Final, 384; Ind. Com., 355; strive, 368; beware, 369; fear, 371; time, 413, 426, 431; place, 438; with velim, cave, 357, 370; Relative, 462.
 Consecutive, 388; compel, 365; happen, 375; Relative, 463; quin, 512.
 (2) Hypothetic: Conditions, 398; Quasi, 447; Rel., 470 (Frequentative, 585).
 (3) Oblique: Ind. Quest., 360. Ind. Delib., 363; sub-Oblique, 364, 473, 486 (diceret, 583); virtually Oblique, cause, 410; Rel., 476; quum, 415; non quia, quam quia, 411.
 ,, *Greek*—
 ,, ,, *Main Clauses*:
 ,, (1) Jussive, 331.
 ,, (2) Deliberative, 337.
 ,, ,, *Sub-Clauses*:
 Final, 384; fear, 371; θέλει and Subj., 357 (Relative, 582).
 Ind. Delib., 363; with μή, μή ού, 514.
 With ἄν, 217; εἰάν, 396, 403; ὅταν, 418; εἰὼς ἄν, 426; πρίν ἄν, 431; ὅς ἄν, 460; ἄν omitted, 219 (584).
 Sub-Oblique Conjunctive, 473, 486.
 Subordinate Clauses, 2, 31, 339-341.
 ,, ,, Aorist for Pluperfect in, 205.
 ,, ,, Future time in, 210.
 Substantives defined, 16.
 ,, Concord of, 42 (561-562).
 ,, Singular and Plural, 53.
 ,, Abstract, and Adjective, 54.
 ,, *Greek*, Negative with, 497.
 Substantival Clauses, 10, 31, 340, 348-383.
 ,, ,, *Lat.*, Order of, 100.
 ,, ,, Phrases, *Gk.*, Neg. with, 497.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- Superlatives, "very," "most," 69, 70.
 ,, in Relative Clause, 72.
 ,, "as much as possible," 73, 455.
- Supine, 182-183, 387.
- Syllepsis, 546.
- Synzesis, 550.
- Syntax defined, 1, 35-39.
- Temporal Clauses, 32, 413.
 ,, ,, when, 414.
 ,, ,, as soon as, 423.
 ,, ,, while, until, 424.
 ,, ,, before, 428.
 ,, ,, after, 433.
 ,, ,, Participle, etc., 435.
 ,, ,, Aor. for Plupf. in, 205.
- Tenses, 200-220.
 ,, Present, 201.
 ,, Imperfect, 202.
 ,, Perfect, 203, 205.
 ,, Aorist, 204, 205.
 ,, Pluperfect, 206.
 ,, Epistolary Past, 207.
 ,, Future, 208, 210.
 ,, Future Perfect, 209.
 ,, Periphrastic, 211, 212.
 ,, In Conjunctive, 213.
 ,, In Infinitive and Participle, 214-216, 199, 354 (599).
 ,, Indefinite and Potential, 217-220.
 ,, Primary and Historic, 344.
 ,, Passive and Middle, 163-164.
- Tertiary Predicate, 12, 59, 95.
- "Than," 62; Clauses, 456, 391.
- "Therefore," 323.
- Thesis (549).
- Thing, Neuter of, 50.
 ,, *Latin*, Dative of, 288.
- "Till," 424.
- Time, how long, 300, 230.
 ,, when, 301, 273.
 ,, ago, 302.
 ,, within which, 303.
 ,, *Greek*, Genitive of, 303.
 ,, Cardinals in, 78.
 ,, Participle in, 193.
 ,, (See Temporal Clauses.)
- Tmesis (547).
- "Too," Comparatives, 62.
 ,, in Clauses, 456.
- Transitive Verbs, 19, 145.
 ,, for Intransitive, 146.
 ,, with Accusative, 226-227.
 ,, with two Accs., 234, 151.
 ,, *Latin*, Participle of, 199.
- "Try," 367.
- "Until," 424.
- Value, Genitive of, 257.
 ,, Instrumental, 268.
- Verbal Adjectives, obligation, 187.
 ,, ,, Agent with, 188.
 ,, ,, Obj. Gen. with, 250.
 ,, ,, (Acc. after, 568.)
 ,, ,, (See Participles, 191.)
- Verbs, Nouns, Infinitive, 172.
 ,, ,, *Latin* Supine, 182.
 ,, ,, *Latin* Gerund, 184.
 ,, ,, Genitive with, 249.
 ,, ,, (Accusative after, 568.)
- Verbs, Kinds of, 19-24, 145.
 ,, Concord of, 40 (551, 559, 564).
 ,, Parts of, 144 *sqq.*
 ,, List of Cases after, 312.
 ,, Compound, with Prep., 296.
- Virtual *Oratio Obliqua*, 476, 410 (583).
- Vivid Sequence, *Greek*, 346-347, 477.
- Vocative, 224; Exclam., 238.
 ,, (Attraction, 556.)
- Voice, 144; Active, 145; Passive, 148;
 Middle, 157.
- Want, Genitive of, 255.
 ,, *Latin* Ablative, *Greek* Genitive, 260.
- "When," 414.
 "Whenever," 423.
- "Whether-or," 318.
- "While," 424, 319.
- Wishes, Direct, 332, 408 (586).
 ,, Indirect, 357.
- Would, 218.
- Zeugma (548).

⚠ The Numbers refer to Sections.

II. LATIN INDEX.

The Numbers refer to Sections.

- ab, Abl., 290, 293; Agent, 148, 188, 262.
 ab-, 297-299, 305; with Dative, 280.
 abhorreo ab, 298.
 absque, 290.
 ac, 313; idem ac, 453.
 accedit, 375.
 accidit, ut Subj., quod Ind., Inf., 375.
 ad, Accusative, 289, 304, 293.
 ad-, 298-299.
 adversus, 289.
 aevi, 258.
 ago ut, 365.
 aliquis, 127, 137; aliquid and Genitive, 56, 245.
 aliter, see alius.
 alius, 131; alius alium, 131, 119; ac, 453.
 ,, quam, 454 (Ablative, 574).
 alter, 78, 130.
 alteruter, 130.
 ambi-, 296.
 ambo, 134.
 amplexus, 164.
 an, 318, 336; nescio an, 362.
 animi, 258.
 ante, Acc., 289, 198; Adv., 292.
 antequam, 428.
 apud, Accusative, 289, 293.
 arceo, Accusative and Dative, 282.
 ardeo, as Transitive, 147 (521).
 at, 319, 408.
 atque, 313, 453.
 atqui, 320.
 attamen, 320.
 attinet ad, Infinitive, 380.
 augeo, 145.
 aut, 317-318.
 autem, 319, 324.
 bene-, Dative, 280.
 careo, Ablative, Genitive, 255, 260.
 causâ, Genitive, 292.
 caveo, Subjunctive, 369, 370.
 celo, two Accusatives, 236-237.
 ceteri, 132.
 ceu, Subjunctive, 448.
 circum, circa, circiter, 289; position, 295; Adverb, 292.
 cis, citra, Accusative, 289; Adverb, 292.
 clam, Abl., Gen., Acc., Adv., 290.
 coeptus sum, Passive Infinitive, 162.
 cogo, Infinitive, 366.
 conitor, Passive Participle, 163.
 communis, Genitive (573).
 conor, Infinitive, 367.
 constituo, Infinitive, 368.
 contingit ut, 375.
 contra, Acc., 289, 293; Adv., 292.
 convenio, Accusative (566); convenit, Infinitive, ut, 379.
 coram, Ablative, 290; Adverb, 292.
 credo, Dative, 278.
 cresco, 145.
 cum, with, Abl., 293, 271-272; position, 295.
 cum, when, 136, 199, 418; cum—tum, 315. See quum.
 curo, Gerundive, 189; ut, 369.
 de, Ablative, 290, 293, 299.
 de-, 297.
 debeo, in Conditis., 402; debere, *Or. Obl.*, 484; debui, Pres. Inf., 215.
 decet, Accusative and Infinitive, 379.
 dedecet, Accusative and Infinitive, 379.
 defendo, Accusative and Dative, 282.
 delecto, Accusative, 278.
 dextrâ (579).
 dicat, 218 (diceret, 583).
 dignor, Accusative and Ablative, 265.
 dignus, Ablative, 265; qui and Subjunctive, 466 (Infinitive, 594).
 dis-, 296.
 dissimilis, Genitive, Dative, 281.
 dixerim, dixerit, 218.
 do, Gerundive, 189.
 doceo, two Accusatives, 236-237.
 domum, 307 (579).

- donec, 424-426.
dubito, quin, Infinitive, 512.
dum, (1) *while*, Ind., 424; (2) *until*, Ind., 425; Subj., 426 (582); (3) modo, *provided that*, 427; with *ne*, 496.
- ecce, 326.
ecquis, 125.
efficio, ut, 365.
egeo, Genitive, 255; Ablative, 260.
egredior, with Accusative (566).
eheu, 326.
ejus, eorum, 120.
en, 326.
enim, 322, 324.
enimvero, 320.
eo, with Comparative, 457.
equidem, 321.
erga, Accusative, 289.
ergo, 323-324.
esse, of existence, 47.
,, Copula, omitted, 47, 198, 350.
,, est ut, 377.
essem and forem, 220.
et, 313; et—et, 315; et—neque, 316.
,, with Participle, 442.
etenim, 322.
etsi, etiamsi, Indicative, Subjunctive, 439.
evenit, ut, 375.
ex, Ablative, 290, 293, 299, 305; “one of,” 244.
ex quo, 434.
ex-, 297.
excepto (596).
expedit, Acc. or Dat. and Inf., 378.
extra, Accusative, 289; Adverb, 292.
- facere non possum quin, 514.
,, ut, Subjunctive, 365.
fio, 156; fit ut, 375; fieri non potest quin, 514.
flocci, 257.
fore ut, 219, 404; foret ut, 220; forem and essem, 220.
forsitan, Subjunctive, 383.
fretus, Ablative, 269.
fruo, Ablative, 269.
fuerit and Gerundive, 219, 405.
fui, 203; fui and sum, 212.
fungor, Ablative, 469.
futurum fuisse ut, 219, 404.
- gaudeo, Inf., quod Ind., 383 (Part., 598).
gratiā, Genitive, 292.
- habeo, Intransitive, 146; with Indirect Question, 363.
haud, 492, 498; hand scio an, 383.
hei, heia, heu, heus, 326.
hic, 123-124, 142 (*hoc videre*, 591).
hortor, ut, *ne*, 355.
- idcirco, 323.
ilem, 109; ac, 453 (Dative, 574).
igitur, 323-324.
ignosco, Dative, 278.
ille, Pers. Pron., 104; Dem., 123, 192; in *Oratio Obliqua*, 487.
immo, immo vero, 320.
impello, ut Subj., 365 (Infinitive, 592).
impero, Dat., Acc., 278; ut Subj., 355.
impleo, Genitive, 255; Ablative, 269.
imus, 58, 90.
in, Acc., Abl., 291, 293, 304, 306; Prolep., 294; position, 295; with ad-, 299.
indigeo, Genitive, 255; Ablative, 260.
indignus, Ablative, 265.
indutus, Accusative, 158.
infra, Accusative, 289; Adverb, 292.
integer aevi, 258.
inter, Acc., 289; inter-, 297; (valere, 591).
interest, Genitive, 253; Infinitive, ut Subj., Indirect Question, 380.
intra, Accusative, 289; Adverb, 292.
ipse, 108; with se, 111, 116, 97; ipsius, 121.
iri, with Supine, 183.
is, Personal Pronoun, 104; qui, 124; *Oratio Obliqua*, 487.
iste, 123.
ita—ut, *Ind.*, Correl., 142, 449; *Subj.*, Consec., 388, Limit., 390; in Protestation, 452.
itaque, 323.
- jam, with Present, 201.
jubeo, Accusative, 278; Infinitive, 356.
juvo, Acc., 278; juvat, Inf., 379.
juxta, Accusative, 289.
- laedo, Accusative, 278.
laevā (579).
liber, Ablative, 260.
libet, Acc. or Dat. and Inf., 379.
licet, Acc. or Dat. and Inf., 379, 180; Subj., 379; “though,” 441.
loco, Verb with Gerundive, 189.
,, (Ablative of Place, 579).
- macte (556).
magni, 257.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- male, for non, 492, 499.
 male-, Dative, 280.
 me, Reflexive, 110.
 medius, 58, 90 (579).
 mehercle, 326.
 mei, Objective, 105.
 meminī, Gen., Acc., 251; quum, 383;
 (Pres. Inf., 599).
 meritus, Active, Passive, 164.
 metuo, ne, 371.
 mihi, Ethic Dative, 284.
 mille, milia, 77.
 minimi, minoris, 257; minus, for non,
 492, 499.
 minor, Future Infinitive, 349.
 miror si, 383, 412.
 modo, dummodo, 427.
 moneo, Accusative, 278; ut, 355.
 mortuus est, 203.
 mos est, Infinitive, ut Subj., 375.
 multo, 267; with Comp., 67; Superl., 74.
 muto, Trans., 145; Acc. and Abl., 268.
- nam, namque, 322.
 narror, 155.
 natus, Acc., 300; Abl. Orig., 261.
 nauci, 257.
 ne, general use, 489.
 (1) *Main*: Jussive, 330-332.
 (2) *Subord.*: Final, 384; fearing, 371;
 omitted, 370; ne quis, 392; dum
 ne, 496; nedum, 445; non, for ne,
 500 (ut ne, 584).
 ne—quidem, 341, 442, 501; redund., 507.
 -ne, (1) Dir. Int., 336; (2) Ind., 360.
 nec, neque, 316; for neve, 503; "and
 not," 505; redund., 508.
 necesse, Infinitive, Subjunctive, 379.
 necne, 360.
 nedum, 445.
 nego, 348, 504.
 nemo non, 509; nemo est quin, 515.
 nempe, 321.
 nescio an, 362, 383; nescio quis, 129.
 neve, (1) 334; (2) 355, 386; neque for, 503.
 nihil, Genitive, 56, 245; aliud quam, 454;
 abest quin, 514.
 nimirum, 321.
 nisi and si non, 408.
 nitor, ut, 368.
 noceo, Dative, 278.
 non, general use, 489; for ne, 500-502;
 position, 505; nemo non, non possum
 non, 509; non dub. quin, 513; non
 possum quin, 514; non modo, 320;
 redund., 508.
- nonne, 336.
 nonnulli, 129, 506.
 notum (596).
 novi, 203; noveram, 206.
 num, (1) Direct, 336; (2) Indirect, 360.
 nuntio, of Command, 358; nuntior and
 Participle, 155.
- O, 326.
 ob, Accusative, 289.
 obliviscor, Acc., Gen., 251; Pass. of, 164.
 omnes nos, 244.
 oportet, Inf., Subj., 379; in Condit., 402.
 opus, Ablative, 265; Infinitive, 379.
 orbus, Ablative, 260.
 oro, two Accusatives, 236-237; ut Subj.,
 355 (Infinitive, 592).
- paenitet, Accusative and Genitive, 252.
 palam, Ablative, 290; Adverb, 292.
 parco, Dative, 278.
 pareo, Dative, 278.
 parte (579).
 parum, 499.
 parvi, 257.
 patior, Accusative and Infinitive, 374.
 pendere animi, 258.
 penes, Accusative, 289.
 per, Acc., 289, 293; per-, 297-298; per
 aliquem stat quominus, 510.
 permitto, Dative, 278; ut, ne Subj., 374.
 persuadeo, Dat., 278; ut Subj., 355;
 Inf., of Indirect Statement, 359.
 pertinet ad, Infinitive, 380.
 piget, Accusative and Genitive, 252; In-
 finitive, quod Subjunctive, 381.
 placeo, Dative, 278; placet, 181, ut
 Subj., Infinitive, 379.
 plenus, Genitive, 255; Ablative, 269.
 plurimi, pluris, 257.
 plus, Genitive, 56; without quam, 64.
 pone, Accusative, 289; Adverb, 292.
 por-, 296.
 possum, in Condit., 402; poterat, Pres.
 Inf., 215; poterit, 219, 405.
 post, Accusative, 289; Adverb, 292; post
 urb. cond., 198.
 postquam, Ind., 433; Perf., 205.
 potior, Genitive, 254; Ablative, 269.
 prae, Ablative, 290, 293.
 praeditus, Ablative, 269.
 praeter, Accusative, 289, 293.
 primus, 58, 60.
 priusquam, Ind., 429; Subj., 431.
 pro, Ablative, 290, 293; cf. 88.
 procul, Ablative, 260, 292.

 The Numbers refer to Sections.

- proh, 326.
 prohibeo, Infinitive, 511.
 proinde, 323.
 promitto, Future Infinitive, 349.
 prope, Accusative, 289, 293.
 proprius, Genitive, 573.
 propter, Accusative, 289, 293.
 prout, 450.
 pudet, Accusative and Genitive, 252;
 Infinitive, quod Subjunctive, 381.
 quâ, Indicative, 436; Subjunctive, 433.
 qualis, 142.
 quam, *than*, 63; omitted, 64; quam ut,
 Subj., 391; quam si, quam qui,
 456, 465; Ind., aliter quam, 453.
 ,, *as*, 455; Superl., 73; tam, 142, 455.
 quamdiu, 434.
 quamvis, Subjunctive, 441; Adjective,
 442; Participle, 193 (Indicative, 581).
 quando, Rel., 414; Inter., 136, 335.
 quanquam, 320; Indic., 440 (Subj., 581).
 quantus, 142; quanto, 457.
 quasi, Part., 193; Subj., 447 (*cf.* 538).
 -que, 313-316, 324.
 qui, Concord, 51; use, 138; = et ille,
 99, 140; (1) *Indic.*, 459; (2) *Subj.*,
 462; sunt qui, 464; quam qui, 465,
 456; dignus qui, 466; quippe qui,
 468; see Relative.
 qui, Interrog., 137; Indef., 125.
 quia, Ind., 409; Subj., 410; quam quia,
 non quia, 411.
 quid, Genitive, 57; quid, quod, 137.
 quidam, 128.
 quidem, 319, 321, 324; ne—quidem, 501,
 442.
 quilibet, 129 (553).
 quin, *Subj.*, (1) hinder, doubt, 512; (2)
 = ut non, 513; (3) nemo est quin,
 515; *Indic.*, 517; *Imper.*, 518; quin-
 etiam, 519.
 quippe, 321; quippe qui, 468.
 quis, Indef., 125; Interrog., 137; quis,
 qui, 137.
 quisquam, 126; ullus, 137.
 quisque, 133; Superlative, 71; Numeral,
 78; se, suus, 116; position, 97.
 quivis, 129 (553).
 quo, Final, 385; Comparative, 457.
 quoad, 424-426, 434.
 quod, "because," see quia; "fact that,"
 375.
 quominus, 510.
 quot, 142.
 quoties, 423.
 quum, not Interrog., 335; memini quum,
 383; *Subj.*, (1) when, Hist., 415; (2)
 because, 416; (3) though, 417. *Indic.*,
 (1) when, Prim., 418; (2) whenever,
 419; (3) inverse, 420; with tum, as
 long as, 421. Quum primum, 423;
 quum—tum, 315. See also 170.
 re-, 296-297.
 recorder, Accusative, 251.
 refert, Genitive, 253; Infinitive, ut Subj.,
 Indirect Question, 380.
 regione (579).
 reminiscor, Acc., Gen., 251, 162.
 revoco, Accusative, 251.
 rogo, two Accusatives, 236-237; Passive
 with Acc., 151; ut Subj., 355.
 sacer, Genitive (573).
 saltem, 321.
 sane, 321.
 satis, Genitive, 245.
 satis-, Dative, 280.
 scilicet, 321.
 scribo, tibi, ad te (577).
 se, Reflex., 112; (1) Direct, 113; (2)
 Indirect, 114; with ipse, 111, 116,
 quisque, 116; Subject of Infin., 351,
 487; position, 97; omitted, 146.
 se-, 296.
 secundum, Accusative, 289, 293.
 sed, 319.
 sed enim, 320.
 si, Condit., 395; Subj. of Purp., 407,
 Wishes, 332; miror si, 383; etsi,
 etiamsi, si maxime, 439; ut si, quasi,
 tanquam si, 447; si quidem, 321,
 412; si non, nisi, 408; sin, sive, 318,
 408.
 sicut, 449.
 similis, Dative, Genitive, 281.
 simul, Ablative, 292; simulac, 423.
 sin, sin minus, 408, 499.
 sine, Ablative, 290, 260.
 sino, Accusative, 278; Infinitive, 374.
 siquidem, 321, 412.
 sive, 318, 408.
 solvendo esse (600).
 spero, Future Infinitive, 349.
 studeo, Infinitive, 367.
 sub, Accusative, Ablative, 291, 293;
 sub-, 297.
 subter, Accusative, Ablative, 291.
 subvenio, Dative, 278.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- sum, *Copula*, omitted, 47; auxil., 211; sum and fui, 212; compounds of, Dative, 280.
 ,, *existence*, 47; with Dat. Possess., 286; sunt qui, 129, 464.
 ,, Position of, 97.
 summus, 58, 90.
 super, Accusative, Ablative, 291.
 supra, Acc., 289, 293; Adv., 292.
 suus, of emphat. word, 116; see also se.
- tactio, Accusative (568).
 taedet, Accusative and Genitive, 252; Infinitive, quod Subjunctive, 381.
 talis, 142.
 tam, 142.
 tamen, 320, 324.
 tandem, 321.
 tanquam, Participle, 193; Subjunctive, 448; si, 447; (Metaphor, 538).
 tantus, 142; tanto, Comparative, 457; tantum abest ut, 444.
 tempto, Infinitive, ut Subj., 368.
 tenus, Ablative, Genitive, 290.
 terra marique (579).
 timeo, ne, ne non, 371; ut, 372; Infinitive, 373.
 tot, 142.
 totus (579).
 tum—tum, 315.
- ubi, *when*, Indicative, 414.
 ,, *where*, Indic., 436; Subj., 438.
 ubinam gentium, 245.
 ullus, 126; quisquam, 137.
 ultimus, 58, 90.
- ultra, Accusative, 289; Adverb, 292.
 unus, 78-79.
 ut, Indic., *as*, ita, 142, 449; utpote, Part., 193; Metaph. (538).
 ,, ,, *when*, 414.
 ,, ,, *how*, Excl., 338; timeo ut, Subj., 372.
 ,, Subj., *that*, (1) Final, 384; impero, 355; omitted, 484, 357 (ut ne, 584); *although*, 443.
 ,, ,, (2) Consec., 388; ita ut, Limit., 390, 452; quam ut, 391; ut nullus, 392; tant. ab. ut—ut, 444.
- uterque, 134.
 uti, see ut.
 utor, Ablative, 162, 269; utendus, 164.
 utrum, 318; (1) Dir., 336; (2) Ind., 360.
- vaco, Ablative, 260.
 vae, 326.
 vel, 317.
 velut, Subjunctive, 448.
 vereor, ne and Subj., 371; Infinitive, 373; veritus, verendus, 163-164.
 vero, 319, 321, 324.
 versus, Accusative, 289.
 verto, Transitive, 145.
 verum, verum enimvero, 320.
 vescor, Ablative, 269.
 veto, Infinitive, 356.
 videro, 209.
 vitabundus, Accusative (568).
 vitio vertere alicui (578).
 volo, Infinitive, 179; Subjunctive, 357.
 volvo, Transitive, 145; (volvendis, 600).

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

III. GREEK INDEX.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

ἀγγέλλω, Part., 198, 350; Inf., 199.
 ἄγχι, Genitive (Dative), 292.
 αἰρεῖν, Intransitive, 146.
 αἰρῶ, αἰρούμαι, 159.
 αἰσθάνομαι, Gen., 252; Part., 350.
 αἰσχύνομαι, Part., 198; Inf., 199.
 αἰτέω, two Accs., 236, 151; Inf., 355.
 ἀκολουθεῖν, Dative, 271.
 ἀκούω, Acc., Gen., 253; Part., 350, 198.
 ἄκρος, 58, 102.
 ἀλλά, 319; ἀλλὰ μὴν, ἀλλὰ γάρ, ἀλλ' ἕως, 320.
 ἀλλάσσω, Accusative and Dative, 268.
 ἀλλήλους, 119.
 ἄλλος, 100, 131; οἱ ἄλλοι, 132; ἄλλος ἢ, 453; οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ, 454.
 ἀλλότριος, Genitive, 281.
 ἄλλως τε καί, 315.
 ἄμα, Participle, 193; Dative, 292.
 ἁμαρτάνω, Genitive, 253.
 ἀμελέω, Genitive, 251.
 ἀμύνω τι τινί, 282.
 ἀμφί, Acc., Gen. (Dat.), 290, 295.
 ἀμφότερος, ἄμφω, 99, 134.
 ἄν, general use, 217-220.
 (1) *Subj.*, 217; ἐάν, 405; ὅταν, 418; ἕως ἄν, 426; πρὶν ἄν, 431; ἐνθ' ἄν, 437; ὡς ἄν, 450; ὅς ἄν, 460; ἄν omitted, 219 (585).
 (2) *Opt.*, 218, 398; = Fut., 218, 329; = Command, 218.
Past Indic., 218, 398; Frequent., 218.
Infjn., Partic., 404 (598).
 ἄν repeated, 223; omitted, 406 (586); οὐκ οἶδ' ἄν, 220.
 ἀνά, Acc., 289, 295; ἀνα-, 297.
 ἀνα, "up," 289.
 ἀναγκάω, Infinitive, 365.
 ἀνάγκη, Acc. or Dat. and Inf., 379.
 ἄνευ, Genitive, 260, 292.
 ἀντί, Genitive, 290; (Infinitive, 591).
 ἄξιος, Genitive, 250, 257, 265.
 ἀπαγορεύω, μή, Infinitive, 356.

ἀπειλέω, μή and Future Infinitive, 349.
 ἀπό, Gen., 290, 261, 305; ἀπο-, 297-298.
 ἀπορέω, Genitive, 260.
 ἀποστερέω, two Accusatives, 236-237.
 ἄπτομαι, Genitive, 252.
 ἄρα, 323-324.
 ἄρα, ἀρ' οὐ, ἄρα μὴ, 336.
 ἀρέσκω, Dat., 279; ἀρέσκει, Acc. or Dat. and Inf., 379.
 ἄρχομαι, Participle, 198.
 ἄτε, Part., 193, 412; (Metaph., 538).
 ἄτερ, Genitive, 292.
 αὐδάνω, Transitive, 145.
 αὐτός, Gen. use, 108; with Article, 101; with αὐτόν, ἕκαστος, 116; with Ordinals, 78; αὐτοῖς ἄνδρ., 273; in *Oratio Obliqua*, 351, 487; (αὐτό, Infinitive, 591).
 ,, αὐτόν, 104, 124; αὐτοῦ, 120.
 ,, ὁ αὐτός, 101, 109; καί, 453; (Dat., 575).
 αὐτόν, see εαυτόν.
 ἄχθομαι, Participle, 198, 383.
 βασιλεύω, Genitive, Dative, 254.
 βιάζομαι, 366.
 βιάπτω, Accusative, 278.
 βλέπειν νᾶπυ (569).
 βοηθεῖν, Dative, 278.
 βούλει, Subjunctive, 337, 357.
 γάρ, 322, 324.
 γε, 321, 324; ὅς γε, 468.
 γένομαι, Genitive, 252.
 γιγνώσκω, Participle, 350, 198.
 γούν, 321, 324.
 γυμνός, Genitive, 260.
 δέ, 319, 321, 324, 325; Apodotic, 408.
 δεῖ, Gen., 255, 260; πολλοῦ δεῖ, Inf., 377; δεῖ, Acc. Inf., 379; in Conds., 402; δεῖν, *Or. Obl.*, 484; δεῖον, 196.
 δεῖδω, see φοβοῦμαι.
 δείκνυμι, Participle, 350, 198.

- δεῖνα, δ, ἡ, τό, 129.
 δέομαι, Genitive 255, 260.
 δευτεραίος, 78.
 δῆ, δῆθεν, δῆπου, 321.
 δῆλος, Part., 155, 198, 375; δῆλον ὅτι, 377.
 δῆτα, 323.
 διά, Acc. Gen., 290, 293, 295; δια-, 297-298.
 διατελέω, Participle, 198.
 διαφέρει, Acc. or Dat. and Inf., 380.
 διάφορος, Genitive, Dative, 281.
 διδάσκω, two Accusatives, 236-237.
 διότι, Ind., 409; Opt., 410-411.
 διπλάσιος, 79.
 διπλοῦς, 79.
 δισσός, 79.
 δίχα, Genitive, 292; διχα-, 296.
 δοκέω, with ἄν, 220; μοι δοκῶ, 110; δοκεῖ, Acc. or Dat. and Inf., 379; δοκεῖν, 176.
 δύναμαι, Infinitive, 215.
 ἐάλων, 162.
 εἰάν, Subj., 396, 403; Fin., 387, 407; becomes εἰ with Opt., 405.
 εἰαυτόν, 112; in *Or. Obl.*, 487; = ἀλλήλους, 118; with αὐτός, ἕκαστος, 116; εἰαυτών, 112, 121.
 εἰάω, Accusative, 278; οὐκ εἰῶ, 356; 374.
 ἐβασίλευσε, 205.
 ἐβην, ἐβησα, 145.
 ἐδάκρυσε, 205.
 ἐδύνατο, Pres. Inf., 215.
 εἰ, *if*, Condit., Ind., Opt., 395 *sqq.*; εἰ, Opt., Final, 387, 407; Causal, 476; εἰ γὰρ, Cause, 412; εἰ δὲ μή, 408; εἰ ὄ' ἄγε, 326; εἰ καὶ, 439; εἰ, εἴθε, Wishes, 326, 332, 408; (εἰ, Subj., 586).
 ,, *whether*, 360; θαυμάζω εἰ, 383.
 εἰμί, *be*, omitted, 47; Periphr., 211.
 εἰμι, *exist*, 48; Dat. Poss., 286.
 εἰμι, Future, 201.
 εἶπον, ὅτι, 354; Infin. Command, 358.
 εἰργασται, Active, Passive, 163.
 εἰρηκα, 203.
 εἰς, Acc., 289, 304; Prolep., 294; ἐς ὅ, 434.
 εἶσω, Genitive, 292.
 εἶτε, 318, 408.
 ἐκ, Gen., 290, 293, 305, 261; Prolep., 294; ἐξ οὗ, 434.
 ἕκαστος, 99, 133; αὐτοῦ, 116.
 ἐκάτερος, 99, 134.
 ἐκείνος, with Article, 99, 103; Pers. Pron., 104, 192, *Or. Obl.*, 487; and οὗτος, 123.
 ἐκτός, Genitive, 292.
 ἐλπίζω, μή and Future Infinitive, 349.
 ἐμαυτοῦ, 98; ἐμαυτόν, 111.
 ἐμέ, με, 105; ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, 176.
 ἐμός, 100.
 ἐν, Dat., 289, 306; Prolep., 294; ἐν φ, 434; ἐν τοῖς πρώτοι, 74.
 ἐνεκα, ἐνεκεν, Gen., 292; (Inf., 186).
 ἐνιοι, 129.
 ἐντέλλομαι, Dative, 278. (*Cf.* 355.
 ἐξ, see ἐκ.
 ἐξέσσι, Acc. or Dat. and Inf., 379.
 ἐξίσταμαι, Accusative, 147.
 ἐξόν, 196.
 ἐπεὶ, ἐπειδὴ, 409, 411; Aor., 205: (1) *when*, 415; (2) *because*, 416; *although*, 417; ἐπειδὴ, 418-419; and ὅταν, 421. ἐπεὶ, "for," 411.
 ἐπί, Acc., Gen., Dat., 291, 293; ἐπι-, 299.
 ἐπιθυμέω, Genitive, 253.
 ἐπιμελοῦμαι, Genitive, 251.
 ἐπίσταμαι, Participle, 350.
 ἐπιτίθημαι, Dative, 280.
 ἐπιτρέπω, Dat. and Inf., 374.
 ἐπολιτευσάμην, 164.
 ἐπομαι, Dative, 271.
 ἐς, see εἰς.
 ἐσθ' ὅπως, 377.
 ἔσομαι, Perfect Participle, 209, 211.
 ἔστε, see εως.
 ἔστιν οἷ, 129, 464.
 ἔτερος, 100, 130.
 εὐρίσκω, Participle, 350.
 ἐφ' ὅτε, Infinitive, 390.
 ἔχω, Gen. use, 212; with Adv., 146; with Part., 212 (Inf. 521); with Ind. Delib., 363; ἔχων, 273.
 ἔως, (1) *while*, Ind., 424; (2) *till*, Ind., 425; Conj., 426 (582).
 ζηλώω, Accusative and Genitive, 256.
 ἦ, *or*, 317; ἦ—ἦ, 318.
 ἦ, *than*, 63; omitted, 64; ἄλλος ἦ, 453; ἦ ὤς, 456; ἦ ὥστε, 391; ἦ, Inf., 392.
 ἦ, Interrog., 317, 336.
 ἦ μήν, 320.
 ἦδη, Present, 201.
 ἦδη, 206.
 ἦδομαι, Participle, 198, 383.
 ἡμέτερος, 100; αὐτῶν, 121.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- ἤμιους, Genitive, 57, 244.
 ἦν, 326.
- θανάτω, Acc. and Genitive, 256; *ei*, 383.
 θαυμασίως ὡς (558).
 θέλεις, Subj., 337, 357.
- ἴδιος, Genitive (573).
 ἱερός, Genitive, (573).
 ἵνα, *ihat*, Conj., 384, Ind., 386; *where*, 436.
 ἴσος, *καί*, 453; Dative, 281.
 ἴστημι, Trans. and Intrans. Tenses, 145.
- καί, 313; Part., 442; *καί—καί*, 315; *καί πῶς*, *πῶς καί*, 313; *καί, κἄν, εἰ καί*, 439; *καί μήν, καί δὴ, καίτοι*, 320; *καίπερ*, 193, 440; *ὁμοίος καί, ὁ αὐτὸς καί, ἴσος καί*, 453.
 κακὰ ποιῶ, λέγω, and Acc., 236-237.
 κατά, Acc., Gen., 290, 293; *κατα-*, 297.
 καταγνώσκω, Acc. and Genitive, 255.
 καταφρονέω, Genitive, 251.
 κατηγορέω, Acc. and Genitive, 255.
 κελεύω, Acc., 278; Inf., 355.
 κενός, Genitive, 255.
 κινδυνεύω, Condit., 402 (586).
 κοινός, Genitive (579).
 κρύπτω, two Accusatives, 236-237.
 κρύφα, Genitive, 292.
 κύριος, Genitive, 250, 265.
- λάθρα, Genitive, 292.
 λανθάνω, Part., 198; *λανθάνομαι*, Part., 198-199, 350; Genitive, 251.
 λέγω κακὰ, and Accusative, 236-237.
 λυμαίνομαι, Dative, 278.
- μά, Acc., 326.
 μανθάνω, Part., 198, 350; Inf., 199.
 μάχομαι, Dative, 371.
 μέλει, Dat. and Gen., 251; Inf., 380.
 μέλλω, Fut. Inf., 214, 368; Condit., 402.
 μέμνημαι, Gen., 162, 251; Part., 198, 350; Inf., 199; *ἔτε*, 383 (Pres. Part., 599).
 μέν, 321, 324-325; *μέν οὖν*, 320; *μέντοι*, 319, 321, 324.
 μέρη, τὰ δύο, 77.
 μέσος, 58, 102.
 μετά, Acc., Gen. (Dat.), 290, 289, 293; *μετα-*, 297.
 μεταμέλει, Dat. and Gen., 251; Part., 381.
 μεταξύ, Part., 193; Gen., 292.
- μετέχω, *μεταδίδωμι*, Gen., 245, 253.
 μέχρι, see *ἕως*; without *ἄν*, 427.
 μή, general use, 489-494.
 ,, *Main Clauses*, Jussive, 330-334; = num, 336; *Delib.*, 337.
 ,, *Sub-Clauses*. (1) Final, 384; *φοβοῦμαι*, 371; *μή*, Subj., 514; (2) Hypothet., 395; (3) Infin., 495; *Command*, 355; *ἵσως*, 388; *ὑμνυμι*, 349; *redund.*, 510.
 ,, *Relatives*, Final or Indef., 498, 460.
 ,, *Participles*, 193, 495.
 ,, *Adj. and Subs.*, 497-498.
 ,, *οὐ* for *μή*, 500; *μή* for *οὐ*, 501-502.
 ,, *μή ὅπως, μή ὅτι*, 445.
 ,, *μή οὐ*, Infin., 512-513; Part., 514; Subj., 515.
 ,, *οὐ μή*, (1) Aor. Subj., (2) Fut., 516-519 (600).
 μηδεῖς, 503.
 μὴν, 320.
 μίγνυμι, Accusative and Dative, 271.
 μοι δοκῶ, 110; *μον*, 98.
 μύριος, 77.
- νή, Accusative, 326.
 νικᾶν, Cognate Accusative (569).
 νομίω, *think*, Inf., 348; *be accustomed*, Dat., 269; *νομίζεται*, 375.
 νυν, τοίνυν, 323.
- ξύν, see *σύν*.
- ὁ, 80-103, see Article; *ὁ δὲ*, 81, 104; *οἱ μὲν—οἱ δέ*, 81; *οἱ ἄλλοι*, 132.
ὁ αὐτός, 101, 109; *καί*, 453 (Dat., 575).
ὅδε, 99; and *οὗτος*, 123; *ἐγώ*, 123.
ὀθούνεκα, 411.
οἶ, 112.
οἶδα, 203; Part., 198, 350 (598-599); Inf., 199 (598); *οὐκ οἶδ' ἄν*, 220.
οἰκείος, Genitive (573).
οἰκήσομαι, as Passive, 164.
οἶμοι, Genitive, 326.
οἶομαι, Acc. and Inf., 348.
οἶος, 142 (Attrac., 553); *Exclam.*, 338; *ὅτι τοῖος*, 469; Inf., 464; *οἶός τε*, 466.
ὀλίγον δεῖ, 377; *ὀλ. δεῖν*, 176.
ὀλος, 102.
ὀλωλα, 162.
ὀμιλέω, Dative, 271.
ὀμνυμι, μή and Future Infinitive, 349.
ὁμοῖος, Dat., 281; *καί*, 453; (Brach. 528).
ὁμοῦ, Dative, 292; *ὁμ-*, 296.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- ὄμως, 320.
 ὅποιος, Relative, Interrogative, 137.
 ὅποτε, ὅποταν, 423.
 ὅπως, as, 449.
 " *that*, Fut. Ind., Fin., 386 (583);
 Ind. Com., 356; *πράσσω*, 366; *φυλάσσομαι*,
δράω, 369; *δρα* omitted, 370;
οὐχ ὅπως, 444; *μη ὅπως*, 445.
δράω, Part., 198, 350; ὅπως, 369, 370.
ὄρφανος, Genitive, 260.
 ὄς, see Relative: ὄς γε, 412, 468; and
οἶτος, 142; Interrog. ? 137, 167
 (Subj.), 582, 585; ἡ δ' ὄς, 81.
 ὄσος, 142; Inf., 393, 466; ὄσον χρόνον,
 434; ὄσφ, 457.
 ὄστις, Rel., *Interrog.*, 137; echoed, 362;
Rel., Fut. Ind., Final, 387; Consec.,
 463; ὄστισούν, 129.
ὄσφραϊνομαι, Genitive, 252.
 ὄτε, 414; = καὶ τότε, 420; Concess.,
 443; and ἐπεὶ, 421; μέμνημαι ὄτε,
 383; ὄταν, 418.
 ὄτι, *that*, 353; *because*, Ind., 409; Opt.,
 410-411.
 οὐ, 489-494; Part., 495; *καίπερ*, 440;
 Infin., 495; Subs., 497; for *μή*, 500;
οὐ φημι, 348, 504; οὐ *χρή*, 505;
 redundant, 506-507; οὐδείς, 503;
 οὐ *μή*, 516 (600); Fut. Ind., Interrog.,
 208; οὐκ ἔσθ' ὅπως, 377; οὐκ οἶδ'
 ἄν, 220; οὐ *μήν*, 320; οὐχ ὅπως,
 444; οὐ *μόνον*, 320, 506.
 οὐδένος ποιεῖσθαι, 257.
 οὐν, οὐκούν, 323-324.
 οὐνεκα, 411.
 οὔτε, οὐδέ, 316.
 οὔτος, 99, 103; Pers. Pron., 104; ὅδε,
 ἐκεῖνος, 123; ὄς, 124; cf. 301;
 οὔτοσί, 103.
 οὕτως ὡς, 142; Protest., 452; ὥστε, 392.
 ὀφείλω, Infin., 215.
 ὀφλεῖν δικήν (569).
 πάλαι, Present, 201.
 παλιν-, 296.
 παρά, Acc., Gen., Dat., 291, 293.
 παρά προσδοκίαν, or *παρ' ὑπόνοιαν* (541).
 παρανέω, Dat., 278 (Acc., 279); Inf., 355.
 παρακελεύομαι, Dat. and Inf., 355.
 παρόν, 196.
 πᾶς, 102; πάντες ἡμεῖς, 244.
 παύομαι, Gen., 254; Part., 198; Inf.,
 199.
 πείθω, Acc., 278; Inf., 355; (ὥστε, 592);
 πείθομαι, Dative, 278.
 πειράομαι, Inf., 367; ἕπως Fut. Ind., 368.
 πέλας, Gen. (Dat.), 292.
 πέπεικα, πέποιθα, 145, 162.
 περ, 441; *καίπερ*, 193, 440.
 περί, Acc., Gen., Dat., 291, 293; post-
 poned, 295.
 πῖμπλημι, Accusative and Genitive, 255.
 πιστεύω, Dative, 278.
 πλῆν, Genitive, 292.
 πλήρης, Genitive, 255.
 πλησίον, Genitive (Dative), 292.
 ποιέω, "cause" Inf., 365, ἕπως Fut.
 Ind., 366; *κακῶ*, and Acc., 336-337.
 πολὺς, καί, 56; πολλοῦ δεῖ, 255, and Inf.,
 377; πολλοῦ ποιεῖσθαι, 257; πολλῶ,
 67, 74.
 πόριμος, Accusative (568).
 πόσος, 137.
 ποτε, 321.
 πότερον, 318, 336.
 πράσσω, Inf., 365; ὅπως Fut. Ind., 366.
 πρέπει, Acc. or Dat. and Inf., 379.
 πρίν, 428; *Pos.*, Inf., 429; *Neg.*, Ind.,
 430; *Conj.*, 431; without ἄν, 219
 (*Pos.*, Ind., 581).
 πρό, Genitive, 290.
 προκόπτειν, Genitive (579).
 πρόσ, Acc., Gen., Dat., 291, 293, 304;
προσ-, Dat., 280.
 προσήκει, Acc. or Dat. and Inf., 380.
 πρώτος, 58, 60; ἐν τοῖς πρώτοι, 74.
 πυνθάνομαι, Gen., 252; Part., 350, 198.
 πῶς, ἄν, Opt. (586); πῶς καί, καὶ πῶς,
 313.
 σός, 100.
 σπανίζω, Genitive, 255, 260.
 σπεύδω, Inf., 367; ὅπως Fut. Ind., 368.
 σπουδάζω, Inf., 367; ὅπως, 368.
 στερήσομαι, as Passive, 164.
 συνηῖσθαι, as Passive, 164.
 συγγινώσκω, Dative, 278.
 συγχωρέω, Dative, 278.
 συλλέγομαι, Dative, 271.
 συμβαίνει, Acc. or Dat. Inf., ὥστε, 375.
 συμφέρει, Inf., ὥστε, ὅπως, 379.
 σύν, Dative, 289.
 συνελόντι, 394 (578).
 σύνοιδα, Part., Nom. or Dat., 352.
 σφᾶς, 112; αὐτούς, 112; cf. 487.
 σφέτερος, 100, 112; αὐτῶν, 112, 487.
 τε, 313, 324; τε-τε, τε-καί, 315; τε
 —οὔτε, 316.
 τέθηκας, 203; τεθνήξω, 209.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

- τέος, -τέον, 187-189.
 τέρπω, Accusative, 278.
 τηλικούτος, 100.
 τιμήσομαι, as Passive, 164.
 τίμιος, Genitive, 257.
 τιμωρεῖν, Accusative and Dative, 282.
 τις, (1) *any*, 125; (2) *some*, 127; (3) *certain*, 128; πᾶς τις, 129 (τις, Metaph., 538).
 τό, Adj., 88; Inf., 90-91, 172-173, 184-186 (592; Part., 596); in quotation, 91; (τὸ ἐπὶ σφᾶς, 592); τοῦ Infin., of Purpose, 387.
 τοι, 321; καίτοι, 320; τοίνυν, 323-324.
 τοιοῦδε, τοιοῦτος, 100, 123; οἶος, 142.
 -τός, -τόν, 190.
 τοσοῦτος, τοσοῦδε, 100, 123; ὅσος, 142.
 τοῦτο, Genitive, 245; τούτῳ, 457.
 τυγχάνω, Gen., 253; Part., 198 (598).
 ὑμέτερος, 100; αὐτῶν, 121.
 ὑπέρ, Acc., Gen., 290, 293.
 ὑπισχνέομαι, μή and Fut. Inf., 349.
 ὑπό, Acc., Gen., Dat., 291, 293; ὑπο-, 297; Gen. of Agent, 148, 156, 262.
 ὕστατος, 58.
 ὕστερέω, Participle, 198, 435.
 ὕστερον ἢ, 433.
 φαίνομαι, Participle, 198; Infinitive, 199.
 φανερός, Participle, 155, 198, 375.
 φεῦ, Genitive, 326.
 φημί, ἄν, 220; Inf., 354; (Part., 598); οὐ φημί, 348, 504.
 φθάνω, Participle, 198, 435.
 φοβοῦμαι, μή Conj., 371; μή Ind., 372; Inf., 373; (μή Fut. Ind., 584).
 φροντιστής, Accusative (568).
 φυλάσσομαι, ὅπως Fut. Ind., 369; μή Conj., 370.
 χαίρω, Participle, 198, 383.
 χάριν ἔχω, Dative and Genitive, 256.
 χρεία, Genitive, 265.
 χρῆ, Acc. Inf., 379; Condit., 402, 470.
 χρῶμαι, Dative, 162, 269.
 χωρίς, Genitive, 260, 292.
 ὦ, Vocative, 224; Exclamation, 326.
 ὦ, with Comparative, 457.
 ὦς, *to*, Accusative, 289.
 ,, *as*, Superl., 73, 455; ὡς εἶχον τάχους, 245, 455; ὡς εἰπεῖν, 176, 394 (538); ὡς ἐμοὶ κριτῆ (578); Part., 193, 412; ὡς, ὡς εἰ, ὥσπερ ἀνέλ, 447-449; (Metaph., 538); *though*, 443.
 ,, *how*, 338.
 ,, *when*, 414.
 ,, *that*, Or. Obl., 353; for ἴσθι ὡς, 383.
 ,, *because*, 409, 410.
 ,, *in order that*, 384; ὡς ἄν, 219.
 ὥστε, 323; Inf., 388, 391-392; Ind., 389; ἀναγκά(ω ὥστε, 365; ἢ ὥστε, 392, 456; (πειθεῖν ὥστε, 592).
 ὠφελῶ, Accusative, 278.
 ὠφελήσομαι, as Passive, 164.
 ὠφελον, with Infinitive, 215; Wishes, 333; μή ὠφελον, 505.

☞ The Numbers refer to Sections.

PA161
.R9

RUSSELL, C.H.St.L.
A Parallel of
Greek and Latin Syntax

OCT - 8 1962

469 097

Daw Berg

*Russell
1 469 097*

U of Chicago



17747507